

# JAPANESE

Familiarization & Short-term Training

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

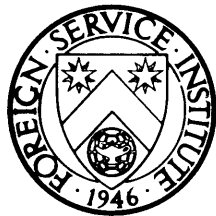
U. S. DEPARTMENT OF STATE



# JAPANESE

**Familiarization & Short-term Training**

1988  
*Japanese Section*  
*School of Language Studies*



FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE  
U. S. DEPARTMENT OF STATE



# Table of Contents

| <u>Topic</u>                         | <u>Lesson</u> | <u>Contents</u>  | <u>Page</u> |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|--|-------------|
| <b>I. First Encounters</b>           | 1.            | Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language          | 1           |
|                                      | 2.            | Finding out where you are                                | 19          |
|                                      | 3.            | Identifying objects                                      | 35          |
|                                      | 4.            | Asking about the availability of merchandise or services | 51          |
|                                      | 5.            | Introductions  | 65          |
| <b>II. Getting Directions</b>        | 6.            | Place names of interest in Tokyo                         | 79          |
|                                      | 7.            | Some basic place expressions                             | 89          |
|                                      | 8.            | Getting the answer you want (1)                          | 105         |
|                                      | 9.            | Getting the answer you want (2)                          | 119         |
|                                      | 10.           | Asking the distance                                      | 137         |
|                                      |               | Review Lesson: Making It Work (1)                        | 155         |
| <b>III. Transportation</b>           | 11.           | Buying a train ticket                                    | 157         |
|                                      | 12.           | Taking the right train                                   | 175         |
|                                      | 13.           | Getting off at the right stop                            | 191         |
|                                      | 14.           | Finding out the right exit and changing trains and buses | 205         |
|                                      | 15.           | Taking a taxi  | 219         |
| <b>IV. Shopping</b>                  | 16.           | Locating merchandise                                     | 235         |
|                                      | 17.           | Asking for service and indicating preference             | 251         |
|                                      | 18.           | Making a decision  | 269         |
|                                      | 19.           | Paying and receiving change                              | 285         |
|                                      | 20.           | Daily greetings  | 299         |
|                                      |               | Review Lesson: Making It Work (2)                        | 319         |
| <b>V. Eating Out</b>                 | 21.           | Seating and asking for service                           | 321         |
|                                      | 22.           | Placing an order   | 335         |
|                                      | 23.           | Placing an order and paying                              | 351         |
| <b>VI. Telephoning</b>               | 24.           | Opening a telephone conversation                         | 371         |
|                                      | 25.           | Making and receiving a business call                     | 383         |
|                                      | 26.           | More telephone calls                                     | 399         |
| <b>VII. Emergencies and Problems</b> | 27.           | Emergencies  | 413         |
|                                      | 28.           | Getting things fixed                                     | 427         |
| <b>VIII. Useful Expressions</b>      | 29.           | Going out for entertainment                              | 441         |
|                                      | 30.           | Expressing appreciation, regret and other sentiments     | 457         |
|                                      |               | Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)                        | 469         |
|                                      |               | Japanese-English Glossary                                | 473         |
|                                      |               | English-Japanese Glossary                                | 496         |
|                                      |               | Table of Months, Days, Weeks and Counters                | 516         |





## PREFACE

The Japanese Familiarization and Short Term (FAST) Course is one of a series of similar foreign language courses produced at the Foreign Service Institute that are intended to train U.S. Government personnel assigned to overseas posts. The objective of the FAST Courses is to help students acquire the communication skills necessary to deal with the most common social and daily life situations they will encounter during their overseas assignments. Language forms adequate to satisfy personal needs, "how-to" information, and cultural highlights are presented in a format that will encourage students to try out and use with confidence the language skills they have developed.

The original version of the Japanese FAST Course was drafted in 1981 by Tetsuo Kumatoriya and Mari Takahashi under the direction of Madeline E. Ehrman. These materials were edited in 1985 by John B. Ratliff, III, and Hedy A. St. Denis. Based on observation of student performance and comments of both students and instructors at FSI, the course has been extensively revised over the past several years. Mrs. Tomoko Tanaka Campen, Senior Instructor in the FSI Japanese Section, has been deeply involved in this work along with the team of instructors that she heads: Miyuki Fogel, Masako Gonzales-Montero, Masako Nanto, and Setsuko Pfeiffer. Thomas E. Madden assisted with the design and lay-out of the camera-ready copy and Cornelius C. Kubler was responsible for the editing of the final version of the course.

The Japanese FAST Course was designed as a six-week introductory course for employees and dependents with imminent assignments to Japan who are unable to take the regular 44-week Japanese Basic Course. It should be noted that the FAST Course does not attempt to present a systematic, comprehensive introduction to Japanese grammar; instead, bits and pieces of the grammar are practiced and explained as they appear naturally in the dialogs. In view of the emphasis on the immediately practical and the amount of time available, all linguistic explanations have been greatly simplified.

Users of these materials who have suggestions for improvement of this first published edition should send them to the Japanese Language Section, Department of Asian and African Languages, School of Language Studies, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C. 20520.



Lesson 1

INTRODUCTION TO JAPAN  
AND  
THE JAPANESE LANGUAGE

こんにちは。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- state your name, Japanese style
- greet people in Japanese
- say the following in Japanese:  
'I don't understand'  
'I understand'
- ask a Japanese person to repeat something
- count numbers up to 99

You will also become familiar with a few representative scenes from and facts about Japan

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

### Presentation

1. The instructor will select from among the following to show to the class:

- a. films, slides, and videotapes
- b. pictures, post cards, magazines, dolls, books, newspapers, money, etc.

Ask about and discuss with your instructors and fellow students anything which you find interesting in the films or displays.

2. You will probably find that you already know some Japanese. What are some of the Japanese words you have heard before? Tell the class.

Have you been to Japan? If so, briefly describe your experience to the class. What cities did you visit and whom did you meet? Tell the names of the cities and persons to the class. Practice the pronunciation of the words out loud by repeating after the instructor.

3. a. Listen to the instructor read the following Japanese words and guess the meaning of each word. The words are originally from English but they are frequently used in present day Japanese. (You don't have to memorize the words now, they will appear in later units.)

YOUR TASK: listen and guess the meaning  
PURPOSE: familiarization with the sound system

- |           |               |                |             |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. basu   | 5. erebeetaa  | 9. esukareetaa | 13. koora   |
| 2. biiru  | 6. chokoreeto | 10. sandoitchi | 14. sarada  |
| 3. menyuu | 7. wain       | 11. shatsu     | 15. seetaa  |
| 4. biifu  | 8. koohii     | 12. hanbaagaa  | 16. sokkusu |

b. Make sure your guess was correct. Repeat after the teacher to practice pronunciation.

YOUR TASK: confirmation and repetition, with meaning understood  
PURPOSE: familiarization with the sound system

c. The instructor will show you a series of pictures and ask,

**Kore wa nan desu ka?**

*What is this?*

Answer the question by saying . . .desu, which means '(It) is. . .'

YOUR TASK: look, listen, and answer  
PURPOSE: practice pronunciation, introduction of . . .desu to identify an object

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

4. a. Listen to the instructor read American names pronounced in the Japanese way. Guess what names were read.

YOUR TASK: listen and guess the meaning

PURPOSE: comprehension of common American names

- |            |             |            |                  |
|------------|-------------|------------|------------------|
| 1. Sumisu  | 4. Joonzu   | 7. Jonson  | 10. Buraun       |
| 2. Teeraa  | 5. Tonpuson | 8. Toomasu | 11. Makudonarudo |
| 3. Hoomuzu | 6. Andaason | 9. Reegan  | 12. Jakuson      |

- b. Make sure your guess was correct. Repeat the names after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

YOUR TASK: confirmation and repetition

PURPOSE: practice Japanese pronunciation of American names

- c. Practice the pronunciation of your name as well as the names of the other students.

- d. Tell your instructor your name in Japanese, saying

**Watakushi wa . . .desu**, which means 'I'm . . .'

YOUR TASK: tell your name

PURPOSE: pronunciation of your name  
introduction of **Watakushi wa . . .desu**.

5. a. The instructor will call the roll. Say *hai* meaning 'yes,' when your name is called. (In this situation, the word can mean 'here' or 'present'.)

*Instructor:* . . .**san**.

YOUR TASK: listen and answer

PURPOSE: comprehension of American names, . . .**san**, and affirmative answers

- b. What does the instructor say after each name? What do you think is the meaning of the word? Discuss.

YOUR TASK: listen and identify a word and its meaning

PURPOSE: address term . . .**san**

- c. The instructor will tell you his or her full name. Listen carefully and write it down. Did s/he say . . .**san** at the end of the name? Which do you think is the first name and the last name? S/he will also give some common Japanese names. Repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

*Instructor:* **Watakushi wa . . .desu**.

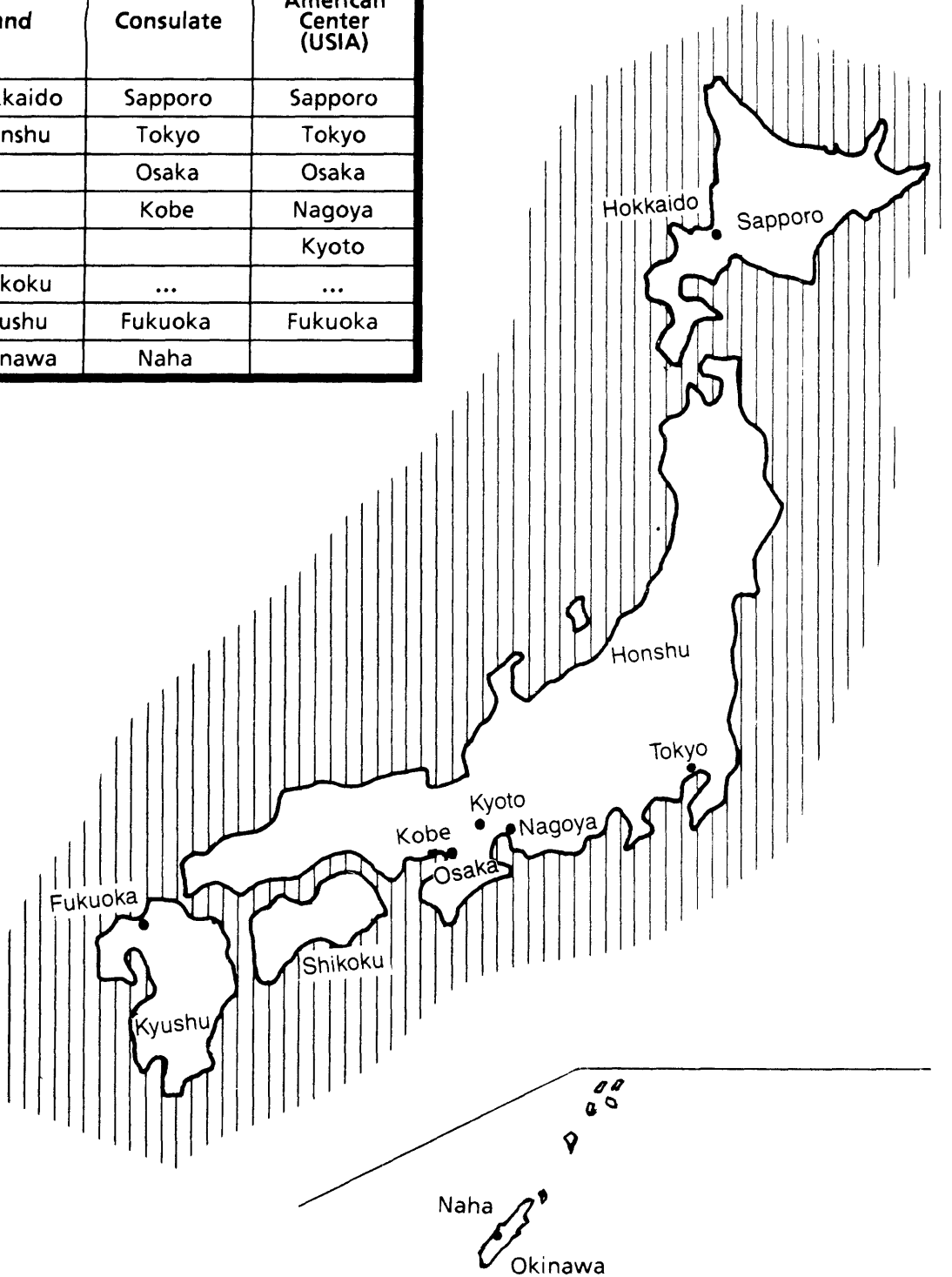
YOUR TASK: listen and write

PURPOSE: word order of Japanese names  
introduction of common Japanese names

# Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

6. a. Look at the map of Japan (Nihon 日本) below and identify the names of the islands and the cities where American consulates and American centers are located. Practice the pronunciation of each place, repeating after the instructor.

| Island   | Consulate | American Center (USIA) |
|----------|-----------|------------------------|
| Hokkaido | Sapporo   | Sapporo                |
| Honshu   | Tokyo     | Tokyo                  |
|          | Osaka     | Osaka                  |
|          | Kobe      | Nagoya                 |
|          |           | Kyoto                  |
| Shikoku  | ...       | ...                    |
| Kyushu   | Fukuoka   | Fukuoka                |
| Okinawa  | Naha      |                        |



## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

- b. The instructor asks you a question by referring to the map of Japan. Answer the question.

Example:

**Instructor:** **Kore wa ( place name ) desu ka?**

**Student:** **Hai, soo desu.** *Yes, it is*

OR

**lie, chigaimasu.** *No, it is not.  
(lit., No, it is different.)*

When you do not understand the word(s) the instructor said, ask him or her to repeat the question by saying

**Sumimasen.**

*I'm sorry. OR Excuse me.*

**Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.**

*Please say (that) again.*

**YOUR TASK:** answer the question and get unclear questions repeated

**PURPOSE:** introduce positive and negative answers and requests for repetition

- c. Communication Game

Directions:

One student points to a place on the map of Japan and asks whether it is a particular place by saying: **Kore wa (place name) desu ka?** A second student answers his/her question by saying either: **Hai, soo desu,** or **lie, chigaimasu.** If the second student does not get a word in the question, s/he asks the first student to repeat the question by saying **Sumimasen. Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.**

7. a. The following expressions are used as greetings. Listen to the instructor and repeat.

**Ohayoo gozaimasu.**

*Good morning.*

**Konnichiwa.**

*Good afternoon OR Good day.*

**Konbanwa.**

*Good evening.*

**Sayoonara.**

*Good-bye.*

**YOUR TASK:** listen and repeat

**PURPOSE:** introduction of greeting expressions

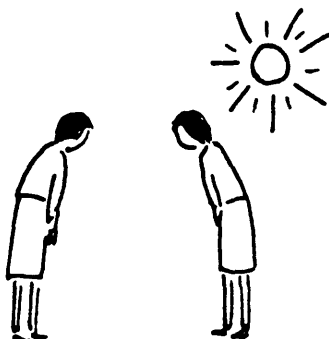


# Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

b. Practice the following greetings:

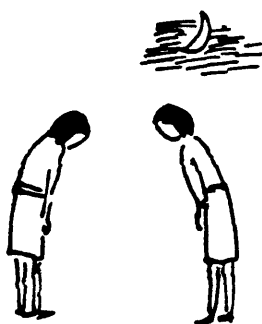
1. A: ...san ohayoo gozaimasu.  
B: Ohayoo gozaimasu.

*Good morning, Mr. / Ms. ...*  
*Good morning.*



2. A: Konnichiwa.  
B: Konnichiwa.

*Good afternoon.*  
*Good afternoon.*



3. A: Konbanwa.  
B: Konbanwa.

*Good evening.*  
*Good evening.*

4. A: Sayoonara.  
B: Sayoonara.

*Good-bye.*  
*Good-bye.*



## 8. Classroom expressions

During the course, your instructor will try to communicate with you using Japanese whenever possible. You will find the following classroom expressions helpful for smoother communication. (These expressions will also be useful for communication with Japanese people outside class.)

- a. *Instructor:* **Wakarimasu ka?** *Do you understand?*  
*Student:* **Hai, wakarimasu.** *Yes, I understand.*
- OR
- lie, wakarimasen.** *No, I don't understand.*
- b. *Student:* **Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.** *Please say it again.*

## 9. Reading numbers

The following is the Japanese numerical system from zero to 99. Practice the pronunciation of the numbers by repeating after the instructor.

|    |                 |    |                  |
|----|-----------------|----|------------------|
| 0  | zero            | 30 | san-juu          |
| 1  | ichi            | 31 | san-juu ichi     |
| 2  | ni              | 32 | san-juu ni       |
| 3  | san             |    |                  |
| 4  | shi/yon         | 40 | yon-juu          |
| 5  | go              | 50 | go-juu           |
| 6  | roku            | 60 | roku-juu         |
| 7  | shichi/nana     | 70 | nana-juu         |
| 8  | hachi           | 80 | hachi-juu        |
| 9  | ku/kyuu         | 90 | kyuu-juu         |
| 10 | juu             |    |                  |
| 11 | juu ichi        | 91 | kyuu-juu ichi    |
| 12 | juu ni          | 92 | kyuu-juu ni      |
| 13 | juu san         | 93 | kyuu-juu san     |
| 14 | juu shi/yon     | 94 | kyuu juu shi/yon |
| 15 | juu go          | 95 | kyuu-juu go      |
| 16 | juu roku        | 96 | kyuu-juu roku    |
| 17 | juu shichi/nana | 97 | kyuu-juu shichi  |
| 18 | juu hachi       | 98 | kyuu-juu hachi   |
| 19 | juu ku/kyuu     | 99 | kyuu-juu kyuu    |
| 20 | ni-juu          |    |                  |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Presentation

|                         |  |           |
|-------------------------|--|-----------|
| <b>kore</b>             | this (thing)   | これ        |
| <b>wa</b>               | (follows topic of clause or sentence)                | は         |
| <b>nan</b>              | what?  | なん        |
| <b>desu</b>             | is /am /are  | です        |
| <b>ka</b>               | (indicates a question)                               | か         |
| <b>watakushi</b>        | I  | わたくし      |
| <b>Nihon</b>            | Japan  | にほん       |
| <b>hai</b>              | yes  | はい        |
| <b>...san</b>           | Mr., Mrs., Ms.                                       | .....さん   |
| <b>soo</b>              | thus, so, correct                                    | そう        |
| <b>ie</b>               | no   | いいえ       |
| <b>chigaimasu</b>       | wrong, different                                     | ちがいます     |
| <b>sumimasen</b>        | excuse me, I'm sorry                                 | すみません     |
| <b>moo</b>              | more, again, further                                 | もう        |
| <b>ichi-do</b>          | one time, once                                       | いちど       |
| <b>itte kudasai</b>     | please say   | いってください   |
| <b>Ohayoo gozaimasu</b> | good morning   | おはようございます |
| <b>Konnichiwa</b>       | good day, good afternoon                             | こんにちは     |
| <b>Konbanwa</b>         | good evening   | こんばんは     |
| <b>Sayoonara</b>        | good-bye   | さようなら     |
| <b>wakarimasu</b>       | understand   | わかります     |
| <b>wakarimasen</b>      | not understand (negative form of <i>wakarimasu</i> ) | わかりません    |

**Notes**

|                        |   |         |
|------------------------|---|---------|
| <b>sensee</b>          | teacher, instructor   | せんせい    |
| <b>Ogenki desu ka?</b> | How are you? (lit., <i>Are you well?</i> )<br>( <i>polite</i> ) | おげんきですか |

**Personalized list**

This is where you can add words you want to know and have asked for in class.  
Try to keep this list fairly short.

## *Supplementary Material*

1. Practice reading the following numbers:

|    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|
| 5  | 8  | 9  | 4  |
| 3  | 7  | 6  | 2  |
| 1  | 10 | 13 | 14 |
| 25 | 28 | 30 | 36 |
| 37 | 49 | 22 | 47 |
| 36 | 50 | 51 | 66 |
| 40 | 53 | 67 | 20 |
| 19 | 70 | 74 | 45 |
| 80 | 83 | 38 | 90 |
| 95 | 59 | 91 | 99 |

2. Reading telephone numbers

Once you know the numbers from zero to nine in Japanese, you can say telephone numbers quite easily. Look at the following:

123-4567 Reading: *ichi, ni, san no yon, go, roku, shichi* (or *nana*).

Note: The particle *no* is read in the place where the hyphen is placed in English.

Now read the following telephone numbers:

|          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 123-4512 | 789-0869 | 335-4783 |
| 234-5134 | 867-9607 | 912-6452 |
| 315-4253 | 608-9706 | 756-1863 |
| 423-5434 | 478-2106 | 404-3177 |
| 678-7099 | 316-2800 | 539-9530 |

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. *Do the Japanese understand English?*

Almost all Japanese study English for six years in junior and senior high school, and many for two or more years in college.

Therefore, almost all Japanese know some English. However, few can use it for conversational purposes.

Although a large number of English words are currently used in Japanese, as we have seen, the pronunciation of these words is *Japanized* in such a way that they are usually unrecognizable to foreigners (and the same words usually cannot be understood by Japanese when spoken by a native speaker of English).

Therefore, when you need to communicate with a Japanese person in English, try to pick a student or a younger person whose memory of English is likely to be fresh, or write down what you want to say, for many Japanese find it easier to understand English when it is written than when it is spoken.

Generally speaking, most Japanese working at the Embassy or consulates do understand English. However, you will find the Japanese you will learn in this course to be very useful and all Japanese will much appreciate the effort you have made to learn their language.

### 2. *Japanese names*

A Japanese name consists of the family name and the given name, in that order. The family name is far more frequently used in Japanese than in English. First names are usually used only among intimates. Ordinarily, the Japanese do not have middle names. Names in Japanese are almost always written in Chinese characters or *Kanji*, and certain *Kanji* are frequently used in common Japanese names. Therefore, it will be easier for you to recognize Japanese names if you know these *Kanji*.

For example, what do the following names have in common?

**Yamada      Yamanaka      Yamamoto      Yamashita**

The common part *yama* is represented by the *Kanji* 山, whose meaning is '*mountain*.' Most Japanese names are written with two *Kanji*, and 山 is one of the most common ones.

Another common *Kanji* used in names is 田 '*rice field*', which is usually read as *ta* or *da*. Tanaka, Yamada and Nakata are examples of names that contain this *Kanji*.

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

Try writing the name Yamada. What do you think it means?

The following are some other common Kanji used in family names:

|              |     |         |      |                  |      |
|--------------|-----|---------|------|------------------|------|
| <b>shita</b> | (下) | below   | e.g. | <b>Yamashita</b> | (山下) |
| <b>naka</b>  | (中) | middle  | e.g. | <b>Tanaka</b>    | (田中) |
| <b>mura</b>  | (村) | village | e.g. | <b>Yamamura</b>  | (山村) |

Female given names are often recognizable by the presence of *ko* (子) 'child' at the end of the name. Many male names end in *o* (男, 夫) 'man,' 'husband,' 'male,' etc.

The following are some common given names that contain these sounds:

|         |               |               |               |
|---------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| female: | <b>Kazuko</b> | <b>Yasuko</b> | <b>Kimiko</b> |
| male:   | <b>Kazuo</b>  | <b>Yasuo</b>  | <b>Kimio</b>  |

Needless to say, there are many other given names that do not end in *ko* or *o*.

Although Kanji have their own independent meanings, these meanings are not ordinarily recognized consciously when used in Japanese names. The same is true in English. For example, an English speaker would not think a person named Miller actually runs a mill. Likewise, English speakers do not necessarily think of the color 'green' when they meet a person named Green.

### 3. Forms of address

When a Japanese addresses a person, s/he usually adds some title after the person's name. Among the titles, *san* is the most common and is used regardless of the person's sex and marital status. It is translated into English as 'Mr.,' 'Mrs.,' or 'Ms.,' depending on the context. *San* can be used in the following three ways, depending upon the circumstances:

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Family name + <i>san</i>              | e.g. <b>Tanaka-san</b>          |
| 2. First name + <i>san</i>               | e.g. <b>Yasuko-san</b> (female) |
| 3. Family name + first name + <i>san</i> | e.g. <b>Tanaka Yasuko-san</b>   |

Of the above three patterns, the first one is the most common among adults. You can use this pattern with your colleagues, your friends' wives, etc.

The second pattern implies an intimate relationship and is used between very close friends and family members. For example, a wife often addresses her husband by his given name plus *san*. Therefore, if an American woman addresses a Japanese man by his given name (just trying to be friendly, for example), she may risk some misunderstanding by him or any other Japanese who happen to be present.

As a foreigner, it would be a good idea for you to use only the first pattern until you have observed enough to find out exactly when it is all right to use another pattern. It is not uncommon for two Japanese who have been friends for many years to address each other by their last names, especially when the friendship was established in adulthood. So the chances are you will be using only the first pattern (family name + *san*) and seldom have occasion to use any other pattern.

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

The third pattern is the most formal of the three and the least frequently used. It is used when a full name is required ( e.g., when an instructor calls the roll in his/her first class).

**Sensee**, which literally means '*teacher*,' can also be used as a term of address. It is used not only with teachers but also with professors, doctors, lawyers, politicians and other professionals. It is usually attached to the family name, e.g., Tanaka-sensee, but can also occur alone, as in the following:

**Sensee, ohayoo gozaimasu.** *Good morning, Doctor (Professor, etc.).*

Please note that ...**san** can never be used alone and must always follow a personal name or occupation. When referring to yourself, never add a title to your name, for the title is a way of showing politeness or respect to the listener or the person you are talking about.

### 4. Greetings

**Ohayoo gozaimasu** corresponds to '*Good morning*' in English. **Ohayoo** is a casual form of the expression and is often used among friends and colleagues. **Konnichiwa** corresponds to '*Good afternoon*' or '*Good day*' in English, and is used between late morning and a little before dusk. **Konbanwa** corresponds to '*Good evening*.' The above expressions are usually used only on the first encounter of the day. **Sayoonara** (or **Sayonara**) corresponds to '*Good-bye*' in English and implies that the two people will not meet again the same day. Strictly speaking, Japanese does not have an expression for '*How are you?*' although it has the expression **Ogenki desu ka?**, which literally means '*Are you healthy?*'

The difference between the two is that the Japanese expression is said to a person the speaker has not met for some time, whereas in English you can say '*How are you?*' to the same person every day. Another difference is that in English it would be a little odd to answer the question '*How are you?*' with '*I feel terrible*' or '*I have a headache*', whereas in Japanese similar responses do not sound strange.

In other words, **Ogenki desu ka?** functions as a greeting and, at the same time, as an inquiry about one's health, while the English expression primarily functions as a greeting.

The response to **Ohayoo gozaimasu**, **Konnichiwa**, and **Sayoonara** is exactly the same as in English, i.e., you simply repeat the expression.



### *For Further Study*

#### *Notes on pronunciation*

You will find Japanese pronunciation fairly simple, for there are fewer sounds in Japanese than in English and English has many of the Japanese sounds. However, certain features are not present in English. They include:

#### 1. Sounds

**Vowels:** There are only five vowels in Japanese. They are

- a :** as in **father** but much shorter
- i :** as in **machine** but much shorter
- u :** as in **full** but without rounding the lips
- e :** as in **pet**
- o :** as in **boat** but much shorter

**Consonants:** Most Japanese consonants are pronounced almost the same as English consonants. The following sounds do not exist in English or occur in a different position in a word:

- f:** This sound is pronounced between the lips as when you try to blow out a candle but with a little rounding of the lips. It occurs only before **u**. It may sound more like **h** to you than **f**.
- r:** The pronunciation of this sound is between the **t** in **water** and the **d** in **pudding**.
- n:** This sound can be a syllabic nasal. '*Syllabic*' means that the sound acts like a syllable by itself. (We will talk about Japanese syllables below.) It sounds like **n** in **button**. Before **k** or **g** it sounds like **ng** in **sing**.
- ts:** This sound is pronounced like **ts** in **hats** and **nuts**. Unlike English, the sound can occur at the beginning of a word in Japanese.

# Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

## 2. The Syllable

English speakers usually consider consonants and vowels as the basic units of pronunciation. Native speakers of Japanese, however, perceive syllables as the basic units of pronunciation.

Japanese syllables receive approximately equal stress and time no matter how many or how few consonants or vowels they contain. The simplest syllable consists of a single vowel and the most common type is composed of a consonant and a vowel.

You may find the following charts of Japanese syllables convenient. Note that the charts are read across, from left to right. The first symbol in each of the boxes outlined in heavy ink is romanization or romaji, the second is katakana, and the third is hiragana.

### BASIC SYLLABLES

|    |   |   |     |   |   |     |   |   |    |   |   |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|-----|---|---|-----|---|---|----|---|---|----|---|---|
| a  | ア | あ | i   | イ | い | u   | ウ | う | e  | エ | え | o  | オ | お |
| ka | カ | か | ki  | キ | き | ku  | ク | く | ke | ケ | け | ko | コ | こ |
| sa | サ | さ | shi | シ | し | su  | ス | す | se | セ | せ | so | ソ | そ |
| ta | タ | た | chi | チ | ち | tsu | ツ | つ | te | テ | て | to | ト | と |
| na | ナ | な | ni  | ニ | に | nu  | ヌ | ぬ | ne | ネ | ね | no | ノ | の |
| ha | ハ | は | hi  | ヒ | ひ | fu  | フ | ふ | he | ヘ | へ | ho | ホ | ほ |
| ma | マ | ま | mi  | ミ | み | mu  | ム | む | me | メ | め | mo | モ | も |
| ya | ヤ | や |     |   |   | yu  | ユ | ゆ |    |   |   | yo | ヨ | よ |
| ra | ラ | ら | ri  | リ | り | ru  | ル | る | re | レ | れ | ro | ロ | ろ |
| wa | ワ | わ |     |   |   |     |   |   |    |   |   | o  | ヲ | を |
| n  | ン | ん |     |   |   |     |   |   |    |   |   |    |   |   |

### VOICED/VOICELESS COUNTERPARTS OF BASIC SYLLABLES

|    |   |   |    |   |   |    |   |   |    |   |   |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|----|---|---|----|---|---|----|---|---|----|---|---|
| ga | ガ | が | gi | ギ | ぎ | gu | グ | ぐ | ge | ゲ | げ | go | ゴ | ご |
| za | ザ | ざ | ji | ジ | じ | zu | ズ | ず | ze | ゼ | ぜ | zo | ゾ | ぞ |
| da | ダ | だ |    |   |   |    |   |   | de | デ | で | do | ド | ど |
| pa | パ | ぱ | pi | ピ | ぴ | pu | プ | ぷ | pe | ペ | ぺ | po | ポ | ぽ |
| ba | バ | ば | bi | ビ | び | bu | ブ | ぶ | be | ベ | べ | bo | ボ | ぼ |

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

### PALATALIZED COUNTERPARTS OF BASIC SYLLABLES

|     |    |    |     |    |    |     |    |    |
|-----|----|----|-----|----|----|-----|----|----|
| kya | キヤ | きや | kyu | キユ | きゅ | kyo | キヨ | きよ |
| gya | ギヤ | ぎや | gyu | ギユ | ぎゅ | gyo | ギヨ | ぎよ |
| sha | シャ | しゃ | shu | シュ | しゅ | sho | シヨ | しよ |
| ja  | ジャ | じゃ | ju  | ジュ | じゅ | jo  | ジョ | じよ |
| cha | チャ | ちゃ | chu | チュ | ちゅ | cho | チョ | ちよ |
| nya | ニヤ | にや | nyu | ニユ | にゅ | nyo | ニヨ | によ |
| hya | ヒヤ | ひや | hyu | ヒユ | ひゅ | hyo | ヒヨ | ひよ |
| pya | ピヤ | ぴや | pyu | ピユ | ぴゅ | pyo | ピヨ | ぴよ |
| bya | ビヤ | びや | byu | ビユ | びゅ | byo | ビヨ | びよ |
| mya | ミヤ | みや | myu | ミユ | みゅ | myo | ミヨ | みよ |
| rya | リヤ | りや | ryu | リュ | りゅ | ryo | リヨ | りよ |

As mentioned above, a single vowel can be a syllable by itself. Vowel combinations like ai, ie, ue and long vowels like aa, ii, uu, ee, and oo should be considered as two syllables.

Not all syllables end in a vowel. The sound n can be a full syllable by itself. Similarly, when two identical consonants occur one after another, the first consonant is considered a full syllable. This is somewhat similar to the double consonant kk in bookkeeper in English.

You don't hear the sound of the first k in the word. It is like a momentary pause or silence with a tensing of the throat. In Japanese, this silence has the time duration of one syllable and is treated as such. For example, the word ikka 'family' is pronounced as i-(tense pause)-ka (three syllables). Other examples of double consonants follow:

tt: pronounced like tt in hot tea

**itten**                      *one point*

tch: pronounced like tch in hot chocolate

**matchi**                      *match*

ss: pronounced like ss in Jack's son, not like ss in kiss

**issei**                      *first generation*

ssh: pronounced like ssh in Miss Shepherd

**ishshoo**                      *one's life*

pp: pronounced like pp in top position

**ippai**                      *full*

## Lesson 1 Introduction to Japan and the Japanese language

There is a difference in meaning between words with vowel combinations, long vowels, or double consonants on the one hand, and those with single vowels or single consonants on the other.

In any case, no matter how many vowels or consonants there are in the syllable, be sure to apply this general rule of Japanese pronunciation: ' Each syllable receives approximately equal stress and time. ' The following are some examples:

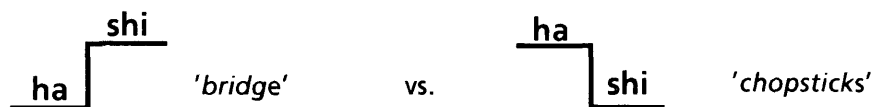
|               |                  |     |              |                           |
|---------------|------------------|-----|--------------|---------------------------|
| <b>kaa</b>    | car              | vs. | <b>ka</b>    | mosquito                  |
| <b>iee</b>    | no               | vs. | <b>ie</b>    | house                     |
| <b>uuru</b>   | wool             | vs. | <b>uru</b>   | to sell                   |
| <b>eesu</b>   | ace              | vs. | <b>esu</b>   | ( <i>the letter</i> ) 's' |
| <b>ooi</b>    | many             | vs. | <b>oi</b>    | nephew                    |
| <b>ikka</b>   | family           | vs. | <b>ika</b>   | squid                     |
| <b>matchi</b> | match            | vs. | <b>machi</b> | town                      |
| <b>issei</b>  | first generation | vs. | <b>isee</b>  | opposite sex              |
| <b>ishoo</b>  | one's life       | vs. | <b>isho</b>  | will, testament           |

In practicing the above words, you may find it helpful to beat in a metronomic fashion with your hand or a pencil, giving one full beat per syllable.

### 3. Accent

In English, accent is indicated by stress difference, which means the stressed syllable is pronounced louder than the other syllables.

In Japanese, accent is shown by pitch difference. Thus, in Japanese, instead of pronouncing one syllable louder, one or more syllables of a word are pronounced at a higher pitch than the rest. Japanese has numerous pairs of words which differ only in pitch. Compare:



However, such pitch differences seldom cause confusion in actual situations, for the context often tells you which word is meant by the speaker. You will find that pitch patterns differ according to regional dialects.

| READING |         | KANJI     |         |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
| 1. スミス  | Sumisu  | 8. なは     | Naha    |
| 2. ブラウン | Buraun  | 9. なごや    | Nagoya  |
| 3. コーヒー | koohii  | 10. きょうと  | Kyooto  |
| 4. ビール  | biiru   | 11. こうべ   | Koobe   |
| 5. ビル   | biru    | 12. おおさか  | Oosaka  |
| 6. ソックス | sokkusu | 13. とうきょう | Tookyoo |
| 7. シャツ  | shatsu  | 14. ふくおか  | Fukuoka |

The above are only a few examples of words written in katakana and hiragana. Your instructor will provide you with supplementary materials for additional practice.

Lesson 2

FINDING OUT  
WHERE YOU ARE

ここはどこですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask where you are
- find out if you are in the place you want to be
- find out if you are at the right station (on a train)
- say 'Thank you'
- ask a Japanese person to repeat and speak more slowly

---

---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---

---

### Situation 1

*Mrs Brown is going shopping in the Ginza. After getting off the subway at the Ginza and walking along the street, she becomes worried, for she is now not sure if she is really in the Ginza*

- Buraun:** Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka? *Excuse me, is this the Ginza?*
- Nihonjin:** Iie, Ginza wa mukoo desu. *No, the Ginza is over in that direction.*
- Buraun:** Doomo. *Thank you.*
- Nihonjin:** Doo itashimashite. *You're welcome.*

### Situation 2

*Mr Taylor wants to take a taxi from the station at which he got off. He sees several people standing in line in front of the station. He thinks the place is a taxi stand but he is not sure*

- Teeraa:** Sumimasen, koko wa takushii-noriba desu ka? *Excuse me, is this a taxi stand?*
- Nihonjin:** Ee, soo desu yo. *Yes, it is*
- Teeraa:** Doomo arigatoo. *Thank you very much.*
- Nihonjin:** Doo itashimashite. *You're welcome.*

### Situation 3

*Ms. White is taking the subway to Akasaka, where the American Embassy is located. Just as her train is about to stop at a station, she checks with a person nearby to find out if the station is Akasaka*

- Howaito:** Sumimasen. Koko wa Akasaka desu ka? *Excuse me, is this Akasaka?*
- Nihonjin:** Ha? *Pardon?*
- Howaito:** Koko wa Akasaka desu ka? *Are we at Akasaka?*
- Nihonjin:** Iie, Akasaka wa tsugi desu. *No, Akasaka is next.*
- Howaito:** Doomo. *Thank you*

**Situation 4**

*Mrs. Smith is in a cab and notices a shopping area where many shops and stores are located. She asks the cab driver what the name of the area is so that she may come back to shop on a later occasion.*

**Sumisu:** Koko wa doko desu ka?

*Where is this?*

**Untenshu:** Shinjuku desu.

*It's Shinjuku.*

**Sumisu:** Sumimasen. Moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasai.

*Excuse me. Please say it again slowly.*

**Untenshu:** Shinjuku desu.

*It's Shinjuku.*

**Sumisu:** Doomo arigatoo.

*Thank you.*



---



---

**VOCABULARY**

**KOTOBA**

---



---

*Dialogs*

|                          |                              |          |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|----------|
| <b>koko</b>              | here                         | ここ       |
| <b>mukoo</b>             | yonder, over there           | むこう      |
| <b>doomo</b>             | thanks, thank you            | どうも      |
| <b>doo itashimashite</b> | you're welcome               | どういたしまして |
| <b>takushii</b>          | taxi                         | タクシー     |
| <b>noriba</b>            | (bus) stop, (taxi) stand     | のりば      |
| <b>ee</b>                | yes (less formal than hai)   | ええ       |
| <b>yo</b>                | (shows emphasis)             | よ        |
| <b>doomo arigatoo</b>    | thank you very much          | どうもありがとう |
| <b>arigatoo</b>          | thank you                    | ありがとう    |
| <b>ha?</b>               | pardon? (I don't understand) | は?       |
| <b>tsugi</b>             | next                         | つぎ       |
| <b>doko</b>              | where                        | どこ       |
| <b>yukkuri</b>           | slowly                       | ゆっくり     |

*Practice*

|             |     |    |
|-------------|-----|----|
| <b>basu</b> | bus | バス |
|-------------|-----|----|

*Place names*

|                    |               |     |
|--------------------|---------------|-----|
| <b>Tokyo-to</b>    | Tokyo City    | 東京都 |
| <b>Shinjuku-ku</b> | Shinjuku Ward | 新宿区 |
| <b>Marunouchi</b>  |               | 丸の内 |
| <b>Akasaka</b>     |               | 赤坂  |
| <b>Nihonbashi</b>  |               | 日本橋 |
| <b>Shinbashi</b>   |               | 新橋  |
| <b>Roppongi</b>    |               | 六本木 |
| <b>Ginza</b>       |               | 銀座  |
| <b>Ueno</b>        |               | 上野  |

---



---

**PRACTICE**

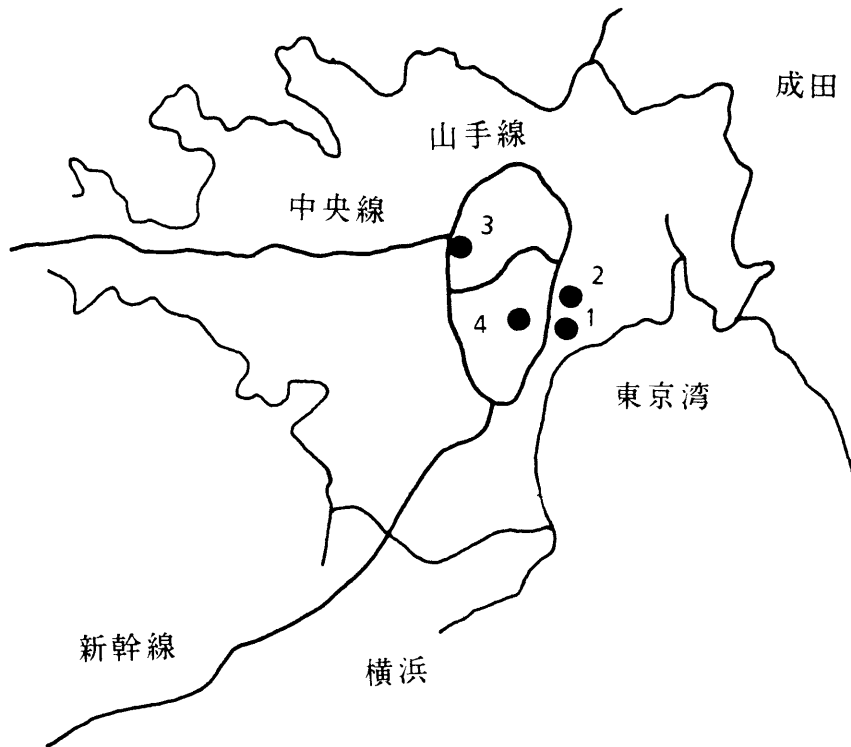

---



---

**RENSHUU**

- A.** Here is a map of Tokyo in which some of the main districts are marked. Practice the pronunciation of the names of the districts by repeating after the teacher.



- |    |                   |  |
|----|-------------------|--|
| 1. | <b>Ginza</b>      | 銀座   |
| 2. | <b>Marunouchi</b> | 丸の内  |
| 3. | <b>Shinjuku</b>   | 新宿   |
| 4. | <b>Akasaka</b>    | 赤坂 (where the American Embassy is located) |

## B. Substitution Drill

Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka?

Akasaka  
Shinbashi  
Marunouchi  
Roppongi  
takushii noriba  
Ginza  
basu noriba  
Ueno  
doko  
Shinjuku

## C. Communication Exercise

Example:

*Student:* Koko wa Ginza desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu.  
*Student:* Doo mo arigatoo.  
*Instructor:* Iie, doo itashimashite.

Student's list

takushii noriba  
Roppongi  
basu noriba  
Ueno  
Marunouchi  
Shinbashi  
Shinjuku  
Ginza  
Akasaka  
Nihonbashi

注: 教師は下記の返事をまぜて使用する

1. いいえ。
2. どういたしまして。
3. いいえ、どういたしまして。

### D. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student A selects a photo and asks where s/he is. Student B answers, referring to the place name written under the photo. Student A responds appropriately. Student B acknowledges A's expression of appreciation.

Example:

*Student A:* **Koko wa doko desu ka?**  
(*showing a photo that s/he has picked up*)  
*Student B:* **Ginza desu.**  
*Student A:* **Doomo arigatoo.**  
*Student B:* **Doo itashimashite.**

### E. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student picks up a photo and asks if it is a particular place. Instructor says 'Pardon me?' Student repeats the same question. Instructor says 'yes' or 'no.' Student thanks instructor and instructor acknowledges student's thanks.

Example:

*Student:* **Sumimasen, koko wa Ginza desu ka? (showing a photo)**  
*Instructor:* **Ha?**  
*Student:* **Koko wa Ginza desu ka?**  
*Instructor:* **Hai, soo desu.**  
*Student:* **Doomo arigatoo.**  
*Instructor:* **Doo itashimashite.**

## F. Communication Exercise

Directions:

Student asks where a place is by pointing to a circle on the map below. Instructor answers where it is. Student asks the instructor to repeat slowly. Instructor repeats slowly. Student writes down the name of the place. Instructor checks if the student got it right.

Example:

- Student:* Sumimasen, koko wa doko desu ka? (*pointing to a circle*)  
*Instructor:* Ginza desu.  
*Student:* Sumimasen, moo ichi-do itte kudasai.  
*Instructor:* Ginza desu.  
*Student:* (*writes it down*)  
*Instructor:* (*checks the name that the student wrote*)



教師用

1. 上野
2. 浅草
3. 日本橋
4. 六本木
5. 新橋

**G. Production & Aural Comprehension** (教師用スクリプト下記参照)

Directions.

Student asks if s/he is in a particular place. Instructor answers by reading the script. Student checks 'yes' or 'no' on the answer sheet.

Example:

- Student:* Sumimasen, koko wa Nihonbashi desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Iie, koko wa Toranomon desu.  
 Nihonbashi wa madamada desu yo.  
*Student:* (puts 'X' in the 'no' column)

Student questions

1. Ask whether or not you are in the Ginza.
2. Ask whether or not you are at Marunouchi.
3. Ask whether or not you are in Akasaka.
4. Ask whether or not you are in Shinjuku.
5. Ask whether or not the place is a taxi stand.
6. Ask whether or not the place is a bus stop.

Student answers

教師用スクリプト

- |                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1.    yes (    ) no (    ) | いいえ、ここは丸の内です。<br>銀座はもっと向こうの方ですよ。   |
| 2.    yes (    ) no (    ) | いいえ、丸の内はこのずっと先です。<br>まっすぐ行けばわかります。 |
| 3.    yes (    ) no (    ) | ええ、そうです。赤坂のどっちへ<br>いらっしゃるんですか。     |
| 4.    yes (    ) no (    ) | は？新宿ですか。<br>ここは渋谷ですから、三つ目ですよ。      |
| 5.    yes (    ) no (    ) | はい、そうです。                           |
| 6.    yes (    ) no (    ) | いいえ、あそこに見えるのかそうです。                 |

## Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

**H.** Look at the following sentences written in Japanese. Can you tell your instructor which parts of the sentences are written in each of the following? (Each is defined later in this lesson.)

1. Kanji
2. Hiragana
3. Katakana

Also find instances of **Furigana**.

とうきょうほんしゅうのほぼちゅうおうにあって、とうきょうわん  
にめんしています。とうざいやく90キロメートル、なんぼく  
やく25キロメートルのほそながかたちをしています。

The following is a translation of the above sentence. Compare the Japanese sentence with its translation. Can you guess why Arabic numerals are used?

### Translation

*Tokyo is located in the center of Honshu and faces the Bay of Tokyo. It has a long, narrow shape, extending approximately 90 kilometers from east to west and about 25 kilometers from north to south.*

---

---

**READING**

---

---

**KANJI**

Names of places in Tokyo

- |    |     |            |
|----|-----|------------|
| 1. | 銀座  | Ginza      |
| 2. | 新橋  | Shinbashi  |
| 3. | 六本木 | Roppongi   |
| 4. | 赤坂  | Akasaka    |
| 5. | 丸の内 | Marunouchi |
| 6. | 日本橋 | Nihonbashi |
| 7. | 新宿  | Shinjuku   |



---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. Notes on the Writing System

In modern written Japanese, the following five kinds of symbols are used:

1. Kanji (Chinese characters)
2. Hiragana
3. Katakana
4. Romaji
5. Arabic numerals

About 90% of the characters used in Japanese sentences are Kanji and Hiragana.

#### 1. Kanji

Although Japanese and Chinese are completely separate languages, Japanese adopted written symbols and much vocabulary from Chinese beginning in the 4th or 5th century A.D. These symbols or Chinese characters are called Kanji. Kanji represent both meaning and sound, and it is often the case that one Kanji has more than one reading (or pronunciation) and meaning. There are more than 45,000 Kanji. However, only 3,000 to 4,000 occur in daily use, of which 1,926 have been chosen as the most important. These 1,926 Kanji are the ones used in newspapers, magazines, and school textbooks (about 1,000 are taught in elementary school). In this text, you will learn to read and comprehend some of these Kanji. They are used in some names of persons, places, signs, etc., and knowledge of these Kanji will be useful for you in Japan.

#### 2. Hiragana

Hiragana and Katakana are used to represent syllables (cf. Lesson 1: FOR FURTHER STUDY). The Hiragana were derived from the cursive style of Kanji and are used for native Japanese words, words that are not written in Kanji, etc. As you have seen in Practice 8, Hiragana are also used to show the reading or pronunciation of a Kanji when put above or to the side of the Kanji. This use of Hiragana is called Furigana.

#### 3. Katakana

The Katakana syllabary is also derived from Kanji. It is more angular than Hiragana. The essential function of Katakana is exactly the same as Hiragana, i.e., to represent syllables. However, Katakana are mainly used for words of foreign origin and in telegrams. Thus, when you write your name in Japanese, you should write it in Katakana.

#### 4. Romaji (*Roman letters*)

Since Romaji is taught in elementary school, most Japanese know it. However, its use in Japanese is very limited.

You will find **Romaji** in

- some road signs, station signs, store signs, etc
- some abbreviated foreign words,  
e.g., PR, CM (*commercial*), YMCA

### 5 Arabic numerals and Kanji numerals

Numerals in Japanese are written in **Kanji** or Arabic figures. **Kanji** numerals are used when sentences are written vertically, while Arabic figures are used when they are written horizontally. (Scientific formulas are written only in Arabic numerals.) The following are examples of the usage of Arabic Numerals

|   |            |                    |
|---|------------|--------------------|
| 1 | 1 + 2 = 3  |                    |
| 2 | 46 センチ     | 46 centimeters     |
| 3 | 11 月 27 日  | November 27th      |
| 4 | 494 - 3586 | (telephone number) |

For reference, the Kanji numerals for examples 2 - 4 above are given below

|                            |                                 |                                      |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 2.                         | 3.                              | 4.                                   |
| 四<br>十<br>六<br>セ<br>ン<br>チ | 十<br>一<br>月<br>二<br>十<br>七<br>日 | 四<br>九<br>四<br>—<br>三<br>五<br>八<br>六 |

## 2. Particles

In Japanese, the roles participants play in actions and the relationships of words in sentences are usually indicated by markers called particles. In this lesson there are three particles, **wa**, **ka** and **yo**.

The particle **wa** is a marker that indicates that the preceding word(s) or phrase is the topic of the sentence, i.e., the thing(s) or person(s) being talked about. For example, in Lesson 1, we studied the expression

**Watakushi wa (name) desu.**                      *I'm (name)*

The particle **wa** here indicates that the speaker is talking about him/herself (**watakushi** 'I') and makes the statement about the topic (him/herself) that his/her name is X.

## Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

Another particle taken up in this lesson is the particle *ka*, which indicates that the sentence preceding it is a question. We will have more to say about this particle below

The third particle *yo*, like *ka*, is a member of the small set of particles that occur at the end of a sentence. They express the speaker's attitude toward the contents of the preceding statement. The function of *yo* is to call the hearer's attention to the contents of the statement. Thus, the word is often translated as '*I tell you*' or '*I assure you*'. This particle is frequently used. However, since it carries a subtle nuance without changing the basic meaning of the statement, it will take some time to really get a 'feeling' for how to use it. Therefore, at present, just try to understand the basic function of *yo* when you hear it, but don't feel you must be able to use it.

### 3. *Ka* as a question marker

One of the areas where English and Japanese are not alike is the different ways in which question sentences are formed. Japanese is much simpler in this area, for all you need to do is add the word *ka* at the end of a statement. For example, in Lesson 1 we studied the expression *Kore wa Tokyo desu.*, '*This is Tokyo*', in locating a city (or area) on a map. If we place *ka* at the end of this sentence, we get a question sentence *Kore wa Tokyo desu ka?*, '*Is this Tokyo?*', which we also studied in Lesson 1. Try making a similar question, '*Is this place the Ginza?*' from *Koko wa Ginza desu.*, '*This place is the Ginza*' (The word *koko* means '*this place*'. We will talk more about this word below.)

(Answer *Koko wa Ginza desu ka?*)

### 4. *Koko wa (place name) desu ka?* and *Koko wa doko desu ka?*

When you want to make sure you know where you are or when you want to ask where you are, you can use the following two questions

|                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>Koko wa Ginza desu ka ?</b> | <i>Is this place the Ginza?</i><br>(Am I in the Ginza?) |
| <b>Koko wa doko desu ka?</b>   | <i>Where is this place?</i><br>(Where am I?)            |

As we studied in Lesson 1, responses to the first question usually begin with *hai* 'yes' (*ee* has the same meaning but is less formal than *hai*), or *ie* 'no.' Thus, if you listen for these words in the responses given by a Japanese person, you can at least guess pretty accurately whether the person answered your question negatively or affirmatively. (Of course, this does not mean that Japanese people will always use one of these words in their answers.)

As for the answer to the second question, the Japanese usually say *(place name) desu*, as in the following example

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Koko wa doko desu ka?</b> | <i>Where is this place?</i> |
| <b>Shinjuku desu.</b>        | <i>Shinjuku.</i>            |

The main thing to remember when you ask a question with a word like *doko* 'where' (or 'who' or 'when', which come up later) is that the Japanese sentence structure (word order) is

not the same as the English word order. That is, a question like *doko 'where'* will usually come in the middle of the sentence, not at the beginning.

### 5. ***Moo ichido yukkuri itte kudasai.*** 'Please say it again slowly'

To any person who is not fully familiar with a language, native speaker speech sounds very fast. This is exactly what you will experience in Japan. Therefore, it will often be important for you to be able to ask the Japanese to repeat and slow down. You will find the expression **Moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasai** very helpful. The following is a rough sketch of the way the expression is constructed:

**Moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasai.**

*one more time slowly please say*

When you want to say 'Please speak slowly,' you can use the following expression:

**Yukkuri itte kudasai.**

*Please say slowly.*

Likewise, when you want to say 'Please say it again,' you can use the following expression:

**Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.**

*Please say it again.*

### 6. ***How to say 'thank you' in Japanese***

One of the most common ways to say 'thank you' in Japanese is to use the expression **Arigatoo**. If you want to be a little more polite, you can say **Doomo arigatoo** (**doomo** is an intensifier). In a less formal situation, **doomo** can be used alone as an expression of gratitude.

### 7. ***Sumimasen*** 'Excuse me,' 'I'm sorry,' or 'Thank you'

In English, when you address a stranger in order to elicit some information (getting directions, for example), or when you want to get the attention of a clerk at a store, you first say 'Excuse me.' A comparable Japanese expression used for these purposes is **Sumimasen**. This expression can also be used when you want to apologize. For example, you can use it when you bump into a person on the street.

Another usage of this expression, which seems to be closely related to the way Japanese think, is to show gratitude. In Japanese, one way to show gratitude for a favor done for you is to say something like '*I'm sorry for the trouble you took for me,*' **Doomo sumimasen**. We will study more about this usage in later lessons.

## Lesson 2 Finding out where you are

---

---

### 会話

---

---

#### Situation 1

ブラウン: すみません。ここは銀座ですか。  
日本人: いいえ、銀座は向こうです。  
ブラウン: どうも。  
日本人: どういたしまして。

#### Situation 2

テラー: すみません。ここはタクシー乗り場ですか。  
日本人: ええ、そうです。  
テラー: どうもありがとう。  
日本人: どういたしまして。

#### Situation 3

ホワイト: すみません。ここは赤坂ですか。  
日本人: は?  
ホワイト: ここは赤坂ですか。  
日本人: いいえ、赤坂は次です。  
ホワイト: どうも。

#### Situation 4

スミス: ここはどこですか。  
運転手: 新宿です。  
スミス: すみません。もう一度、ゆっくり言ってください。  
運転手: 新宿です。  
スミス: どうもありがとう。

Lesson 3

IDENTIFYING OBJECTS

これはなんですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the name of a building
- find out the name of a food dish
- respond appropriately to the information you receive
- order a dish at a restaurant by using words like 'this', 'that', and 'that one over there, please'
- find out if the train you indicate (on a platform) is the one you want to get on
- say that you don't speak Japanese well
- ask someone to give the Japanese equivalent of an English word

---

---

## DIALOGS

---

---

## KAIWA

### Situation 1

*Ms. Jones enters a restaurant and sees someone eating something that looks appealing to her. She doesn't know the name of the dish but would like to order the same thing.*

**Joonzu:** *(pointing to the dish)*  
**Are wa nan desu ka?**

*What's that over there?*

**Ueetoresu:** **Sukiyaki desu.**

*It's Sukiyaki.*

**Joonzu:** **Jaa, are onegai shimasu.**

*Then I'd like to have some of that please.*

**Ueetoresu:** **Hai, kashikomarimashita.**

*Certainly.*

### Situation 2

*Ms. Kelly is on a platform waiting for a Yamanote Line train. After a short while, she sees a train coming in. She checks with a Japanese person standing nearby to make sure it's her train.*

**Kerii:** **Sumimasen. Are wa Yamanote-sen desu ka?**

*Excuse me. Is that the Yamanote-line over there?*

**Nihonjin:** **Iie, Yamanote-sen ja arimasen. Yamanote-sen wa san-bansen desu yo.**

*No, it's not the Yamanote-line train. The Yamanote-line comes on Track number 3.*

**Kerii:** **Sumimasen. Yoku wakarimasen.**

*I'm sorry. I don't understand very well.*

**Nihonjin:** **Soo desu ka. Komatta na. . . No Yamanote-sen.**

*Oh. What shall I say. . . That is not the Yamanote-line.*

**Kerii:** **Aa, wakarimasu. Doo mo arigatoo.**

*Oh, I see. Thank you very much.*

**Nihonjin:** **Doo itashimashite.**

*You're welcome.*

**Situation 3**

*Mr. Davis is walking back to the American Embassy. He looks for the Hotel Okura, a tall building near the Embassy, as a landmark. He sees a tall building and asks a passerby if it is the hotel. He finds out it is not. The passerby points out a different building which is the Okura.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Deibisu:</b> Sumimasen. Are wa Okura Hoteru desu ka?                    | <i>Excuse me. Is that Hotel Okura over there?</i> |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> Iie, Okura Hoteru wa are desu. (pointing to the building) | <i>No, Hotel Okura is that one over there.</i>    |
| <b>Deibisu:</b> Aa, soo desu ka. Doo mo arigatoo.                          | <i>Oh. Thank you very much.</i>                   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> Doo itashimashite.  | <i>You're welcome.</i>                            |

**Situation 4**

*Ms. Robinson is walking along the street in the American Center area. She comes across an old, traditional Japanese building which looks like a shrine and asks a passerby what it is. She wants to be sure she can remember the word for shrine.*

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Robinson:</b> Sumimasen. Kore wa nan desu ka?                                   | <i>Excuse me. What is this?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> Jinja desu yo.  | <i>It's a shrine.</i>   |
| <b>Robinson:</b> Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. | <i>I'm sorry. I don't understand Japanese very well. Please say it again.</i> |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> Jinja desu.   | <i>It's a shrine.</i>   |
| <b>Robinson:</b> Soo desu ka. Doo mo arigatoo.                                     | <i>I see. Thank you very much.</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> Doo itashimashite.  | <i>Don't mention it.</i>  |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                           |   |           |
|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| <b>are</b>                | that (thing over there)                         | あれ        |
| <b>sukiyaki</b>           | sukiyaki<br>(a beef and vegetable dish)         | すきやき      |
| <b>jaa</b>                | well (then)                                     | じゃあ       |
| <b>onagai shimasu</b>     | (may I have it) please                          | おねがいします   |
| <b>kashikomarimashita</b> | certainly, of course<br>(response to a request) | かしこまりました  |
| <b>Yamanote-sen</b>       | Yamanote-line train                             | やまのてせん    |
| <b>ja arimasen</b>        | am /is /are not                                 | じゃありません   |
| <b>...bansen</b>          | (track) number                                  | .....ばんせん |
| <b>yoku</b>               | well  | よく        |
| <b>Komatta na</b>         | It's a problem; I don't know<br>what to do /say | こまったな     |
| <b>aa</b>                 | Oh!   | ああ        |
| <b>jinja</b>              | shrine  | じんじゃ      |
| <b>Nihongo</b>            | Japanese language                               | にほんご      |
| <b>ga</b>                 | (subject marker)                                | が         |

Practice

|                   |  |        |
|-------------------|--|--------|
| <b>tempura</b>    | tempura (deep fried food)                                    | てんぷら   |
| <b>teriyaki</b>   | teriyaki (meat broiled<br>with teriyaki sauce)               | てりやき   |
| <b>katsudon</b>   | katsudon (a bowl of rice<br>topped with a fried pork cutlet) | かつどん   |
| <b>tendon</b>     | tendon (a bowl of rice topped<br>with friedprawns)           | てんどん   |
| <b>(o)sashimi</b> | sashimi (sliced raw fish)                                    | (お)さしみ |
| <b>raamen</b>     | ramen (Chinese noodles)                                      | ラーメン   |

|                 |  |       |
|-----------------|--|-------|
| <b>soba</b>     | soba (buckwheat noodles)   | そば    |
| <b>(o)sushi</b> | (a small oblong piece of vinegared rice topped with raw fish, shellfish, etc. Commonly called nigiri.) | (お)すし |

**Notes**

|             |              |    |
|-------------|--------------|----|
| <b>sore</b> | that (thing) | それ |
| <b>de</b>   | by means of  | で  |

**Japanese objects**

|                  |                                  |       |
|------------------|----------------------------------|-------|
| <b>kimono</b>    | Japanese native clothing         | きもの   |
| <b>obi</b>       | Japanese sash used for kimono    | おび    |
| <b>(o)hashi</b>  | chopsticks                       | (お)はし |
| <b>origami</b>   | folding paper                    | おりがみ  |
| <b>(o)kane</b>   | money                            | (お)かね |
| <b>soroban</b>   | abacus                           | そろばん  |
| <b>uchiwa</b>    | Japanese fan                     | うちわ   |
| <b>geta</b>      | wooden clogs                     | げた    |
| <b>ningyoo</b>   | doll                             | にんぎょう |
| <b>furoshiki</b> | square cloth for wrapping things | ふろしき  |

**Loan words**

|                    |                     |         |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------|
| <b>fuirumu</b>     | film                | フィルム    |
| <b>kamera</b>      | camera              | カメラ     |
| <b>terebi</b>      | television          | テレビ     |
| <b>miruku</b>      | milk                | ミルク     |
| <b>rekoodo</b>     | record              | レコード    |
| <b>aisukuriimu</b> | ice cream           | アイスクリーム |
| <b>rajio</b>       | radio               | ラジオ     |
| <b>tabako</b>      | tobacco, cigarettes | たばこ     |
| <b>uisukii</b>     | whisky              | ウイスキー   |
| <b>seetaa</b>      | sweater             | セーター    |
| <b>biru</b>        | building            | ビル      |

### Lesson 3 Identifying objects

#### *Personalized list -- favorite food names*

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Transformation Drill**

Kore wa sukiyaki desu ka? → Sore wa sukiyaki desu ka?

(o)sashimi  
 raamen  
 tenpura  
 nan  
 teriyaki  
 katsudon  
 Yamanote-sen

**B. Communication Exercise**

Directions:

Goal: Find out the names of the objects on the table or in the photos.

Steps: (1) Pick an object and choose the name for it from the list below.

(2) Pointing to the object, ask the instructor if the object is that item by saying: **Kore/sore/are wa (item) desu ka?** You must choose the correct word among **kore**, **sore** and **are**, depending on the position of the object, i.e., whether it is near you or near the instructor, etc.

Student's list

|          |           |         |
|----------|-----------|---------|
| kimono   | uchiwa    | soroban |
| origami  | furoshiki | okane   |
| (o)hashi | geta      | obi     |

### C. Dialog Exercise

Directions:

The student asks what the name of a building is, using the expression **Are wa nan desu ka?** The instructor answers. The student says that s/he doesn't understand Japanese very well and asks the instructor to repeat.

Example:

**Student:** Are wa nan desu ka?  
**Instructor:** Okura Hoteru desu.  
**Student:** Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.  
Moo ichi-do itte kudasai.  
**Instructor:** Okura Hoteru desu.

注: 教師は答を与えた後、出来ればその場所、建物の写真を見せること。

教師用リスト    1. オークラホテル    2. 日枝(ひえ)神社    3. 皇居  
                  4. 国会議事堂    5. 霞が関ビル    6. 国立劇場

## D. Communication Exercise

注 教師はこの練習問題を始める前、日本の食べ物について一応説明しておく。

Directions.

The student asks what a particular dish is, pointing to an item on the menu below. The instructor answers. The student orders the food about which s/he has asked. If the student doesn't think s/he'd like it, s/he tries another item.

Example:

**Student:** **Kore wa nan desu ka?**  
(pointing to the item on the menu)

**Instructor:** **Sukiyaki desu.**

**Student:** **Aa, soo desu ka.**  
**Kore wa nan desu ka?**  
(pointing to another name item on the menu)

**Instructor:** **Katsudon desu.**

**Student:** **Jaa, kore onegai shimasu**

| <u>メニュー</u> |       |
|-------------|-------|
| すきやき        | 2,500 |
| おすし         | 1,500 |
| おさしみ        | 1,200 |
| てんぷら        | 1,000 |
| てりやき        | 900   |
| かつどん        | 850   |
| てんどん        | 700   |
| ラーメン        | 550   |

## Lesson 3 Identifying objects

### E. Communication Game 注: 教師は下記参照

Directions:

The student chooses the name of a building from the map of the Embassy area and asks what it is called in Japanese. The instructor gives the answers.

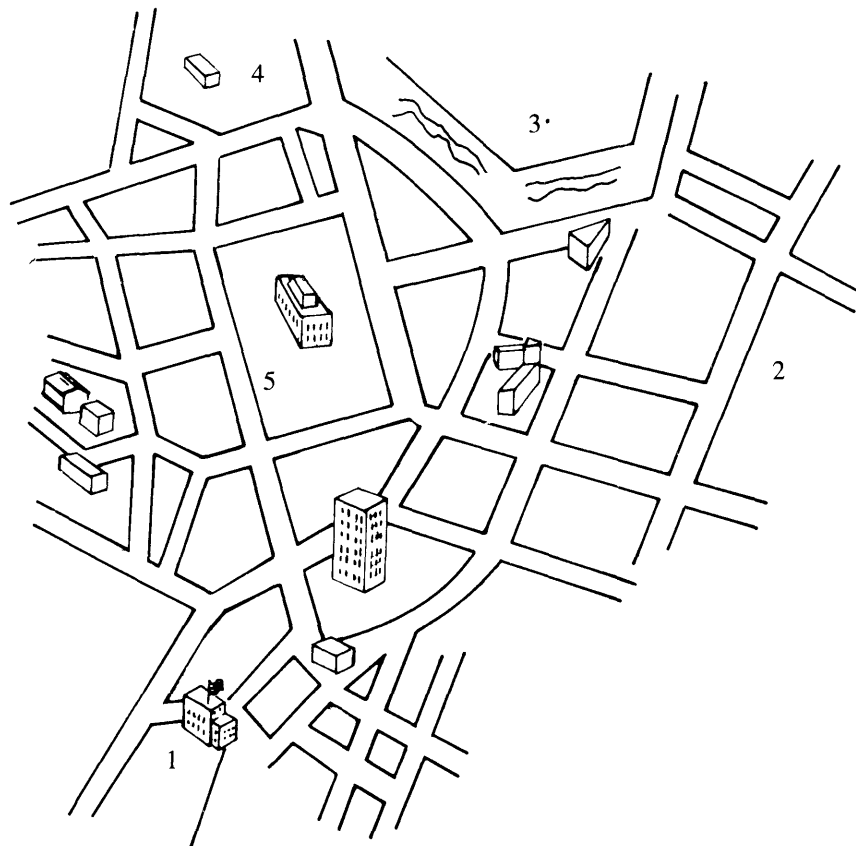
Example:

*Student:* 'Hie Shrine' wa Nihongo de nan desu ka?

*Instructor:* 'Hie jinja' desu.

Student's list

1. American Embassy
2. Hibiya Park
3. Imperial Palace
4. National Theater
5. National Diet



1. アメリカ大使館 2. 日比谷公園 3. 皇居 4. 国立劇場 5. 国会議事堂

**F. Production & Comprehension**

Think of two things you would like to know the Japanese for. Use (thing) wa Nihongo de nan desu ka? to find out.



---

---

**READING**

---

---

**KANJI**

The names of buildings and places:

- |          |                   |                              |
|----------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 日比谷公園 | Hibiya Kooen      | Hibiya Park                  |
| 2. 国立劇場  | Kokuritsu Gekijoo | National Theater             |
| 3. 大使館   | taishikan         | embassy                      |
| 4. 神社    | jinja             | shrine                       |
| 5. 浅草    | Asakusa           | <i>(place name in Tokyo)</i> |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. 'this' and 'that'

When you refer or point to an object (or person), you often use 'this' and 'that' in English. Japanese has the following three words:

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| <b>kore</b> | <i>used for an object near the speaker (comparable to 'this')</i>                                    |
| <b>sore</b> | <i>used for an object near the listener (comparable to 'that')</i>                                   |
| <b>are</b>  | <i>used for an object away from the speaker and listener (comparable to 'that (one) over there')</i> |

When you want to know what the object you have in mind is called, you can ask the following question:

**Kore/sore/are wa nan desu ka?**      *What is this/that/that over there?*

### 2. How to say 'I'll take it' or 'I'll have it'

When you want to order a dish or buy some merchandise, you can use the following expression:

**Jaa, sore onegai shimasu.**      *Well, then, that one please*

The word **jaa** means 'well (then)' and **onegai shimasu** literally means 'I make a request (for) ...' and is comparable to 'please' in English.

In place of **sore** in the above expression, you can use names of various objects or dishes. For example, when you want to order **sukiyaki**, you can say:

**Sukiyaki onegai shimasu.**

### 3. How to indicate acknowledgement

In English, you can sometimes say 'Is that right?' or the like to acknowledge that you have heard what another said without necessarily agreeing. Look at the following:

**Aa, soo desu ka?**      *Oh, is that so?/I see /Good*

The expression looks like a question but is really an acknowledgement. It is used when you want to indicate that you've understood what was said.

## Lesson 3 Identifying objects

### 4. *'I don't understand Japanese well.'*

It may happen that you need to tell a Japanese person that you don't speak Japanese very well. You can use the following expression for this purpose.

**(Yoku) Nihongo ga wakarimasen.**     *I don't understand Japanese (well).*

OR

**Nihongo ga (yoku) wakarimasen.**

In Lesson 1 you learned that *wakarimasu* means 'to understand.' The word *wakarimasen* in the above sentence is the negative form of *wakarimasu*.

### 5. *How to find out the name of an object in Japanese*

When you want to find out the name of an object in Japanese, you can use the following expression:

**... wa Nihongo de nan desu ka?**     *What is ... in Japanese?*

For example, when you want to know the Japanese word for 'radio', you can say:

**'Radio' wa Nihongo de nan desu ka?**     *What is 'radio' in Japanese?*

You can use the above question pattern whenever you want to ask the instructor Japanese words for objects you may need to know.

### 6. *Particles ga and de*

The particle *ga* ordinarily indicates that the preceding word or phrase is the subject of the sentence. Thus it is sometimes called the 'subject marker.' You will sometimes see *ga* used with words that are not translated into English as subjects, e.g., **Nihongo ga wakarimasen**, which is normally translated as 'I don't understand Japanese.' What this really means is 'Japanese is not understandable to me,' so *ga* really does mark the subject in this sentence as well.

The particle *de* has several meanings. The meaning in this lesson is 'in,' as in **Nihongo de 'in Japanese.'** Later (Lesson 10), we will see it also has the meaning of 'by means of,' as in **basu de 'by bus.'**

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

ジョーンズ: あれは何ですか。  
ウエイトレス: すきやきてす。  
ジョーンズ: じゃあ、あれお願いします。  
ウエイトレス: はい、かしこまりました。

**Situation 2**

ケリー: すみません。あれは山の手線ですか。  
日本人: いいえ、山の手線じゃありません。  
山の手線は三番線ですよ。  
ケリー: すみません。よくわかりません。  
日本人: そうですか。困ったな..... ノー・山の手線。  
ケリー: ああ、わかります。どうもありがとう。  
日本人: どういたしまして。

**Situation 3**

テイヒス: すみません。あれはオークラホテルですか。  
日本人: いいえ、オークラホテルはあれです。  
テイヒス: ああ、そうですか。どうもありがとう。  
日本人: どういたしまして。

**Situation 4**

ロビンソン: すみません。これは何ですか。  
日本人: 神社ですよ。  
ロビンソン: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。  
もう一度言って下さい。  
日本人: 神社です。  
ロビンソン: そうですか。どうもありがとう。  
日本人: どういたしまして。

## Lesson 3 Identifying objects

Lesson 4

ASKING ABOUT THE AVAILABILITY  
OF MERCHANDISE  
OR SERVICES

アスビルンありますか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a store or shop carries the merchandise you want
- find out if a restaurant serves the dish you want
- find out if a place you want to go to is nearby
- find out if a hotel has any vacant rooms
- find out if there is a person available who can speak English

---

---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---

---

### Situation 1

While walking in the street, Mrs. Brown suddenly gets a headache, so she goes into a pharmacy nearby and asks if they have aspirin.

- Buraun:** Sumimasen.  
Asupirin arimasu ka?      *Excuse me.  
Do you have aspirin?*
- Nihonjin:** Hai, gozaimasu.      *Yes, we do.*

### Situation 2

Mr. Brown goes to a snack bar to eat lunch. When he is waited on, he asks whether they serve spaghetti.

- Ueetoresu:** Irasshaimase.      *Welcome.*
- Buraun:** Supagetti arimasu ka?      *Do you have spaghetti?*
- Ueetoresu:** Hai, gozaimasu.      *Yes, we do.*
- Buraun:** Jaa, onegai shimasu.      *Then, I'd like to have some.*

### Situation 3

Mrs. Taylor is at a shopping area her friend recommended. She wants to go to a department store. Although she is quite sure there is at least one department store nearby, she can't find it, so she asks a Japanese person walking in the street.

- Teeraa:** Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni  
depaato ga arimasu ka?      *Excuse me. Is there  
a department store near here?*
- Nihonjin:** Ee, tsugi no kado no migi ni  
arimasu.      *Yes, it's on your right at the  
next corner.*
- Teeraa:** Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku  
wakarimasen.  
Koko ni kaite kudasai.      *I'm sorry. I don't understand  
Japanese very well.  
Could you please draw (a map) here?*
- Nihonjin:** Ee, ii desu yo.      *Certainly.*



## Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

### Situation 4

*Mr. Evans is in a nearby city. Since he didn't have time to arrange for accommodations beforehand, he has to find a place to stay. He goes to a hotel to see if they have a vacant room. After he finds out that a room is available, the clerk begins to ask him a question he can't understand.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Ebansu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Heya ga arimasu ka?</b>                      | <i>Excuse me.<br/>Do you have a room available?</i>            |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Hai, gozaimasu.<br/>Ohitori-sama desu ka?</b>               | <i>Yes, we do.<br/>Are you alone?</i>                          |
| <i>Ebansu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Eego ga wakaruru<br/>hito wa imasen ka?</b>      | <i>I'm sorry. Is there anyone who<br/>understands English?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Chotto omachi kudasai.<br/>A, puriizu ueeto a moomento.</b> | <i>Wait a moment, please.<br/>Oh, please wait a moment.</i>    |



## VOCABULARY

## KOTOBA

Dialogs

|                            |   |           |
|----------------------------|---|-----------|
| <b>arimasu</b>             | there is /are, have<br>(used with objects but not people)     | あります      |
| <b>gozaimasu</b>           | there is /are, have (deferential)                             | ございます     |
| <b>kono chikaku</b>        | near here, close by   | このちかく     |
| <b>ni</b>                  | at, in, to  | に         |
| <b>depaato</b>             | department store  | デパート      |
| <b>no</b>                  | of (indicates that word before no<br>describes word after no) | の         |
| <b>kado</b>                | corner  | かと        |
| <b>tsugi no kado</b>       | next corner   | つぎのかと     |
| <b>migi</b>                | right (side)  | みぎ        |
| <b>kaite kudasai</b>       | please write  | かいてください   |
| <b>kaite</b>               | write, draw (TE form of kakimasu)                             | かいて       |
| <b>kudasai</b>             | please (usually used after TE form<br>of a verb)              | ください      |
| <b>ii</b>                  | good, O.K.  | いい        |
| <b>heya</b>                | room  | へや        |
| <b>hitori</b>              | one person, single  |           |
| <b>(o)hitori-sama</b>      | one person, single(polite)                                    | (お)ひとりさま  |
| <b>...sama</b>             | polite form of ...san   | ...さま     |
| <b>Eego ga wakaru hito</b> | a person who understands<br>English                           | えいこかわかるひと |
| <b>Eego</b>                | English (language)  | えいこ       |
| <b>wakaru</b>              | understand<br>(dictionary form of <b>wakarimasu</b> )         | わかる       |
| <b>hito</b>                | person  | ひと        |
| <b>imasen</b>              | there is not/are not<br>(people or animals)                   | いません      |
| <b>chotto</b>              | a little  | ちょっと      |
| <b>omachi kudasai</b>      | please wait (polite)  | おまちください   |

**Practice**

|                         |                         |          |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------|
| <b>kissaten</b>         | tea parlor, coffee shop | きっさてん    |
| <b>irasshaimase</b>     | welcome (polite)        | いらっしゃいませ |
| <b>michi</b>            | street                  | みち       |
| <b>massugu</b>          | straight                | まっすぐ     |
| <b>itte</b>             | go (TE form of ikimasu) | 行って      |
| <b>hidari</b>           | left                    | ひだり      |
| <b>hidari ni magaru</b> | turn left               | ひだりにまがる  |
| <b>magaruto</b>         | after having turned     | まがると     |
| <b>resutoran</b>        | restaurant              | レストラン    |
| <b>supagetti</b>        | spaghetti               | スパゲッティ   |
| <b>bifuteki</b>         | beefsteak               | ビフテキ     |
| <b>karee-raisu</b>      | curried rice            | カレーライス   |
| <b>(o)sake</b>          | sake                    | (お)さけ    |
| <b>sugu</b>             | soon, right there       | すぐ       |
| <b>mo</b>               | also, too               | も        |
| <b>soo desu ka</b>      | I see.                  | そうですね    |

**Notes**

|              |                                      |     |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>imasu</b> | there is/are (for people or animals) | います |
| <b>chizu</b> | map                                  | ちず  |

**Personalized list**

---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Asupirin (ga) arimasu ka?

karee-raisu  
fuirumu  
sandoitchi  
biiru  
heya  
koohii

**B. Substitution Drill**

Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?

takushii noriba  
resutoran  
kissaten  
basu noriba  
depaato  
hoteru

**C. Listening Activity**

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks whether a particular item is available, referring to the list below. The instructor gives an answer. The student indicates on the answer sheet below whether the item is available or not.

Example:

*Student:* **Asupirin ga arimasu ka?**  
*Instructor:* **Hai, gozaimasu.**  
*Student:* (Check X in parentheses next to yes)

## Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

### Student's list

1. **asupirin**
2. **biiru**
3. **bifuteki**
4. **heya**
5. **fuirumu**
6. **tabako**
7. **koohii**

### Answer sheet

- |         |        |
|---------|--------|
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no |

#### 教師用スクリプト

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 はい、ございます。                   | 5 はい、「桜」ですか、「富士」ですか。       |
| 2 はい、「きりん」でよろしいですか。           | 6 申し訳ございません。たはこは置いてございません。 |
| 3 申し訳ございませんか、ヒフテキはございません。     | 7 いいえ、お茶しかございません。          |
| 4 あいにくですか、今日は満員で一つも部屋はございません。 |                            |

## D. Question and Answer Activity

注 教師は下記スクリプト参照

### Directions

The student asks whether or not a place is located in the vicinity. The instructor answers. The student checks if the answer from the instructor is yes, no, or don't know.

### Example:

- Student:** Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?  
**Instructor:** Ee, sugu soko ni arimasu yo.  
**Student:** (Check yes on the answer sheet.)

### Student's list

1. **resutoran**
2. **kissaten**
3. **takushii noriba**
4. **depaato**
5. **basu noriba**

### Answer sheet

- |         |        |                |
|---------|--------|----------------|
| ( ) yes | ( ) no | ( ) don't know |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no | ( ) don't know |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no | ( ) don't know |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no | ( ) don't know |
| ( ) yes | ( ) no | ( ) don't know |

#### 教師用スクリプト

- |                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. はい、あれかそうです。   | 4. ええ、あの角の左にあります。         |
| 2. さあ、私もわかりません。  | 5. ハス乗り場ですか。この近くにはありませんよ。 |
| 3. ええ、すぐそこにあります。 |                           |

## E. Ordering Practice

Directions:

The instructor greets the student. The student asks about the availability of food or a beverage, referring to the list below. The instructor says yes. The student orders the food or beverage s/he asked about.

Example:

*Instructor:* Irasshaimase.  
*Student:* Biiru arimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, gozaimasu.  
*Student:* Jaa, onegai shimasu.

Student's list

(o)sushi  
biiru  
aisukuriimu  
(o)sake  
karee-raisu  
bifuteki  
kokakoora

## F. Practice in Getting Directions

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks whether or not the place on the list is located in the vicinity. The instructor gives an answer by referring to his/her script. The student asks the instructor to draw a map if the answer is yes (example 1), otherwise s/he says: *Soo desuka? Doomo.* (example 2)

Example 1:

*Student:* Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Ee, kono michi o massugu itte, tsugi no kado o hidari ni magaruto sugu desu.  
*Student:* Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Koko ni chizu o kaite kudasai.  
*Instructor:* Ee, ii desu yo.

Example 2:

*Student:* Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Saa, watashi mo wakarimasen ga . . .  
*Student:* Soo desu ka. Doomo.

## Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

### Student's list

**basu noriba**  
**resutoran**  
**hoteru**  
**takushii noriba**  
**kissaten**  
**depaato**

### 教師用スクリプト

1. ありますよ。この道を真っ直ぐ行って、次の信号で左に曲がって、それから100メートル位のところですよ。
2. は？ レストランですか。ああ、この先の四つ角の左にあります。
3. さあ、私もわかりません。
4. タクシー乗り場？ ええと…… ああ、あのホテルの前にありますよ。
5. 喫茶店ねえ…… さあ、この近くにはありませんねえ。
6. はい、この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の角を左に曲がるとすぐです。大きい建物ですから、すぐわかりますよ。。

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |    |     |        |                            |
|----|-----|--------|----------------------------|
| 1. | のりば | noriba | a (bus) stop, (taxi) stand |
| 2. | 右   | migi   | right                      |
| 3. | 左   | hidari | left                       |
| 4. | 駅   | eki    | a (train) station          |

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. *How to ask about the existence of an object*

The word *arimasu* means 'exist,' and this word can be used when you want to ask about the existence or availability of objects or merchandise. Look at the following.

... *ga arimasu ka?* *Is there ... ?*

The above expression can mean 'Do you carry ... ?' or 'Do you have ... ?'  
Thus, in a pharmacy, if you want to ask whether they have aspirin, you can say:

*Asupirin ga arimasu ka?* *Do you have aspirin?*

Likewise, when you want to ask if a hotel has a room available, you can say:

*Heya ga arimasu ka?* *Do you have a room (available)?*

Please note that when you are talking about people, you should use *imasu*, not *arimasu*.

Example:

*Kono heya ni Amerikajin ga imasu ka?* *Is there an American in this room?*

### 2. *How to ask about the location of an object, store, etc.*

The expression *kono chikaku ni* means 'in this vicinity' or 'near here.' You can use it when you ask about the location of an object, store, etc., as in the following example

*Kono chikaku ni depaato ga arimasu ka?*  
*Is there a department store near here?*

### 3. *How to find a person who understands English*

A very good way to get help is to find a person who understands English. You can use the following expression for this purpose

*Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasen ka?* *Isn't there a person who understands English?*

The word *wakaru* is a form of the verb *wakarimasu*, 'understand.'  
While *wakarimasu* is used at the end of a sentence (in polite speech), *wakaru* is used in the middle of a sentence, as in the above example. The word *hito* means 'person,' and the phrase *Eego ga wakaru hito* means 'a person who understands English.' The word *imasen* is the negative form of *imasu*.



#### 4. How to say 'Please write it here'

In getting directions to a place, you may want to ask a Japanese person to draw you a map. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

**Chizu o kaite kudasai.** *Draw me a map, please.*

The word *kudasai* at the end of the above sentence is comparable to 'please' in English, and is used when you ask a person to do something for you. The phrase *kaite kudasai* means 'please write down' or 'please draw.' Thus, when you want to say something like 'Please draw a map here,' you can say:

**Koko ni chizu o kaite kudasai.** *Please draw a map here.*

You may wonder what the difference is between . . . *onagai shimasu*, which you learned in Lesson 3, and . . . *kudasai*, because both can mean 'please' in English. *Onagai shimasu* is used when you place an order at a restaurant, order some merchandise at a store, etc. while . . . *kudasai* is used when you ask somebody to do something for you.

Compare the expressions in 1 and 2 below.

1. **Are onagai shimasu.** *That one, please.*  
**Sukiyaki onagai shimasu.** *Sukiyaki, please.*

2. **Chizu o kaite kudasai.** *Draw (me) a map, please.*  
**Koko ni kaite kudasai.** *Write (it) here, please.*

As the above examples indicate, *onagai shimasu* is used after some objects (e.g., *are* and *sukiyaki* in the above sentences), while *kudasai* is used after a word that indicates some action (e.g., *kaite* 'write/draw' in the above sentences).

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

フラウン すみません。アスピリン ありますか。  
日本人 はい、ございます。

**Situation 2**

フラウン スパケノテイ ありますか。  
日本人 はい、ございます。  
フラウン じゃ、お願いします。

**Situation 3**

テーラー すみません。この近くにテパートかありますか。  
日本人 ええ、次の角の右にあります。  
テーラー すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。  
ここに書いてください。  
日本人 ええ、いいですよ。

**Situation 4**

エハンス すみません。部屋かありますか。  
日本人 はい、ございます。お一人様ですか。  
エハンス すみません。英語かわかる人はいませんか。  
日本人 ちょっとお待ちください。  
あ、プリース ウエイト ア モーメント。

## Lesson 4 Asking about the availability of merchandise or services

Lesson 5

INTRODUCTIONS

どうぞよろしく。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a person is the one you have in mind
- state your name and where you work
- introduce yourself and your spouse after being introduced to a Japanese person
- confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced
- cope with a compliment of the sort Japanese people often make, like 'You speak Japanese well' (even if you only know a few sentences)

---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mr Brown is in his office at the Embassy expecting Ms Suzuki, whom he has never met. He sees a Japanese woman looking for someone.*

|                |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|
| <b>Buraun:</b> | <b>Shitsurei desu ga, Suzuki-san desu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me, are you Ms Suzuki?</i>      |
| <b>Suzuki:</b> | <b>Hai, soo desu.</b>                         | <i>Yes, I am</i>                          |
| <b>Buraun:</b> | <b>Hajimemashite. Buraun desu.</b>            | <i>How do you do? My name is Brown</i>    |
| <b>Suzuki:</b> | <b>Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.</b>        | <i>How do you do? Pleased to meet you</i> |

### Situation 2

*Ms O'Neil is Mr Black's secretary at the American Embassy. Mr Black is meeting with Mr Kobayashi.*

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| <b>Burakku:</b>   | <b>Kobayashi-san, kore wa hisho no Oniiru desu.</b>                        | <i>Mr Kobayashi, this is my secretary, Ms O'Neil</i>                       |
| <b>Oniiru:</b>    | <b>Kobayashi-san desu ne. Hajimemashite. Oniiru desu. Doozo yoroshiku.</b> | <i>Mr Kobayashi, how do you do? My name is O'Neil. Pleased to meet you</i> |
| <b>Kobayashi:</b> | <b>Kobayashi desu. Doozo yoroshiku.</b>                                    | <i>My name is Kobayashi. Pleased to meet you</i>                           |

### Situation 3

*Mr Williams is an American businessman who has been in Japan for five years and speaks fluent Japanese. He is at a party with Mr Sato of the Ministry of International Trade and Industry. He sees Mr Porter, who works at the American Consulate and has been in Japan just a couple of weeks.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <b>Uriamusu:</b> | <b>Pootaa-san, kochira wa Tsusanshoo no Satoo-san desu.</b>                  | <i>Mr Porter, this is Mr Sato of the Ministry of International Trade and Industry</i>              |
| <b>Pootaa:</b>   | <b>Hajimemashite. Amerika Taishikan no Pootaa desu. Kore wa meeshi desu.</b> | <i>How do you do? My name is Porter, from the American Embassy. This is my calling card</i>        |
| <b>Satoo:</b>    | <b>Hajimemashite. Satoo desu. Doozo yoroshiku.</b>                           | <i>How do you do? (handing his calling card to Mr Porter) My name is Sato. Pleased to meet you</i> |

**Situation 4**

*Mr. and Mrs Kelly are at a reception. They are introduced to Mr. Ogawa by Mr. Taylor, who works at the American Embassy.*

*Taylor:* **Mr. Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly.  
Mr. Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.** *(In English) Mr Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly Mr Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.*

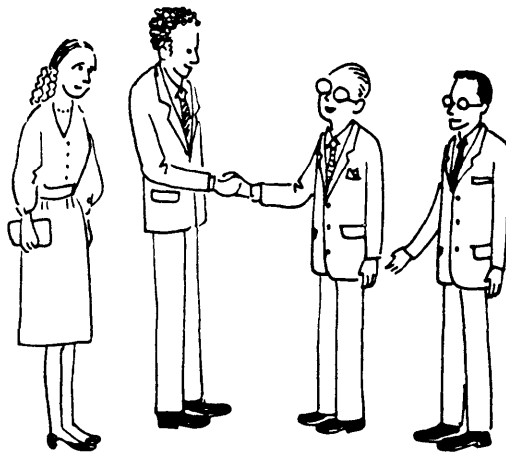
*Ogawa:* **How do you do?  
Pleased to meet you.** *(In English) How do you do? Pleased to meet you.*

*Kerii:* **Kerii desu. Hajimemashite.  
Kore wa kanai desu.** *My name is Kelly. How do you do? This is my wife.*

*Kerii(okusan):* **Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.** *How do you do? Pleased to meet you.*

*Ogawa:* **Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne.** *You speak Japanese very well.*

*Kerii(okusan):* **lie, madamada desu.** *Oh, no. We're still beginners.*



---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                             |  |         |
|-----------------------------|--|---------|
| <b>shitsuree desu ga...</b> | excuse me, but...  | しつれいですが |
| <b>hajimemashite</b>        | How do you do? Glad to meet you.<br>(lit., It's the first time.) | はじめまして  |
| <b>hisho</b>                | secretary  | ひしょ     |
| <b>ne</b>                   | isn't it? (asks for confirmation)                                | ね       |
| <b>doozo yoroshiku</b>      | Pleased to meet you. (lit., I ask<br>your favor /good treatment) | どうぞよろしく |
| <b>kochira</b>              | this (thing, person) (polite)                                    | こちら     |
| <b>Tsusanshoo</b>           | M.I.T.I. (Ministry of International<br>Trade and Industry)       | つうさんしょう |
| <b>meeshi</b>               | name card, calling card,<br>business card                        | めいし     |
| <b>kanai</b>                | (one's own) wife   | かない     |
| <b>(o)joozu</b>             | skillful, good   | (お)じょうず |
| <b>madamada</b>             | not yet, still   | まだまだ    |

Practice

|                        |                  |           |
|------------------------|------------------|-----------|
| <b>taishikan</b>       | embassy          | たいしかん     |
| <b>ryoojikan</b>       | consulate        | りょうじかん    |
| <b>Kokumushoo</b>      | State Department | こくむしょう    |
| <b>Amerikan Sentaa</b> | American Center  | アメリカンセンター |

Notes

|                 |                          |       |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-------|
| <b>shujin</b>   | (one's own) husband      | しゅじん  |
| <b>goshujin</b> | (someone else's) husband | ごしゅじん |
| <b>okusan</b>   | (someone else's) wife    | おくさん  |

Supplement

|                    |                        |       |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------|
| <b>getsu-yoobi</b> | Monday                 | げつようび |
| <b>ka-yoobi</b>    | Tuesday                | かようび  |
| <b>sui-yoobi</b>   | Wednesday              | すいようび |
| <b>moku-yoobi</b>  | Thursday               | もくようび |
| <b>kin-yoobi</b>   | Friday                 | きんようび |
| <b>do-yoobi</b>    | Saturday               | どようび  |
| <b>nichi-yoobi</b> | Sunday                 | にちようび |
| <b>nan-yoobi</b>   | what day (of the week) | なんようび |



---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Kochira wa Amerika Taishikan no Howaito-san desu.

Amerika Ryoojikan  
Buraun  
Kokumushoo  
Kerii  
Sumisu  
Amerikan Sentaa

**B. Introduction Practice**

Directions:

Student A introduces the instructor to student B by mentioning his/her real name and work place. Student B introduces himself/herself by repeating his/her name and greets the instructor.

Example:

*Student A:* Kochira wa [work place]no [name]-san desu.  
*Student B:* [name]-san desu ne. Hajimemashite.  
[name] desu. Doozo yoroshiku.  
*Instructor:* Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.

**C. Identification Practice**

注: 教師次ページ参照

Directions:

Instructor asks the identification of a student, either using the student's real identification or choosing one from the instructor's list. Student answers yes if the name and the work place are correct and no if they aren't. When the answer is no, the instructor apologizes. The student responds to his/her apology.

Examples:

(1) *Instructor:* Sumimasen/shitsuree desu ga, [student's work place] no [student's name]-san desu ka?  
*Student:* Hai, soo desu.

- (2) **Instructor:** Sumimasen, [not student's work place] no [not student's name]-san desu ka?  
**Student:** Iie, chigaimasu.  
**Instructor:** Doo mo sumimasen.  
**Student:** Iie.

教師用リスト

アメリカ大使館のホワイト  
 アメリカ領事館のシャクソン  
 アメリカ領事館のホームズ

アメリカンセンターのテーラー  
 国務省のジョンソン  
 アメリカ大使館のフラウン

## D. Introduction Practice

Directions:

Student A introduces Student B to the instructor by saying 'This is so-and-so's husband/wife' Student B introduces himself/herself and greets the instructor.

**Note:** If you are the wife of an employee, it is customary to say that you are so-and-so's *kanai*. If you are the husband of an employee, you should simply give your name (not so-and-so's husband).

Examples:

- (1) **Student A:** Kochira wa Buraun-san no okusan desu.  
**Student B:** Buraun no kanai desu. Doozo yoroshiku.
- (2) **Student A:** Kochira wa Hoomuzu-san no goshujin desu.  
**Student B:** Hoomuzu desu. Doozo yoroshiku.

## E. Introduction Practice

Directions:

Student A introduces a married couple to the instructor. The husband, after introducing himself, introduces his wife to the instructor. The wife greets the instructor.

Example:

- Student A:** Kochira wa [name]-san desu.  
**Student B (husband):** [Name] desu. Hajimemashite. Kore wa kanai desu.  
**Student C (wife):** Hajimemashite. Doozo yoroshiku.

## F. Introduction Practice

Directions:

With the help of your instructor, make your own *meeshi* and practice exchanging *meeshi* with your partner.

---

---

READING REVIEW

---

---

KANJI

- |        |          |         |
|--------|----------|---------|
| 1. 東京  | 8. 新橋    | 15. 赤坂  |
| 2. 銀座  | 9. 新宿    | 16. 浅草  |
| 3. 上野  | 10. 六本木  | 17. 丸の内 |
| 4. 駅   | 11. 日比谷  | 18. 大阪  |
| 5. 神社  | 12. 大使館  | 19. 右   |
| 6. 左   | 13. 福岡   | 20. 京都  |
| 7. 名古屋 | 14. 国立劇場 | 21. 日本橋 |

**Supplementary material****Days of the week**

The following is a table of the days of the week in Japanese. Your instructor will read each word. Repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

注: 教師はカレンダーを使って、曜日を練習させる

|                      |                    |     |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----|
| Sunday               | <b>nichi-yoobi</b> | 日曜日 |
| Monday               | <b>getsu-yoobi</b> | 月曜日 |
| Tuesday              | <b>ka-yoobi</b>    | 火曜日 |
| Wednesday            | <b>sui-yoobi</b>   | 水曜日 |
| Thursday             | <b>moku-yoobi</b>  | 木曜日 |
| Friday               | <b>kin-yoobi</b>   | 金曜日 |
| Saturday             | <b>do-yoobi</b>    | 土曜日 |
| what day of the week | <b>nan-yoobi</b>   | 何曜日 |

Match the following:

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <b>ka-yoobi</b>    | <b>Wednesday</b> |
| <b>nichi-yoobi</b> | <b>Friday</b>    |
| <b>getsu-yoobi</b> | <b>Sunday</b>    |
| <b>sui-yoobi</b>   | <b>Thursday</b>  |
| <b>moku-yoobi</b>  | <b>Saturday</b>  |
| <b>do-yoobi</b>    | <b>Monday</b>    |
| <b>kin-yoobi</b>   | <b>Tuesday</b>   |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Greeting expressions used in introductions*

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Hajimemashite.</b>   | <i>How do you do?<br/>(lit ,It's the first time [for me to meet you] )</i> |
| <b>Doozo yoroshiku.</b> | <i>Pleased to meet you<br/>(lit , ask your favor [good treatment] )</i>    |

These two expressions can be used just like the comparable English expressions

### 2. *Particle no*

As mentioned in the previous lesson, **no** occurring between two nouns indicates that what comes before the **no** describes what comes after it Study these patterns

|                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>(work place) no (name)</i>      |                                      |
| <b>Amerika Taishikan no Sumisu</b> | <i>Smith of the American Embassy</i> |
| <i>(possessor) no (belonging)</i>  |                                      |
| <b>watakushi no hon</b>            | <i>my book</i>                       |

### 3. *Confirmation particle ne*

The particle **ne** at the end of a sentence expresses something like 'aren't you?' or 'isn't it?' in English Thus, this particle can be used to confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced Look at the following example

|                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Yamada-san desu ne?</b> | <i>You're Mr Yamada, aren't you?</i> |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|

Depending on the pronoun and auxiliary, the confirmation question varies in English, e g , 'isn't he,' 'don't they,' etc In Japanese, **ne** is used no matter what the preceding sentence is

### 4. *Kore vs. kochira*

**Kore** and **kochira** are Japanese equivalents of English 'this' They often refer to a person (or thing in the case of **kore**, cf Lesson 3) that is near the speaker The two words are, however, used differently in introducing people **Kore** is used when introducing a person who is an in-group member (e g , his family, his company), while **kochira** is used when introducing a person who is **not** a member of the speaker's group Many times, the distinction between in-groupness and out-groupness becomes a determining factor in the use of words which have basically the same meaning, as in **kore** and **kochira** As a rule, Japanese people use politer expressions when they deal with out-group members than when they deal with in-group members In addressing out-group members, they may refer to in-group members as they would to themselves In this regard, we can say **kochira** is a politer expression than **kore** in

introducing people, and *kore* is used only to introduce an in-group member. Thus, when you introduce an out-group member, for example a Mr. Tanaka, you should say *Kochira wa Tanaka-san desu* 'This is Mr. Tanaka.'

The in-group/out-group distinction is also reflected in the use of the terms of address you studied in Lesson 1. When you refer to yourself or in-group members, don't use the term *-san* after your name.

## 5. Kinship terms

Another instance of the in-group/out-group distinction shows up in the use of kinship terms. (In this case, in-group members are one's own family members and out-group members are another person's family members.)

|               |                 |                |
|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| (my)          | (other's)       |                |
| <b>shujin</b> | <b>goshujin</b> | <i>husband</i> |
| <b>kanai</b>  | <b>okusan</b>   | <i>wife</i>    |

The following is a summary of the use of *kore* and *kochira* with kinship terms.

**kore** + *in-group kinship terms*

**kochira** + *out-group kinship terms*

## 6. *Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne.* 'You speak Japanese very well.'

You may hear Japanese say to you *Nihongo ga ojoozu desu ne*, regardless of your real proficiency in Japanese. It's a compliment Japanese often make to foreigners, even beginners. The underlying assumption of the expression is that foreigners can't speak Japanese. Many foreigners too often take the expression literally (and sometimes emotionally) so that they feel offended or insulted, for they think the Japanese use the expression to ridicule them since they know their Japanese can't be that good. However, the fact is that the Japanese feel that one way to show politeness is to praise a person's ability.

The Japanese frequently use this expression as a 'starter' in conversations with foreigners. Such being the case, one should take the expression as a sort of greeting. Like in any other greeting, what counts is the fact that you use the expression, rather than its literal meaning. A good way to respond to this 'greeting' expression would be to say something like 'Oh, no, I'm still a beginner.' A comparable Japanese expression is *ie, madamada desu*. 'No, (I'm not good at it) yet.'

## 7. *meeshi* (名刺) 'calling card'

At the beginning of a business encounter, Japanese people almost always exchange *meeshi* ('calling card'), unless the people have met each other before. You may wonder why the *meeshi* is so important to the Japanese. The Japanese view all relations as hierarchical. It is rare that any two people will be perceived as true equals. Japanese usually adjust their verbal and nonverbal behavior to each other according to the social position of a person in this hierarchy, which characterizes almost all relations among the Japanese. The *meeshi*

## Lesson 5 Introductions

provides the kind of information that helps people evaluate one's social position. It includes the following information:

- a. name of the company/agency
- b. person's position
- c. person's name
- d. address and telephone number of the company/agency

In some cases, the meeshi is written in Japanese on one side and in English on the other. You will probably get this type of meeshi at your post.

It should be noted that institutional affiliation usually carries more weight than position in the institution.

In exchanging meeshi, Japanese usually

- bow and
- make a few remarks concerning the other person's job, institution, etc., to show that the speaker is interested in the person.

Although most Japanese don't use any formula when presenting meeshi, it may be a good idea for you to say *Kore wa meeshi desu*, 'This is (my) calling card,' in order to let the person know that you are giving him/her your meeshi.

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

フラウン 失礼ですか、鈴木さんですか。  
 鈴木 はい、そうです。  
 フラウン はしめまして。フラウンです。  
 鈴木 はしめまして。どうぞよろしく。

## Situation 2

フラック 小林さん、これは秘書のオニールです。  
 オニール 小林さんですね。はしめまして。オニールです。  
 どうぞよろしく。  
 小林 小林です。どうぞよろしく。

## Situation 3

ウイリアムス ギーターさん、こちらは通産省の佐藤さんです。  
 ポーター はしめまして。アメリカ大使館のポーターです。  
 これは名刺です。  
 佐藤 はしめまして。佐藤です。  
 (名刺を渡しなから)どうぞよろしく。

## Situation 4

テーラー **Mr. Ogawa, this is Mr. Kelly.**  
**Mr. Kelly, this is Mr. Ogawa.**  
 小川 **How do you do? Pleased to meet you.**  
 ケリー ケリーです。はしめまして。これは家内です。  
 ケリー夫人 はしめまして。どうぞよろしく。  
 小川 日本語がお上手ですね。  
 ケリー夫人 いいえ、またまたです。





Lesson 6

PLACE NAMES OF INTEREST  
IN TOKYO

ここは銀座ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn the names and locations of the following:

- major islands
- major cities
- two districts in Tokyo
- major areas in Tokyo
- place names of interest,  
e.g., Imperial Palace, museums, etc.

## Lesson 6 Place names of interest in Tokyo

### Presentation

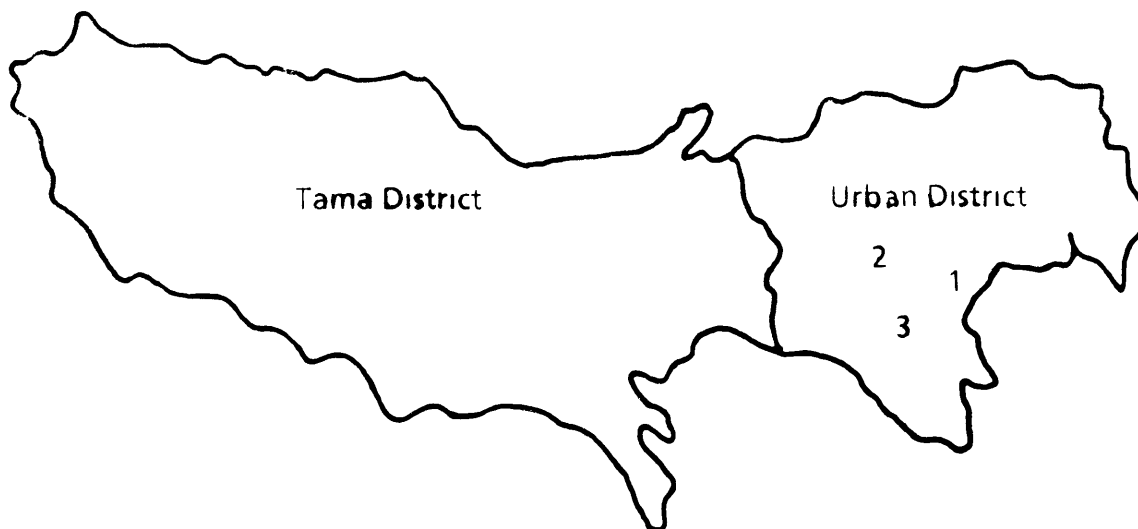
In this lesson, you will learn some more names of places and areas in Tokyo in addition to those you studied in Lesson 2. (You will learn some landmarks and street names of the Embassy area in later lessons.)

Look at the map of Tokyo below. The official name of the Tokyo jurisdiction is **Tokyo-to** (東京都; **to** literally means '*capital*'). It consists of the Urban District, the Tama District and the Ogasawara Islands (not included on the map). As of 1985, the population of **Tokyo-to** was approximately twelve million, representing approximately 10% of the entire population of Japan.

When people talk about Tokyo they often refer to the Urban District, which is composed of 23 wards or *Ku* (区). It is in this district where you find government offices, headquarters of major companies, museums, and the American Embassy and American Center. The Urban District is the center of political, economic, cultural, and educational activities in Japan. The Tama District, especially the areas near the Urban District, consist of satellite towns or what the Japanese call '*bed towns*,' from which many people commute to downtown Tokyo.

The Ogasawara Islands came under U.S. control after World War II and were returned to Japan in 1968. The main industry there is fishing.

The areas marked (1), (2) and (3) on the map of the Urban District below will be covered in Practice 1.



1. Chiyoda
2. Shinjuku
3. Minato

**Place names in Tokyo**

|                          |                          |       |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------|
| <b>Kasumigaseki</b>      | Kasumigaseki             | 霞ヶ関   |
| <b>Ueno Kooen</b>        | Ueno Park                | 上野公園  |
| <b>Tokyo Eki</b>         | Tokyo Station            | 東京駅   |
| <b>Tokyo Tawaa</b>       | Tokyo Tower              | 東京タワー |
| <b>Shinjuku Gyoen</b>    | Shinjuku National Garden | 新宿御苑  |
| <b>Kookyo</b>            | Imperial Palace          | 皇居    |
| <b>Kokuritsu Gekijoo</b> | National Theater         | 国立劇場  |
| <b>Kabukiza</b>          | Kabuki Theater           | 歌舞伎座  |
| <b>Meiji Jinguu</b>      | Meiji Shrine             | 明治神宮  |
| <b>Shinjuku-ku</b>       | Shinjuku Ward            | 新宿区   |
| <b>Chiyoda-ku</b>        | Chiyoda Ward             | 千代田区  |
| <b>Shinagawa-ku</b>      | Shinagawa Ward           | 品川区   |
| <b>Akasaka</b>           | Akasaka                  | 赤坂    |
| <b>Kokkai Gijidoo</b>    | the Diet Building        | 国会議事堂 |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Map reading Practice**

Look at the map of Shinjuku-ku (新宿区), Chiyoda-ku (千代田区), and Minato-ku (港区) on the next page.

(You may want to refer to the map of Tokyo-to on the page before last to find out the locations of these areas within the Urban District.)

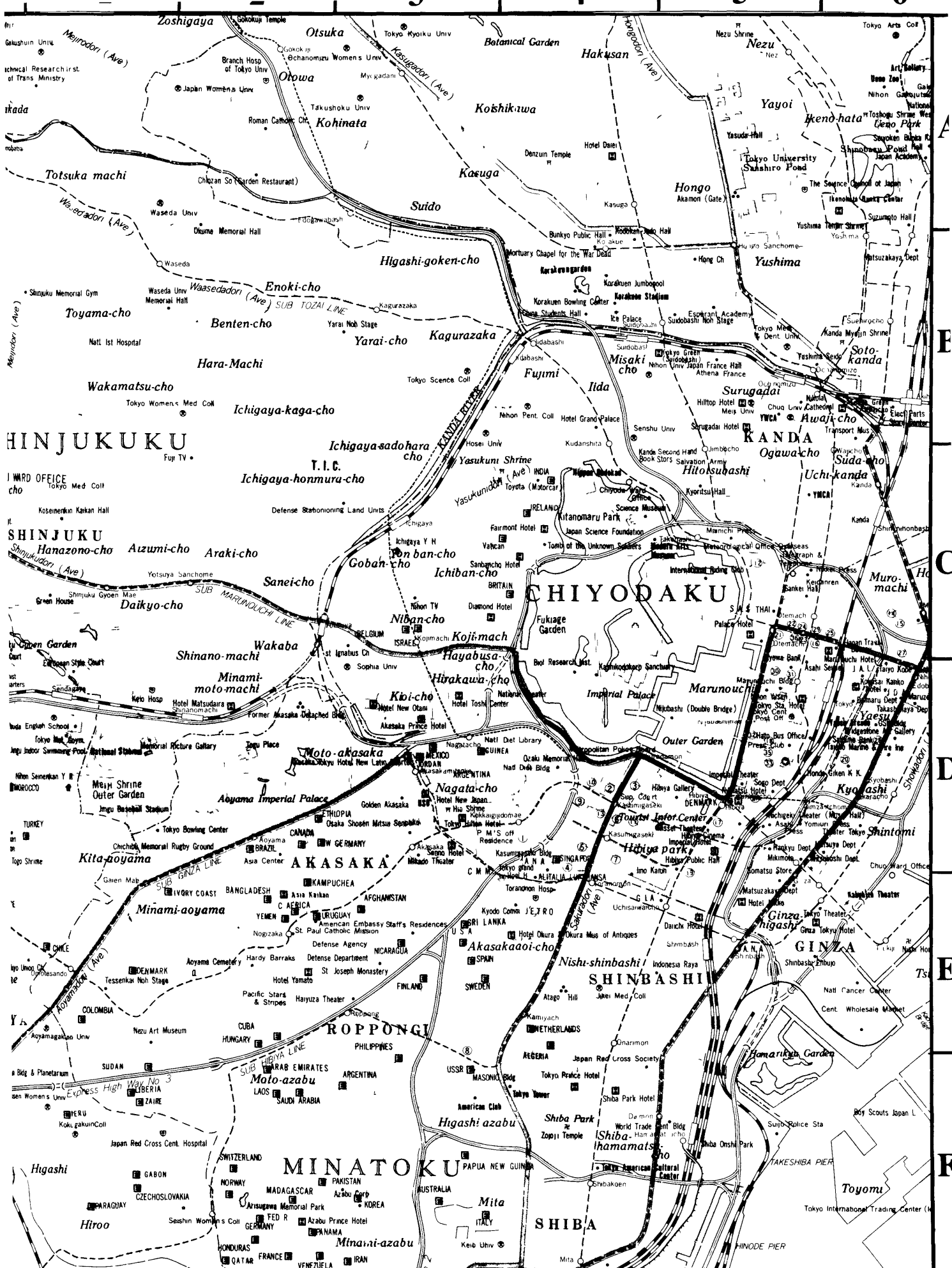
Identify the area names and place names of interest below on the map on the next page and practice the pronunciation of the names by repeating them after the instructor.

Area Names

|                   |     |     |
|-------------------|-----|-----|
| <b>Akasaka</b>    | 赤坂  | 3-D |
| <b>Ginza</b>      | 銀座  | 6-E |
| <b>Shinbashi</b>  | 新橋  | 4-E |
| <b>Marunouchi</b> | 丸ノ内 | 5-D |
| <b>Kanda</b>      | 神田  | 5-B |
| <b>Roppongi</b>   | 六本木 | 3-E |

Place names of Interest

|                          |       |     |
|--------------------------|-------|-----|
| <b>Kokkai Gijidoo</b>    | 国会議事堂 | 4-D |
| <b>Kokuritsu Gekijoo</b> | 国立劇場  | 4-D |
| <b>Meiji Jinguu</b>      | 明治神宮  | 1-D |
| <b>Tokyo Tawaa</b>       | 東京タワー | 4-F |
| <b>Tokyo Eki</b>         | 東京駅   | 6-D |
| <b>Ueno Kooen</b>        | 上野公園  | 6-A |
| <b>Kabukiza</b>          | 歌舞伎座  | 6-E |



# HINJUKUKU

# SHINJUKU

# CHIYODAKU

# AKASAKA

# ROPPONGI

# MINATOKU

# SHINBASHI

# SHIBA

1

2

3

4

5

6

A

E

C

D

E

F

## Lesson 6 Place names of interest in Tokyo

### B. Response Drill

Directions:

Student A asks Student B ... *wa doko ni arimasu ka?*, referring to the list below.  
Student B answers, using the cue.

Example:

*Student A:* **Amerika Taishikan wa doko ni arimasu ka?**

*Student B:* **Akasaka ni arimasu.**

List for student A

Cue for student B

**Shinjuku Gyoen**

**Shinjuku**

**Hie Jinja**

**Akasaka**

**Kasumigaseki Biru**

**Kasumigaseki**

**Ueno Kooen**

**Ueno**

**Amerika Taishikan**

**Akasaka**

### C. Map Reading Practice

Directions:

Student A asks the name of an area in Tokyo, referring to the list in Practice A.  
Student B answers, referring to the map.

Example:

*Student A:* **3D. Koko wa doko desu ka?**

*Student B:* **(referring to 3D on the map) Akasaka desu.**

List for student A

1. 3E

2. 5B

3. 4E

4. 6E

5. 5D

6. 3D

## D. Map Reading Practice

Directions:

Use the map in Practice A. Student A asks the location of places on the list, using the following expression:

(place name) wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Student B answers by giving the area name or the name of the ward.

Example:

*Student A:* **Amerika Taishikan wa doko ni arimasu ka?**

*Student B:* (referring to the map) **Akasaka desu.**

List for student A

**Kabukiza**

**Tokyo Eki**

**Shinjuku Gyoen**

**Kookyo**

## E. Map Reading Practice

注: 教師は下記のリスト参照

Directions:

The instructor asks whether or not the place s/he indicates is the right one, referring to the index and the map in Practice A. The student answers, using one of the expressions below:

- a. **Hai, soo desu.**
- b. **lie, ... ja arimasen.**

In the latter case, give the correct name of the place.

Example:

*Instructor:* **3D. Koko wa Shinjuku desu ka?**

*Student:* **lie, Shinjuku ja arimasen. Akasaka desu.**

教師用リスト

- 1. 6A 明治神宮
- 2. 6D 東京駅
- 3. 1C 六本木
- 4. 5D 国会議事堂
- 5. 4D 国立劇場



### F. Finding Places

Directions:

Student A asks Student B where the places on the list below are located.  
Student B answers, referring to the map below

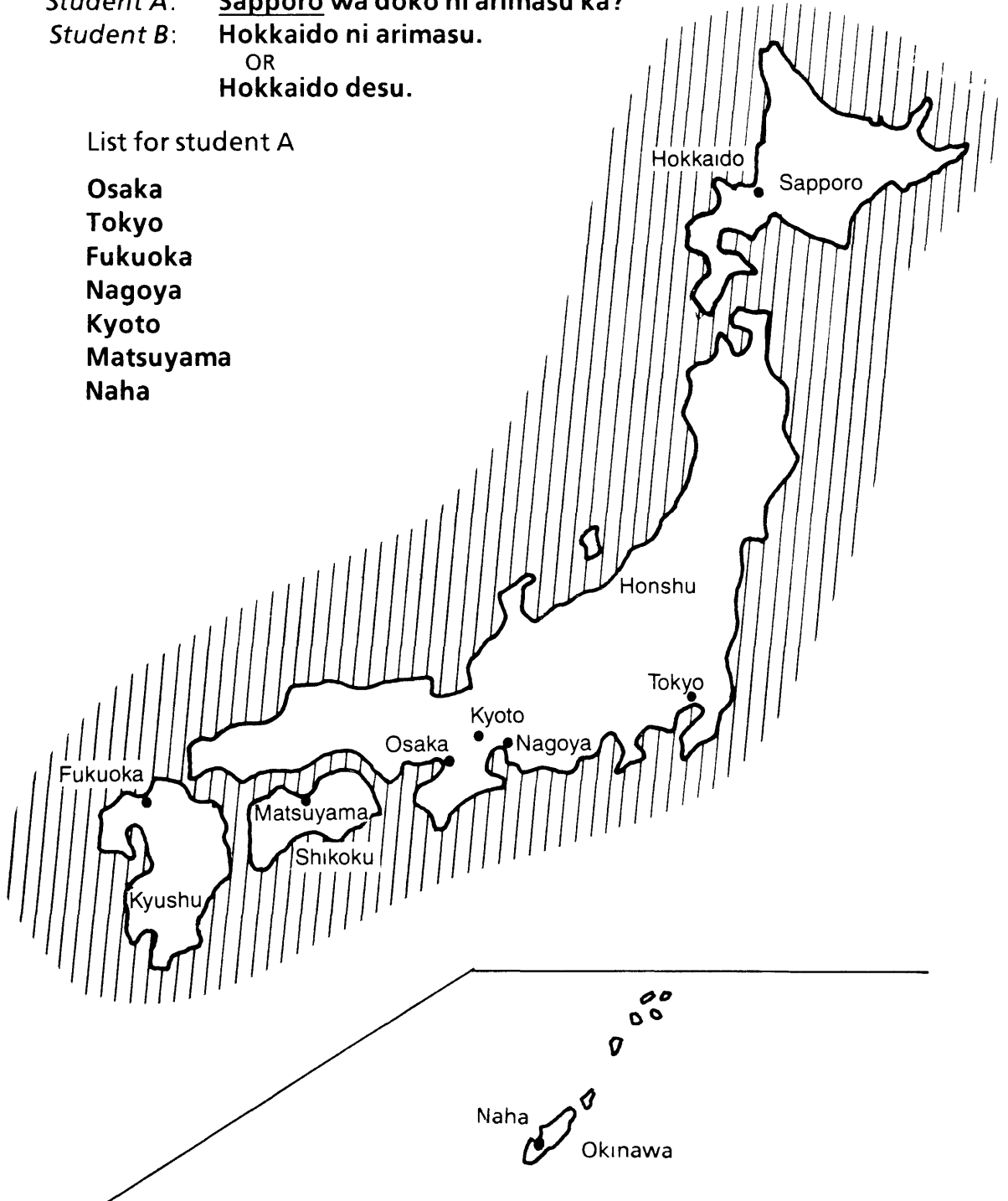
Example:

Student A: **Sapporo** wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Student B: **Hokkaido** ni arimasu.  
OR  
**Hokkaido** desu.

List for student A

- Osaka
- Tokyo
- Fukuoka
- Nagoya
- Kyoto
- Matsuyama
- Naha



---

---

**READING**

---

---

**KANJI**

## Place names of Interest

- |          |                |                          |
|----------|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 上野公園  | Ueno Kooen     | Ueno Park                |
| 2. 新宿御苑  | Shinjuku Gyoen | Shinjuku National Garden |
| 3. 明治神宮  | Meiji Jinguu   | Meiji Shrine             |
| 4. 日比谷公園 | Hibiya Kooen   | Hibiya Park              |

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. Expressions for asking the location of a place

The following are expressions that can be used when you ask the location of a place:

**Koko wa doko desu ka ?**

*Where is this place? (Lesson 2)*

**Kono chikaku ni depaato ga  
arimasu ka?**

*Is there a department store  
in this vicinity? (Lesson 4)*

In place of koko 'this place' in the first sentence, you can use place names, as in the following:

**Tokyo-eki wa doko desu ka?**

*Where is Tokyo Station?*

The following questions about location mean approximately the same thing:

a. **Depaato wa doko desu ka?**

b. **Depaato wa doko ni arimasu ka?**

### 2. Answers to questions about the location of a place

When you ask Depaato wa doko desu ka? OR Depaato wa doko ni arimasu ka? some Japanese may answer in the following way:

**Depaato wa (place) desu/ni arimasu.**

In ordinary conversation, however, the answer is usually simplified to:

**(place) desu/ni arimasu.**

The following are some examples:

**Question:** Amerika Taishikan wa doko desu ka ?/ni arimasu ka?  
*Where is the American Embassy (located)?*

**Answer:** Akasaka desu/ni arimasu.  
*(It's) in Akasaka.*

Lesson 7

SOME BASIC PLACE EXPRESSIONS

ここ, そこ, 右, 左, 前, 後ろ

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask where the rest room is
- ask directions to the nearest station, pharmacy, etc.
- understand directions that contain words like the following:
  - a. on the right/left
  - b. in front/back of
  - c. next to
  - d. this/that way



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*At a restaurant, Mr. Moore asks a waitress where the rest room is.*

|                   |                                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Muaa:</b>      | <b>Sumimasen.</b>                 | <i>Excuse me.</i>                 |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Hai.</b>                       | <i>Yes.</i>                       |
| <b>Muaa:</b>      | <b>(O)tearai wa doko desu ka?</b> | <i>Where is the rest room?</i>    |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Achira desu.</b>               | <i>(pointing) It's over there</i> |
| <b>Muaa:</b>      | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>            | <i>Thank you.</i>                 |

### Situation 2

*Mr. Roberts was involved in a car accident while driving in Tokyo. He decides to call the embassy to get some assistance, so he asks a passer-by if there is a phone located nearby.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <b>Robaatsu:</b> | <b>Sumimasen, kono hen ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me, is there a public phone near here?</i>                                       |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Eeto. . . A, asoko desu. Tabako-ya ni arimasu yo.</b>   | <i>(looking around to find one)<br/>Let me see Oh, it's over there at the tobacco shop</i> |
| <b>Robaatsu:</b> | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>                                     | <i>Thank you.</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Doo itashimashite.</b>                                  | <i>You're welcome.</i>   |

### Situation 3

*After shopping in the Ginza, Ms Taylor wants to go home by subway She thinks that once she finds the station, she can manage.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen. Kono hen ni chikatetsu no eki ga arimasu ka?</b>               | <i>Excuse me Is there a subway station in this vicinity?</i>                             |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Chikatetsu no eki desu ka? Soko ni arimasu yo. Kooban no tonari desu.</b> | <i>A subway station? There is one over there (pointing) It's next to the police box.</i> |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>Oh, I see. Thank you.</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>lie, doo itashimashite.</b>   | <i>Don't mention it.</i>   |

**Situation 4**

*Mrs. Douglas is going to the American Pharmacy, which her friend had recommended. She knows it's very close to the station where she got off.*

- |                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Dagurasu:</b> | <b>Sumimasen, Amerikan<br/>Faamashii wa doko desu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me, where is the American<br/>Pharmacy?</i> |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>    | <b>Nikkatsu Biru ni arimasu yo.</b>                       | <i>It's in the Nikkatsu Building.</i>                 |
| <b>Dagurasu:</b> | <b>Nikkatsu Biru wa doko desu ka?</b>                     | <i>Where is the Nikkatsu Building?</i>                |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>    | <b>Eki no mae ni arimasu.</b>                             | <i>It's in front of the station.</i>                  |
| <b>Dagurasu:</b> | <b>Doomo.</b>   | <i>Thanks.</i>  |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>    | <b>Doo itashimashite.</b>                                 | <i>You're welcome.</i>                                |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                      |                                 |          |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| <b>kono hen</b>      | this vicinity, this area        | このへん     |
| <b>(o)tearai</b>     | bathroom, toilet, rest room     | (お)てあらい  |
| <b>achira</b>        | that way, over there            | あちら      |
| <b>kooshuu denwa</b> | public telephone                | こうしゅうでんわ |
| <b>denwa</b>         | telephone                       | でんわ      |
| <b>Eeto...</b>       | Let me see... (hesitation word) | ええと..... |
| <b>asoko</b>         | over there                      | あそこ      |
| <b>tabako-ya</b>     | tobacco shop                    | たばこや     |
| <b>chikatetsu</b>    | subway                          | ちかてつ     |
| <b>soko</b>          | there                           | そこ       |
| <b>kooban</b>        | police box                      | こうばん     |
| <b>tonari</b>        | next to                         | となり      |
| <b>mae</b>           | front, in front of              | まえ       |

Practice

|                      |                |         |
|----------------------|----------------|---------|
| <b>hon-ya</b>        | bookstore      | ほんや     |
| <b>kusuri-ya</b>     | drugstore      | くすりや    |
| <b>erebeetaa</b>     | elevator       | エレベーター  |
| <b>hijooguchi</b>    | emergency exit | ひじょうぐち  |
| <b>tatte kudasai</b> | please stand   | たってください |
| <b>shingoo</b>       | traffic light  | しんごう    |
| <b>gakkoo</b>        | school         | がっこう    |

**Notes**

|                |                      |     |
|----------------|----------------------|-----|
| <b>ushiro</b>  | back                 | うしろ |
| <b>sochira</b> | that way             | そちら |
| <b>kochira</b> | this way             | こちら |
| <b>sotchi</b>  | that way             | そっち |
| <b>atchi</b>   | that way, over there | あっち |
| <b>kotchi</b>  | this way             | こっち |

**Personalized list**



---



---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---



---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Sumimasen, (o)tearai wa doko desu ka?

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| kooshuu denwa     | Tokyo Eki       |
| chikatetsu no eki | takushii noriba |
| kooban            | JR-sen no eki   |
| tabako-ya         | (o)tearai       |

**B. Transformation Drill**

Kooban wa doko desu ka? → Kooban wa doko ni arimasu ka?

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| kooshuu denwa | basu noriba       |
| (o)tearai     | JR-sen no eki     |
| tabako-ya     | takushii noriba   |
| hon-ya        | chikatetsu no eki |
| kusuri-ya     | kooban            |

**C. Response Drill**

*Student:* (O)tearai wa doko ni arimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Kooshuu denwa no mae desu.  
*Student:* Kooshuu denwa no mae desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu.

|                   |         |
|-------------------|---------|
| Student's list    | 教師用リスト  |
| depaato           | 駅の前     |
| kooban            | テパートの右  |
| chikatetsu no eki | 交番の左    |
| hon-ya            | 葉屋の隣    |
| resutoran         | テパートの近く |

**D. Substitution Drill**

Kono chikaku ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu ka?

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| (o)tearai   | resutoran         |
| kooban      | chikatetsu no eki |
| kusuri-ya   | JR-sen no eki     |
| kissaten    | depaato           |
| basu noriba | takushii noriba   |

**E. Substitution Drill**

Kooshuu denwa wa depaato no mae ni arimasu.

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| asoko         | depaato no tonari |
| eki no mae    | kusuri-ya no mae  |
| kooban no mae | kooban no hidari  |

**F. Communication Exercise**

Directions:

Student A asks the location of the places on the List for student A below. Student B selects an appropriate place word from the List for student B below and points in that direction.

Example:

*Student A:* Hijooguchi wa doko desu ka?  
(hijooguchi = emergency exit)

*Student B:* Soko desu.

List for student A

erebeetaa 'elevator'  
one of your teacher's rooms  
(use . . .san/sensee no heya)  
supervisor's room  
(use . . .san/sensee no heya)  
(o)tearai  
hijooguchi

List for student B

koko  
sotchi  
mukoo  
asoko  
kotchi  
soko  
atchi

### G. Production Exercise

Directions:

A student stands in front of the classroom. The instructor stands in front of, in back of, on the right of, or on the left of the student. The other students describe the position of the instructor relative to the student. Students should use the following expression:

**(Instructor's name)-san/sensee wa (student's name)-san no  
mae/ushiro/hidari/migi desu.**

### H. Communication Exercise

Directions:

The instructor stands, facing the students. Student A gives Student B directions, referring to the list below. Student B follows the directions by standing on the right/left or in front/back of the instructor. Student A uses the following expression:

**(Instructor's name)-san/sensee no (position) ni tatte kudasai.  
(tatte kudasai means 'please stand'.)**

Example:

*Student A:* . . .san/sensee no migi ni tatte kudasai.

*Student B:* (stands on the right of the instructor)

List for student A

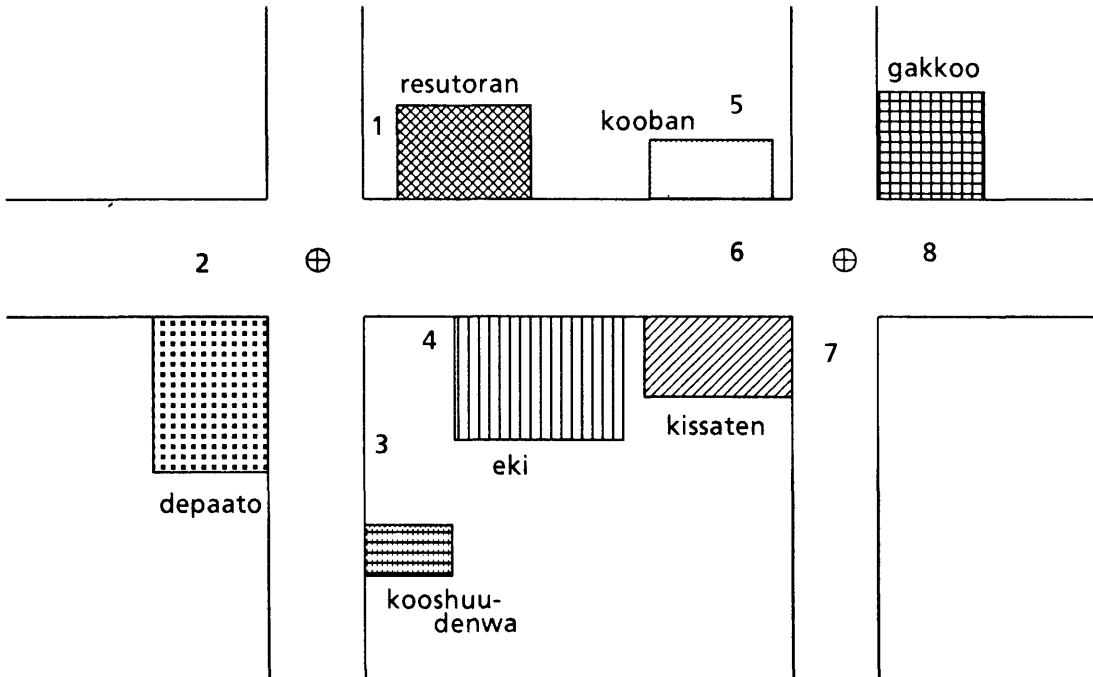
on the right  
on the left  
in front of  
behind

**I. Reading Comprehension**

Directions:

Read the following and then select the number of the location on the map that matches its description below.

1. **Watakushi no mae ni depaato ga arimasu.**  
**Hidari ni kooshuu denwa ga arimasu.** (            )
2. **Watakushi no ushiro ni \*shingoo ga arimasu.**  
**Migi ni kooban ga arimasu.** (            )
3. **Watakushi no mae ni \*gakkoo ga arimasu.**  
**Watakushi no hidari ni shingoo ga arimasu.** (            )
4. **Watakushi no migi wa eki desu.**  
**Mae ni resutoran ga arimasu.** (            )
5. **Mukoo ni kooban ga arimasu.**  
**Watakushi no mae ni kissaten ga arimasu.** (            )



\*shingoo = ⊕ = traffic light  
 \*gakkoo = school

**J. Aural Comprehension Exercise** 注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The following conversations take place on the street. Listen to the tape and answer the questions below.

Conversation 1

The first Japanese asks the location of .....

The second Japanese said the location is .....

Conversation 2

The first Japanese asks the location of .....

The second Japanese said the location is .....

Conversation 3

The first Japanese asks the location of .....

(choose the correct answer)

The second Japanese (        ) knows the location.

(        ) doesn't know the location.

Conversation 4

The first Japanese asks the location of .....

The answer is .....

Conversation 5

The first Japanese asks the location of .....

(choose the correct answer)

The second Japanese (        ) knows the location.

(        ) doesn't know the location.

### 教師用スクリプト

- 会話 1
- 日本人 1 すみません。この近くに交番がありますか。  
日本人 2 え、交番ですか？ あそこにありますよ。  
日本人 1 ああ、どうも。  
日本人 2 どういたしまして。
- 会話 2
- 日本人 1 ちょっと伺いますか、山王ヒルはこの近くですか。  
日本人 2 は？  
日本人 1 山王ヒルです。  
日本人 2 ああ、向こうにあります。  
日本人 1 どうも。  
日本人 2 いいえ。
- 会話 3
- 日本人 1 ちょっと、すみません。この近くの駅はどこですか。  
日本人 2 さあ 私も知りません。  
日本人 1 そうですか。とつも。
- 会話 4
- 日本人 1 すみません。この近くに本屋がありますか？  
日本人 2 本屋ねえ ああ、駅の前にあったと思いますか  
日本人 1 どうもすみません。  
日本人 2 いいえ、どういたしまして。
- 会話 5
- 日本人 1 ちょっと、すみません。東京駅はどこにありますか。  
日本人 2 さあ、私も分かりません。

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |        |              |                   |
|--------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. 化粧室 | keshooshitsu | powder room       |
| 2. 御手洗 | otearai      | toilet, rest room |
| 3. 婦人用 | fujinyoo     | for ladies        |
| 4. 殿方用 | tonogatayoo  | for gentlemen     |
| 5. 男   | otoko        | man, men          |
| 6. 女   | onna         | woman, women      |
| 7. 地下鉄 | chikatetsu   | subway            |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. Summary of basic location words

a. 'here,' 'there,' and 'over there'

In Lesson 3, we studied the following series of words:

|             |  |
|-------------|--|
| <b>kore</b> | <i>this</i> (refers to things/persons near the speaker)  |
| <b>sore</b> | <i>that</i> (refers to things/persons near the listener)   |
| <b>are</b>  | <i>that (one) over there</i> (refers to things/persons relatively far from the speaker and listener) |

The first syllables ko-, so-, and a- in the above words occur in several other series of words having to do with location where they carry related meanings. Compare:

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| <b>koko</b>  | <i>here</i> (refers to a place near the speaker) (Lesson 2)                        |
| <b>soko</b>  | <i>there</i> (refers to a place near the listener)                                 |
| <b>asoko</b> | <i>over there</i> (refers to a place relatively far from the speaker and listener) |

We have also studied the question word **doko** 'where,' which can be used to ask the location of something (Lesson 2).

b. Other location words

|                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <b>migi/hidari</b> | <i>right/left</i> |
| <b>mae/ushiro</b>  | <i>front/back</i> |
| <b>tonari</b>      | <i>next</i>       |
| <b>mukoo</b>       | <i>beyond</i>     |

### 2. Some direction words

Ko-, so-, and a- can also be used to indicate direction, as in:

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <b>kochira</b> OR <b>kotchi</b> | <i>this way</i> (refers to the direction of the speaker)                              |
| <b>sochira</b> OR <b>sotchi</b> | <i>that way</i> (refers to the direction of the listener)                             |
| <b>achira</b> OR <b>atchi</b>   | <i>that way over there</i> (refers to a direction away from the speaker and listener) |



### 3. Particle no and place expressions

- a. Place expressions that occur with the particle *no*, 'of'

Example:

**(Depaato wa) eki no migi/hidari  
desu/ni arimasu.**      *(The department store) is on the  
right/left of the station*

- b. Place expressions that do not require *no*

Example:

**(Depaato wa) koko/soko/asoko desu/ni arimasu.**  
*(The department store) is here/there/that way.*

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

ムアー すみません。  
 ウエイトレス はい。  
 ムアー (お)手洗いはどこですか。  
 ウエイトレス あちらです。  
 ムアー どうもありがとうございます。

## Situation 2

ロハーノ すみません。この辺に公衆電話がありますか。  
 日本人 ええと あ、あそこです。たはこ屋にありますよ。  
 ロハーノ どうも ありがとうございます。  
 日本人 どういたしまして。

## Situation 3

テーラー すみません。この辺に地下鉄の駅がありますか。  
 日本人 地下鉄の駅ですか。そこにありますよ。  
 交番のとなりです。  
 テーラー そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。  
 日本人 いいえ、どういたしまして。

## Situation 4

ダクラス すみません。アメリカンファーマナーはどこですか。  
 駅員 日活ヒルにありますよ。  
 タクラス 日活ヒルはどこですか。  
 駅員 駅の前にあります。  
 タクラス どうも。  
 駅員 どういたしまして。

## Lesson 7 Some basic place expressions

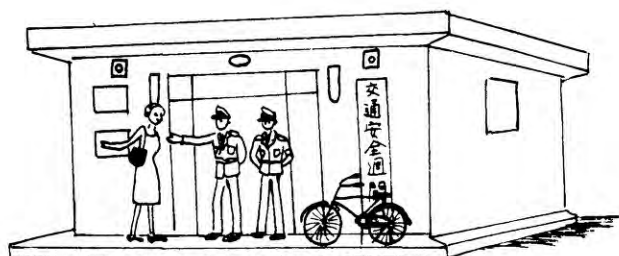
Lesson 8

GETTING THE ANSWER  
YOU WANT (1)

すみません。  
もう一度言ってください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- comprehend and produce key words like 'the first/second/third,' 'intersection,' 'traffic light,' etc.
- confirm your understanding or ask a question to get the information you want by using key words



---



---

## DIALOGS

---



---

## KAIWA

### Situation 1

*Mr. Jones is going to see a Kabuki play at Kabukiza, which is located near the Ginza subway station. Mr. Jones has been told by his friend that Kabukiza is on Harumi Street*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?</b>    | <i>Excuse me, is this Harumi Avenue?</i>               |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Ee, soo desu yo.</b>                            | <i>Yes, it is.</i>                                     |
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Kabukiza wa doko desu ka?</b>                   | <i>Where is Kabukiza located?</i>                      |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Koko kara mittsu-me no hidari no kado desu.</b> | <i>It's at the third corner from here, on the left</i> |
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Mittsu-me no hidari no kado desu ne?</b>        | <i>At the third corner on the left, right?</i>         |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Ee, soo desu yo.</b>                            | <i>Yes.</i>  |
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Doomo.</b>                                      | <i>Thank you.</i>                                      |

### Situation 2

*Mrs. Anderson is going to the Mitsukoshi department store in the Ginza. She has been told by her friend that it is near a large intersection at Ginza 4-chome.*

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Andaason:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Koko wa Ginza yon-choome no koosaten desu ka?</b>                    | <i>Excuse me, is this the Ginza 4-chome intersection?</i>                         |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, Ginza yon-choome wa tsugi no shingoo desu.</b>                             | <i>No, it isn't. The Ginza 4-chome intersection is at the next traffic light.</i> |
| <i>Andaason:</i> | <b>Aa, soo desu ka. Tsugi no shingoo desu ne? Mitsukoshi wa sono soba desu ka?</b> | <i>Oh. It's the next traffic light, right? Is Mitsukoshi near there?</i>          |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Ee, Mitsukoshi wa koosaten no migi no kado desu.</b>                            | <i>Yes, Mitsukoshi is on the right-hand corner of the intersection.</i>           |
| <i>Andaason:</i> | <b>Migi no kado desu ka? Doo mo arigatoo.</b>                                      | <i>On the right-hand corner? Thank you.</i>                                       |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie.</b>  | <i>Sure.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*It's spring and Mrs. Smith is going to Shinjuku Gyoen, which is famous for its cherry blossoms. She gets off at the closest subway station.*

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Sumisu:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen. Shinjuku Gyoen wa kono chikaku desu ka?</b>          | <i>Is Shinjuku Gyoen near here?</i>                             |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee, sugu soba desu. Sono koosaten no mukoo desu.</b>            | <i>Yes, it's very near. It's beyond that intersection.</i>      |
| <b>Sumisu:</b>   | <b>Achira desu ka?</b>   | <i>Is it in that direction? (pointing)</i>                      |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Hai, ano depaato no mukoo desu.</b>                             | <i>Yes, it's beyond that department store.</i>                  |
| <b>Sumisu:</b>   | <b>Aa, soo desu ka. Depaato no mukoo desu ne? Doo mo arigatoo.</b> | <i>Oh, it's beyond that department store, right? Thank you.</i> |

**Situation 4**

*Ms. Patterson is on her way home after doing some shopping. She wants to take the subway at Tokyo station. She knows the station is within a few blocks.*

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Pataason:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Tokyo-eki wa doko desu ka?</b>   | <i>Excuse me, where is Tokyo station?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Chikatetsu desu ka, JR-sen desu ka?</b>   | <i>The subway station or the Metropolitan Railway (station)?</i>                                    |
| <b>Pataason:</b> | <b>Chikatetsu desu.</b>  | <i>The subway station.</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Tsugi no koosaten no mukoo ni Daimaru Depaato ga arimasu. Eki wa sono mae desu.</b> | <i>Beyond the next intersection is the Daimaru department store. The station is in front of it.</i> |
| <b>Pataason:</b> | <b>Daimaru Depaato no mae desu ne? Wakarimashita. Doo mo arigatoo.</b>                 | <i>In front of the Daimaru department store, right? I understand. Thank you very much.</i>          |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|           |                                   |          |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| ...doori  | ...street, ...avenue              | .....どおり |
| Kabukiza  | Kabuki Theater                    | かぶきざ     |
| kara      | from                              | から       |
| mittsu-me | the third                         | みつつめ     |
| choome    | chome (counter of blocks/streets) | ちょうめ     |
| koosaten  | intersection                      | こうさてん    |
| sono      | its; that                         | その       |
| sugu soba | very near                         | すぐそば     |
| ano       | that (over there)                 | あの       |
| JR-sen    | Metropolitan Railway (of J.R.)    | JR-せん    |

Practice

|              |              |           |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| hajime no... | the first... | はじめの..... |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|

Notes

|                           |                      |                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| saisho no...              | the first...         | さいしょの.....       |
| futatsu-me no...          | the second...        | ふたつめの.....       |
| tsurete itte<br>agemashoo | I'll take you there. | つれていって<br>あげましょう |
| arigatoo gozaimasu        | Thank you. (polite)  | ありがとうございます       |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Substitution Drill**

Sumimasen, koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?

Ginza 4-choome  
 JR-sen no eki  
 chikatetsu no eki  
 Ginza Doori  
 doko

**B. Substitution Drill**

Tsugi no koosaten desu ka?

Tsugi no kado  
 Mukoo  
 Koosaten no mukoo  
 Futatsu-me no kado  
 Mittsu-me no shingoo

**C. Response Drill**

Example:

*Student:* Sumimasen, koko wa Harumi Doori desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Iie, Harumi Doori wa tsugi no koosaten desu.  
*Student:* Tsugi no koosaten desu ne?  
*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu.  
*Student:* Dooomo.

Student's list

Ginza Doori  
 JR-sen no eki  
 chikatetsu no eki  
 Mitsukoshi

教師用リスト

次の信号  
 交差点のむこう  
 二つ目の角  
 三つ目の信号の右



## Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

### D. Substitution Drill

Shinjuku Gyoen wa kono chikaku desu ka?

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| Kabukiza        | JR-sen no eki     |
| Mitsukoshi      | chikatetsu no eki |
| Daimaru Depaato | Harumi Doori      |

### E. Production & Comprehension Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student asks directions to a place on the list below. The instructor gives directions. The student puts an X in the parentheses beside the correct location on the List of choices.

Example:

*Student:* Sumimasen, Harumi Doori wa kono chikaku desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Tsugi no shingoo desu.

**Harumi Doori** (X) the next traffic light      次の信号です。  
( ) the second traffic light  
( ) the third traffic light

Student's list      List of choices      教師用スクリプト

**Ginza Doori** ( ) the next intersection      二つ目の交差点です。  
( ) the second intersection  
( ) the third intersection

**chikatetsu no eki** ( ) at the second corner from here      二つ目の角です。  
( ) at the third traffic light from here  
( ) beyond the second corner

**Mitsukoshi** ( ) the next traffic light      三つ目の信号です。  
( ) the third traffic light  
( ) the traffic light over there

**Daimaru depaato** ( ) beyond that intersection over there      あの交差点のむこう  
( ) on the first intersection from here      です。  
( ) on that corner over there

F. Comprehension and Response Exercise

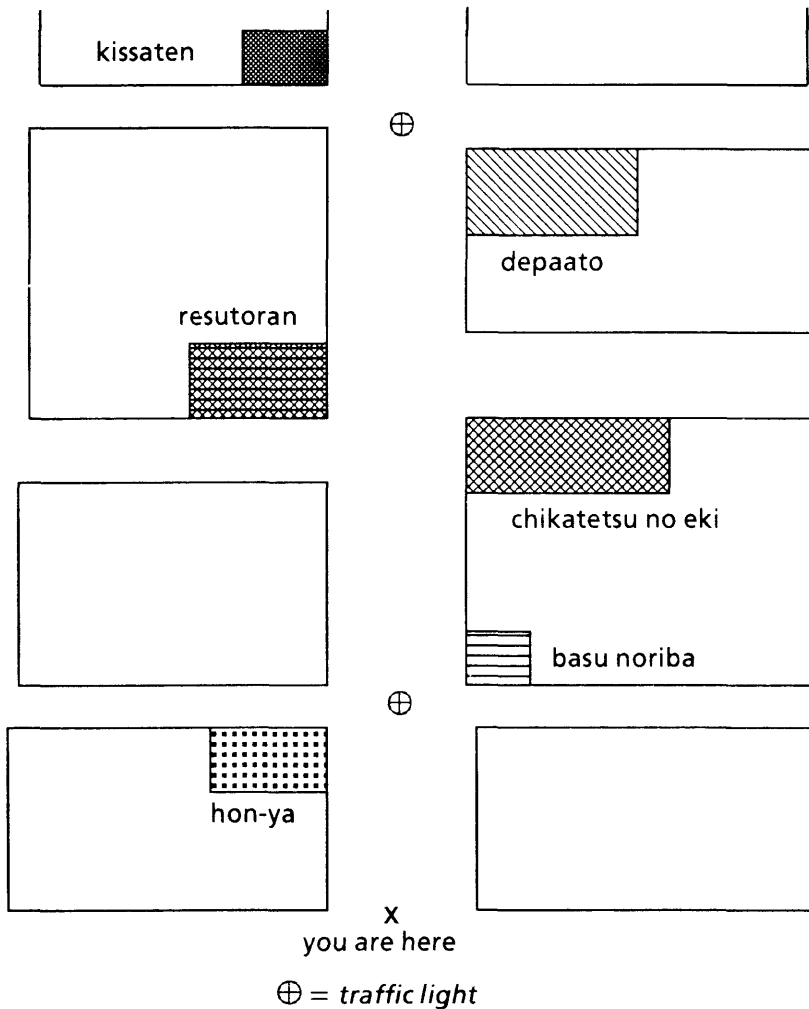
Directions:

The instructor gives the directions to one of the places on the map below and asks what the place is. The student traces the directions on the map and answers.

Example:

Instructor: Tsugi no hidari no kado ni arimasu.  
Hon-ya desu ka, basu noriba desu ka?

Student: Hon-ya desu.



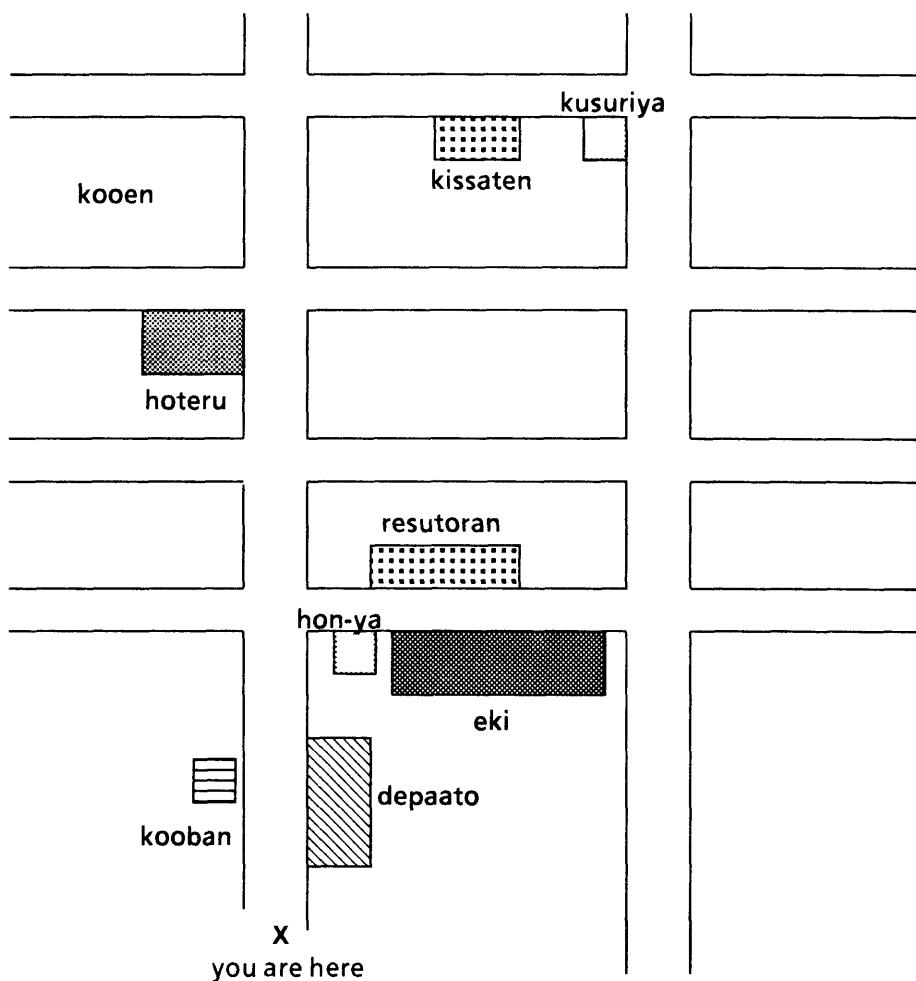
教師用スクリプト

1. 二つ目の信号の右にあります。喫茶店ですか、テパートですか。
2. 三つ目の左の角にあります。喫茶店ですか、レストランですか。
3. 次の交差点の向こうです。本屋ですか、バス乗り場ですか。
4. 二つめの右の角です。地下鉄の駅ですか、テパートですか。

**G. Comprehension and Response Exercise**

Correct the following statements by referring to the map below.

1. Kooban wa eki no mae ni arimasu.
2. Kissaten wa eki no soba desu.
3. Hoteru wa resutoran no tonari ni arimasu.
4. Kusuriya wa kissaten no mae ni arimasu.
5. Kooen wa eki no sugu soba desu.
6. Resutoran wa depaato no mae ni arimasu.
7. Hon-ya wa resutoran no tonari ni arimasu.



**H. Comprehension and Production Exercise** 注: 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

Listen to the instructor read the directions to the following places:

1. **Mitsukoshi**
2. **Shinjuku Gyoen**
3. **Kabukiza**
4. **Subway station**

Write down below the key words that you picked up. When you don't understand the directions, stop the instructor and ask him/her to repeat and confirm your understanding. You can use the following expressions for these purposes:

**Sumimasen, moo ichi-do (yukkuri) itte kudasai.**

*Excuse me, would you say it again (slowly)?*

...desu ka?

*Is it...?*

...desu ne?

*It is..., isn't it?*

When you think you understand, repeat the directions in English so as to check your comprehension.

1. Directions to the Mitsukoshi department store

**KEY WORDS:**

2. Directions to Shinjuku Gyoen

**KEY WORDS:**

3. Directions to Kabukiza

**KEY WORDS:**

4. Directions to the subway station

**KEY WORDS:**

教師用スクリプト

ここから二つ目の交差点の右です。

ここから三つ目の交差点の左の角です。

ここから二つ目の信号のむこうです。左側にあります。

ここから二つ目の角にデパートがあります。駅はそのデパートの隣りです。

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |         |              |               |
|---------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. 晴海通り | Harumi Doori | Harumi Avenue |
| 2. 四丁目  | yon-choome   | 4-chome       |
| 3. 喫茶店  | kissaten     | coffee shop   |
| 4. 薬局   | yakkyoku     | drugstore     |
| 5. 交番   | kooban       | police box    |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Some important words in getting directions*

Japanese do not have a word for 'block,' so they frequently use the following words in giving directions

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| <b>kado</b>     | <i>corner</i>        |
| <b>shingoo</b>  | <i>traffic light</i> |
| <b>koosaten</b> | <i>intersection</i>  |

For example, when an American says 'Go two blocks,' a Japanese would say something like 'Go as far as the second intersection.' The following words are frequently used with the above three words

|                                  |                                       |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>tsugi/saisho no (shingoo)</b> | <i>the next/first (traffic light)</i> |
| <b>futatsu-me no (shingoo)</b>   | <i>the second (traffic light)</i>     |
| <b>mittsu-me no (shingoo)</b>    | <i>the third (traffic light)</i>      |

The following are some more place expressions introduced in this lesson

|                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>(eki) no soba</b> | <i>near (the station)</i> |
| <b>(eki) kara</b>    | <i>from (the station)</i> |

### 2. *Is it A or B?*

When the directions you get are rather complicated and you want to make sure that you got them correctly, you may want to ask a question like 'Is it on the right or left?' In Japanese, questions of this kind are formed by simply adding the phrase **desu ka** to each alternative. Look at the following

|                  |                              |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>English:</i>  | <i>Is it A or B?</i>         |
| <i>Japanese:</i> | <b>A desu ka, B desu ka?</b> |

In English, when there are three or more items to ask about, you place 'or' only in front of the last item. In Japanese, however, the sentence construction is the same as in the question that has two items. Compare the following

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <i>English:</i>  | <i>Is it A, B, or C?</i>                |
| <i>Japanese:</i> | <b>A desu ka, B desu ka, C desu ka?</b> |

## Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

Thus, when you want to ask if the place you are looking for is in front of the station or behind the station, you can say:

**Eki no mae desu ka, ushiro desu ka?**

*Is it in front of or behind the station?*

### 3. *Helpful things to know in getting directions*

- a. When directions you have asked for are complicated and the place you are looking for is not far, Japanese will often take you there instead of giving you the directions. In such a case, s/he would say *Tsurete itte agemashoo* 'I'll take you there.' You should show your gratitude with an expression like *Doomo arigatoo* or *Arigatoo gozaimasu*, etc. (cf. Lesson 11)
- b. If your efforts to locate a place are in vain, try to find the nearest *kooban* 'police box' or *tabako-ya* 'tobacco shop.' There are quite a few *kooban* in any downtown area. The policemen there may not speak English but they will certainly help you find the place you are looking for. Of course, it will help a lot if you have the address of the place with you. The clerk at a *tabako-ya* also knows a lot about the places in his/her neighborhood. In fact, these are the two places where Japanese often go for directions.

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

ンョーンズ すみません。ここは晴海通りですか。  
日本人 ええ、そうですよ。  
ショーンズ 歌舞伎座はどこですか。  
日本人 ここから 三つ目の左の角です。  
ショーンズ 三つ目の左の角ですね。  
日本人 ええ、そうですよ。  
ショーンズ どうも。

**Situation 2**

アンターソン すみません。ここは銀座四丁目の交差点ですか。  
日本人 いいえ、銀座四丁目は次の信号です。  
アンターソン ああ、そうですか。次の信号ですね。  
三越はそのそばですか。  
日本人 ええ、三越は交差点の右の角です。  
アンターソン 右の角ですか。どうもありがとうございます。  
日本人 いいえ。

**Situation 3**

スミス すみません。新宿御苑はこの近くですか。  
日本人 ええ、すぐそばです。その交差点のむこうです。  
スミス あちらですか。  
日本人 はい。あのテパートのむこうです。  
スミス ああ、そうですか。テパートのむこうですね。  
どうもありがとうございます。

**Situation 4**

パターソン すみません。東京駅はどこですか。  
日本人 地下鉄ですか、JR線ですか。  
パターソン 地下鉄です。  
日本人 次の交差点のむこうに大丸テパートがあります。  
駅はその前です。  
パターソン 大丸テパートの前ですね。わかりました。  
どうもありがとうございます。



## Lesson 8 Getting the answer you want (1)

Lesson 9

GETTING THE ANSWER  
YOU WANT (2)

この道をまっすぐ行って.....

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- understand such key words as 'straight,' 'street,' 'toward,' 'beyond,' and 'at the end (of the street)'
- understand where to make a turn and in which direction you should turn



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

Note: In each of the following situations, the American does not understand the directions right away so s/he asks the Japanese person to repeat, making sure of the directions phrase by phrase or sentence by sentence.

### Situation 1

Mrs Taylor is looking for a subway station. She asks a passer-by where it is located.

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni chikatetsu no eki ga arimasu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me. Is there a subway station near here?</i>    |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee, kono michi o massugu itte, futatsu-me no...</b>             | <i>Yes. Go straight down this street. At the second .</i> |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen, moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasai.</b>                | <i>I'm sorry. Could you say that again slowly?</i>        |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Kono michi o massugu itte...</b>                                | <i>(speaking slowly) Go straight down this street.</i>    |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Massugu...</b>  | <i>Straight...</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Futatsu-me no kado o migi ni magarimasu.</b>                    | <i>At the second corner, turn right.</i>                  |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Futatsu-me no kado, migi...</b>                                 | <i>Second corner, right...</i>                            |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Eki wa hidari ni arimasu yo.</b>                                | <i>The station is on the left.</i>                        |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Hidari desu ne?</b>   | <i>On the left?</i>                                       |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee, soo desu.</b>   | <i>Yes. That's right.</i>                                 |
| <b>Teeraa:</b>   | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>Thank you.</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Doo itashimashite.</b>  | <i>You're welcome.</i>                                    |

**Situation 2**

*Ms Baker is going to see her friend, who has just arrived in Tokyo and is staying at the Fairmont Hotel. She has checked the location of the hotel and is in the general neighborhood but is not sure of its exact location. She asks a Japanese person on the street.*

- |                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Beekaa:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen ga . . . Feamonto Hoteru wa doko ni arimasu ka?</b>   | <i>Excuse me. Where is the Fairmont Hotel?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Feamonto Hoteru desu ka? Eeto . . . Kono michi o massugu itte, hajime no kado o hidari ni magatta tokoro desu yo.</b> | <i>Fairmont Hotel? Let me see. Go down this street. At the first corner, turn left.</i> |
| <b>Beekaa:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen, moo ichi-do itte kudasai.</b>  | <i>I'm sorry, but could you say that again?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Kono michi o massugu itte, hajime no kado o hidari ni magatta tokoro desu.</b>  | <i>(speaking slowly) Go straight down this street. At the first corner, turn left.</i>  |
| <b>Beekaa:</b>   | <b>Ano kado desu ne? Ano kado no hidari desu ka, migi desu ka?</b>   | <i>You mean that corner? Is it to the left or right at the corner?</i>                  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Hidari desu.</b>  | <i>It's to the left.</i>  |
| <b>Beekaa:</b>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Doo mo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you very much.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*Ms Jackson is going to Aoyama to see some antiques. Her friend has told her that there is a nice shop near Meiji Shrine called 'Oriental Bazaar'. She takes a bus and gets off at a stop near a shrine. She asks directions at a kiosk.*

- |                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <b>Jakuson:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen. Koko wa Meiji Jinguu desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me. Is this here the Meiji Shrine?</i>                                   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee, soo desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, it is.</i>   |
| <b>Jakuson:</b>  | <b>Orientalu Bazaaru wa doko desu ka?</b>  | <i>Where is the Oriental Bazaar?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Orientalu Bazaaru wa kono michi o massugu itte, ano shingoo no chotto saki desu yo.</b> | <i>The Oriental Bazaar is a little beyond the traffic light, down this street.</i> |
| <b>Jakuson:</b>  | <b>Chotto saki? Shingoo no chikaku desu ka?</b>  | <i>A little beyond? Is it near the traffic light?</i>                              |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee, soo desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, it is.</i>   |
| <b>Jakuson:</b>  | <b>Doo mo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>Thank you.</i>  |

## Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

### Situation 4

*Mr Clark is going to see a special exhibition at the National Art Museum in Ueno Park. After consulting a map, he takes the JR-line and gets off at Uguisudani station, which is the station closest to the museum. He asks a station employee for directions.*

|                 |   |   |
|-----------------|---|---|
| <b>Kuraaku:</b> | <b>Chotto sumimasen ga, Bijutsukan wa atchi desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me. Is the National Museum of Art over there? (pointing)</i>  |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>   | <b>Ee, sono michi no mukoo no hoo desu.</b>   | <i>Yes. It's over that way, up the street.</i>  |
| <b>Kuraaku:</b> | <b>Mukoo no hoo?</b>  | <i>Over in that direction?</i>  |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>   | <b>Ee, soko o migi ni magatte, massugu itta tokoro desu.</b>  | <i>Yes. Turn right there and it's straight ahead.</i>   |
| <b>Kuraaku:</b> | <b>Massugu itta tokoro desu ka?</b>   | <i>Straight ahead?</i>  |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>   | <b>Ee, soo desu. Soko o migi ni magatte, massugu ikimasu ne. Massugu itta tokoro wa tsukiataru desu yo. Sono tsukiataru ni arimasu. Sugu wakarimasu yo.</b> | <i>Yes. Turn right there and then go straight. The museum is at the end of the street. You'll find it easily.</i> |
| <b>Kuraaku:</b> | <b>Aa, tsukiataru desu ka. Doo mo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>Oh, at the end of the street? Thank you.</i>   |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                          |   |              |
|--------------------------|---|--------------|
| kono                     | this  | この           |
| o                        | (marks the object of a verb)                    | を            |
| magatta tokoro desu      | it's at the place (you ) turn                   | まかったところてす    |
| saki                     | ahead, beyond                                   | さき           |
| ...no chikaku            | the vicinity of<br>(see kono chikaku, Lesson 4) | ..... のちかく   |
| hoo                      | direction, way, toward                          | ほう           |
| magatte                  | (TE form of magarimasu 'turn')                  | まがって         |
| massugu itta tokoro desu | go straight (then, you'll see it)               | まっすくいったところてす |
| tsukiatari               | end of a street, dead end,<br>'T' intersection  | つきあたり        |
| bijutsukan               | art museum                                      | びじゅつかん       |

Practice

|           |                  |        |
|-----------|------------------|--------|
| Gaimushoo | Foreign Ministry | がいむしょう |
|-----------|------------------|--------|

Notes

|            |      |       |
|------------|------|-------|
| ikimasu    | go   | いきます  |
| magarimasu | turn | まかります |

## Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

### Street Names

|                      |                 |      |
|----------------------|-----------------|------|
| <b>Sakurada Dori</b> | Sakurada Avenue | 桜田通り |
| <b>Uchibori Dori</b> | Uchibori Avenue | 内堀通り |
| <b>Sotobori Dori</b> | Sotobori Avenue | 外堀通り |
| <b>Aoyama Dori</b>   | Aoyama Avenue   | 青山通り |

Note: Although **Doori** is pronounced with a long **o**, the word is often spelled **Dori** in street signs, as above.

### Personalized list

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Substitution Drill**

Kooban wa kono michi no migi no hoo ni arimasu.

futatsu-me no kado  
 ano shingoo no mukoo  
 ano koosaten no kado  
 ano kado no migi  
 ano eki no soba  
 kono michi no hidari

**B. Substitution Drill**

Hidari desu ka, migi desu ka?

atchi, kotchi  
 futatsu-me, mittsu-me  
 migi no kado, hidari no kado  
 basu, chikatetsu  
 koosaten no migi, koosaten no hidari  
 migi no hoo, hidari no hoo

**C. Translation-Substitution Drill**

cue: on the third corner  
 response: Depaato wa mittsu-me no kado ni arimasu.

on the left at the third corner  
 on the right at the next intersection  
 beyond the second traffic light  
 to the right at the next corner  
 to the left at the second traffic light



## Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

### D. *Comprehension Exercise* 注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student chooses a place from the list of places below and asks whether or not the place is located nearby. The instructor gives directions. The student traces the directions on the map on the next page and marks an X at the destination. S/he also writes the name of the place near the X. The instructor checks the student's map to determine whether or not s/he has arrived at the right place.

Examples:

Student: **Sumimasen, kono chikaku ni Makudonarudo ga arimasu ka?**

Instructor: **Hai, kono michi o massugu itte, tsugi no kado o migi ni magarimasu. Makudonarudo wa migi ni arimasu.**

Student: (Traces the instructor's directions on the map, marks an X and writes the name of the place near the X.)

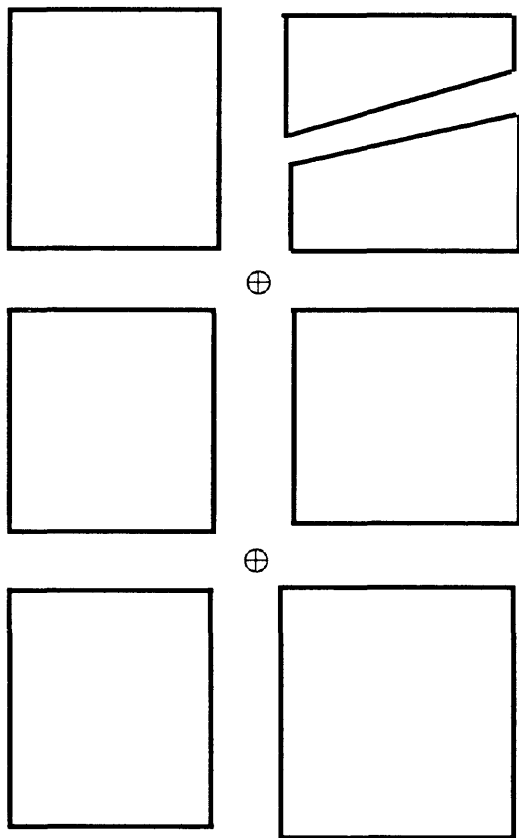
Instructor: (Checks the student's map to see whether s/he has marked the right place.)

List of places

kooban  
tabako-ya  
resutoran  
Sumitomo Ginkoo  
Makudonarudo  
depaato

Student's Map

⊕ indicates a traffic light



教師用スクリプト

1. 交番  
ここから二つ目の信号を右に曲がります。交番は左にあります。
2. たばこ屋  
この道をまっすぐ行って、初めの交差点を左に曲がります。たばこ屋は右の方にあります。
3. レストラン  
次の信号を右に曲がって右の方です。
4. 住友銀行  
この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号のちょっと先の道を右に曲がります。銀行は左の方にあります。
5. マクドナルド  
この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号を右に曲がります。マクドナルドは右です。
6. テパート  
この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の信号を左に曲がります。テパートは右にあります。

### E. Comprehension Exercise

Directions

The instructor will give you directions to get to several places from the American Embassy (see the map on the next page.) Listen to the directions and check the names of the place to which they get you below. Make sure that you (1) practice pronouncing the names of places and streets on the map before you start the exercise; and (2) start from the American Embassy.

教師用スクリプト

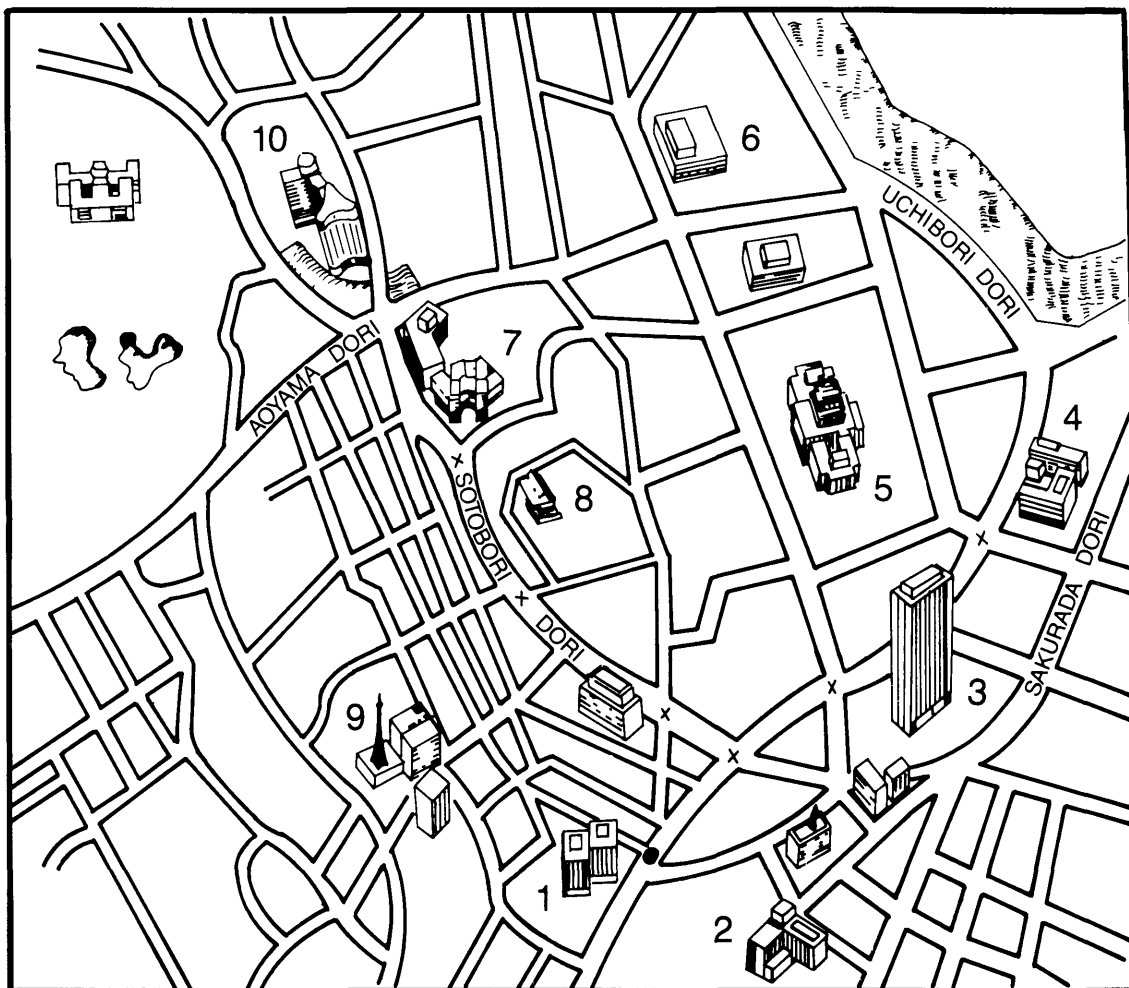
- |    |  |   |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | (    ) Kasumigaseki Biru<br>(    ) Tokyu Hoteru<br>(    ) Okura Hoteru | この道をまっすぐ行って、外堀通りを左に曲かると、三つ目の信号の右の角です。                           |
| 2. | (    ) Hie Jinja<br>(    ) Kasumigaseki Biru<br>(    ) Okura Hoteru    | この道をまっすぐ行って、外堀通りを左に曲かります。そこからまっすぐ行くと右の方にあります。<br>東急ホテルの手前で。     |
| 3. | (    ) Hie Jinja<br>(    ) Okura Hoteru<br>(    ) Gaimushoo            | この道をまっすぐ行って、三つ目の信号のむこうの右にあります。                                  |
| 4. | (    ) Hibiya Kooen<br>(    ) Gaimushoo<br>(    ) Kokuritsu Gekijoo    | この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の交差点を左に曲かります。<br>国会議事堂の前をまっすぐ行くと右の方です。           |
| 5. | (    ) Tokyu Hoteru<br>(    ) TBS<br>(    ) Akasaka Prince Hoteru      | 大使館を出て外堀通りまで行って、左に曲かります。二つ目の角を、又左に曲って、ずっとまっすぐ行くと、右に大きなタワーが見えます。 |

## Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

### Place names

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Amerika Taishikan | 6. Kokuritsu Gekijoo     |
| 2. Okura Hotel       | 7. Tokyu Hotel           |
| 3. Kasumigaseki Biru | 8. Hie Jinja             |
| 4. Gaimushoo         | 9. TBS                   |
| 5. Kokkai Gijidoo    | 10. Akasaka Prince Hotel |

X = koosaten  
● = starting point



Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

F. Comprehension Exercise

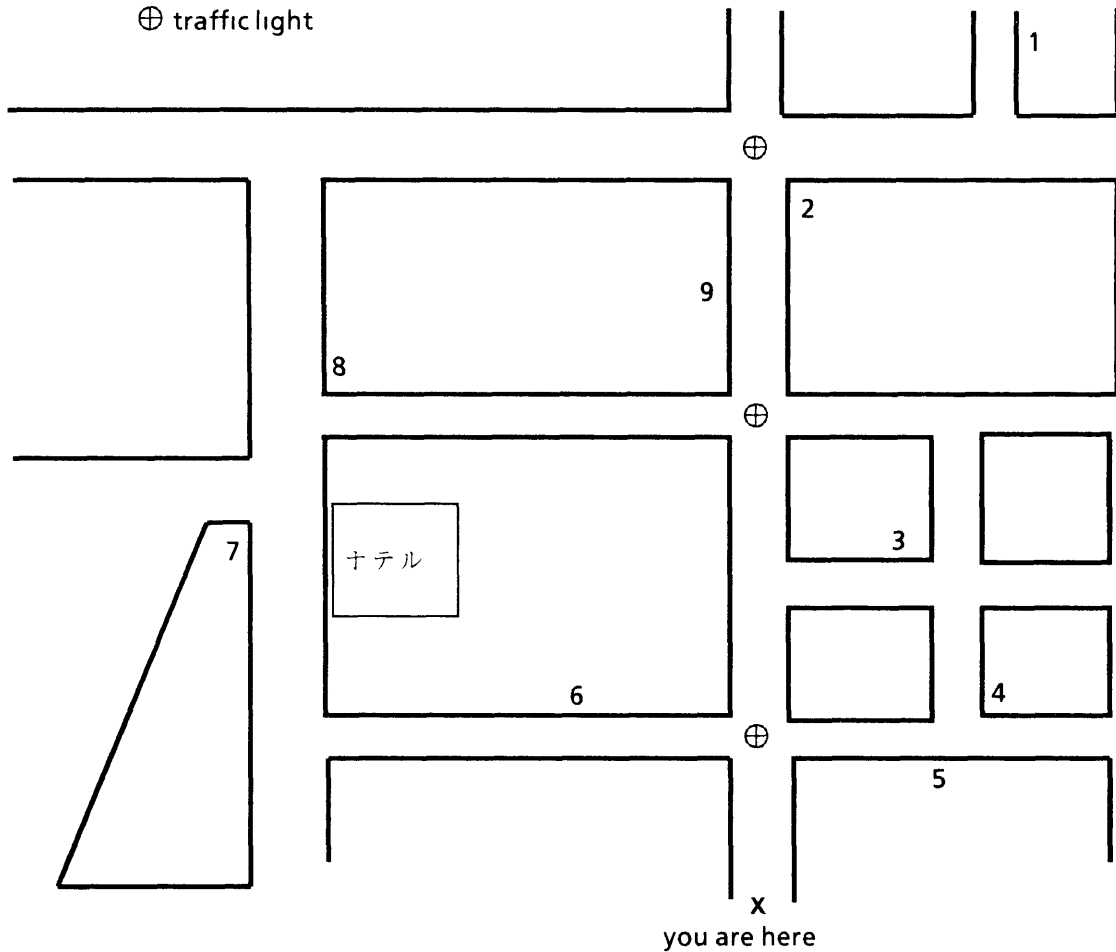
注 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions

The instructor gives directions to the following places from the place marked 'You are here'. The student traces the directions on the map and writes the number of the place at which s/he has arrived in the parentheses after the place name. The instructor then checks the student's answers.

Note Use *Sumimasen, Yukkuri itte kudasai,* and *...desu ka/ne?* if necessary

| <u>Place name</u>     | <u>Answer sheet</u> |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| <b>sensei no uchi</b> | (            )      |
| <b>kissaten</b>       | (            )      |
| <b>suupaa</b>         | (            )      |
| <b>tabakoya</b>       | (            )      |
| <b>hon-ya</b>         | (            )      |



教師用スクリプト

1. この道をまっすぐ行って、二つ目の角を右へ曲がります。  
先生の家は次の左の角にあります。
2. 喫茶店ですか? 次の交差点を左へ曲がって、つきあたりを右へまっすぐ行きます。  
右の方にホテルがあります。ホテルの前の角が喫茶店です。
3. スーパーですね。この道をまっすぐ行って、三つ目の信号を右に曲がります。  
それから初めの角を左に曲がると、すぐわかりますよ。
4. たばこ屋はここから二つ目の信号を左へ曲がって、まっすぐ行きます。  
次の右の角にあります。
5. 本屋は次の角を右に曲がって、まっすぐ行ったところの右にあります。

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |                 |                |                |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. たばこ屋<br>タバコ屋 | tabakoya       | tobacco shop   |
| 2. 銀行           | ginkoo         | bank           |
| 3. 右折禁止         | Usetsu Kinshi  | No Right Turn  |
| 4. 左折禁止         | Sasetsu Kinshi | No Left Turn   |
| 5. 一方通行         | Ippoo Tsuukoo  | One-way Street |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. More key words in comprehending directions

The following words are useful for comprehending directions:

|                   |                          |   |  |
|-------------------|--------------------------|---|--|
| <b>massugu</b>    | <i>straight</i>          | e.g., <b>massugu itte</b>                   | <i>going straight</i>                  |
| <b>michi</b>      | <i>street</i>            | e.g., <b>kono michi</b>                     | <i>this street</i>                     |
| <b>...no hoo</b>  | <i>toward...</i>         | e.g., <b>migi no hoo</b>                    | <i>to(ward) the right</i>              |
| <b>...no saki</b> | <i>beyond...</i>         | e.g., <b>koosaten no saki</b>               | <i>beyond the intersection</i>         |
| <b>tsukiatari</b> | <i>end (of a street)</i> | e.g., <b>Kono michi no tsukiatari desu.</b> | <i>It's at the end of this street.</i> |

### 2. Verbs frequently used in directions

'Go' and 'turn' are probably the two most frequently used verbs in giving directions. The Japanese words for these two verbs have different forms depending on their position in a sentence or how they occur with other words.

The following is a brief summary of some of these forms:

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>ikimasu/magarimasu</b> | <i>used at the end of a sentence</i>   |
| <b>itte/magatte</b>       | <i>used when you mention other actions<br/>(e.g., itte magarimasu go and turn)</i> |

|                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <b>itta tokoro/magatta tokoro</b> | <i>(tokoro means 'place'. The whole phrases mean 'the place you are to go' and 'the place to make a turn,' respectively.)</i> |
|-----------------------------------|---|

At this point it is not necessary for you to be able to produce these forms, but you should be able to guess the meaning of a sentence that contains either word if you can pick up such key words as '*straight*,' '*right*,' etc. It should be noted, however, that unlike English, in Japanese these key words occur before the verbs, as in the following examples:

**Kono michi o massugu ikimasu.**  
*Go straight (down) this street.*

**Tsugi no shingoo o migi ni magarimasu.**  
*Turn to the right at the next traffic light.*



### 3. *Helpful things to know in getting directions*

Streets in most Japanese cities do not run straight from north to south or from east to west. Furthermore, not all streets have names. Instead, Japanese normally use the area name and/or number like *yon-choome* when referring to the location of a building or a place.

Since Japanese does not have a word equivalent to English '*block*,' in giving directions a Japanese will use words like *kado* '*corner*,' *shingoo* '*traffic light*,' *koosaten* '*intersection*,' etc. For example, for '*Go one block and turn left...*' a Japanese person would say *Tsugi no kado o hidari ni magatte...* '*Turn left at the next corner...*' It is, therefore, very important for you to become familiar with these words and to learn how to use them.

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

- テーラー すみません。この近くに地下鉄の駅がありますか。  
 日本人 ええ、この道をまっすぐ行って二つ目の  
 テーラー すみません。もう一度ゆっくり 言ってください。  
 日本人 この道をまっすぐ行って  
 テーラー まっすぐ  
 日本人 二つ目の角を右に 曲かります。  
 テーラー 二つ目の角、右  
 日本人 駅は左にありますよ。  
 テーラー 左ですね。  
 日本人 ええ、そうです。  
 テーラー どうもありがとうございます。  
 日本人 どういたしまして。

## Situation 2

- ヘーカー すみせんか フェアモントホテルはどこに  
 ありますか。  
 日本人 フェアモントホテルですか。ええと この道を  
 まっすぐ行って、はしめの角を左に曲かった  
 ところですよ。  
 ヘーカー すみません。もう一度言ってください。  
 日本人 この道をまっすぐ行って、はしめの 角を左に  
 曲かったところです。  
 ヘーカー あの角ですね。あの角の左ですか、右ですか。  
 日本人 左です。  
 ヘーカー そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。

## Lesson 9 Getting the answer you want (2)

### Situation 3

ンヤクノン すみません。ここは明治神宮ですか。  
日本人 ええ、そうです。  
ンヤクソン オリエンタルハサーはどこですか。  
日本人 オリエンタルハサーはこの道をまっすぐ行って、あの  
信号のちょっと先ですよ。  
シャクソン ちょっと先? 信号の近くですか。  
日本人 ええ、そうです。  
ンヤクソン どうもありがとうございます。

### Situation 4

クラーク ちょっと、すみませんか、美術館はあっちですか。  
駅 員 ええ、その道のむこうの方です。  
クラーク むこうの方?  
駅 員 ええ、そこを右に曲かって、まっすぐ行ったところ  
です。  
クラーク まっすぐ行ったところですか。  
駅 員 ええ、そうです。そこを右に曲かって、まっすぐ行き  
ますね。  
まっすぐ行ったところは、つきあたりですよ。  
そのつきあたりにあります。すぐわかりますよ。  
クラーク ああ、つきあたりですか。どうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 10

ASKING THE DISTANCE

遠いですか、近いですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask if a place is nearby or far away
- talk about distance and how long it takes to get to a particular place
- tell time



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Davis is in the Ginza, intending to go shopping at Takashimaya department store. She thought the department store was close by but she can not find it.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Deebisu:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Takashimaya wa kono chikaku<br/>desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me. Is Takashimaya<br/>department store near here?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Takashimaya desu ka?<br/>Kono michi o massugu itte,<br/>tsugi no koosaten o migi ni<br/>magaruto, hidari ni arimasu.</b> | <i>Takashimaya ?<br/>Go straight and then make a<br/>right at the next intersection.<br/>It's on your left.</i> |
| <b>Deebisu:</b>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Koko kara tooi<br/>desu ka?</b>   | <i>Oh. Is it far from here?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>lie, tooku arimasen yo.<br/>Hachijuu meeteru gurai desu.</b>   | <i>No, it isn't far.<br/>It's about 80 meters.</i>  |
| <b>Deebisu:</b>  | <b>Wakarimashita. Doomo.</b>  | <i>I see. Thanks.</i>   |

### Situation 2

*Mr Collins is on his way home from a visit to a colleague, who lives in Shibuya. He got off a bus near Shibuya station to window-shop at a department store. After a while, he realizes that he has walked quite far from the station and is not sure how to get back.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Korinzu:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Shibuya-eki wa doko desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me.<br/>Where is Shibuya Station?</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Eki wa chotto tooi desu yo.<br/>Futatsu-me no kado o migi e<br/>massugu ikuto, tsukiataru ni<br/>depaato ga miemasu.<br/>Eki wa sono mae desu.<br/>Soo desu nee... Koko kara eki<br/>made aruite juugo-fun<br/>gurai desu.</b> | <i>The station is a bit far. If you turn<br/>right at the second corner and<br/>then go straight, you'll see a<br/>department store at the end of<br/>the street.<br/>The station is in front of it<br/>Let me see. It's about a 15-minute<br/>walk from here to the station.</i> |
| <b>Korinzu:</b>  | <b>Aruite juugo-fun?</b>  | <i>A 15-minute walk?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Ee.</b>  | <i>Yes.</i>   |
| <b>Korinzu:</b>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo.</b>  | <i>I see. Thanks.</i>   |

**Situation 3**

*Mrs. Howard visited a friend in Yokohama and, on the way home, attended an outdoor concert at Hibiya Park. Her friend gave Mrs. Howard directions to the park and also suggested that she take a subway home. After the concert, Mrs. Howard asks someone on the street whether Hibiya station is far.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <i>Hawaado:</i>  | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Chikatetsu no eki wa koko kara<br/>tooi desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me.<br/>Is the subway station far<br/>from here?</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, sugu desu yo.<br/>Asoko ni depaato ga arimasu ne?<br/>Ano depaato no migi desu.<br/>Koko o massugu ikeba, sugu<br/>wakarimasu yo.</b> | <i>No, it's right there.<br/>You see a department store<br/>over there, don't you?<br/>It's to the right of that<br/>department store. If you go<br/>straight from here,<br/>you'll find it right away.</i> |
| <i>Hawaado:</i>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>  |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                       |  |          |
|-----------------------|--|----------|
| <b>tooi</b>           | is far                                     | とおい      |
| <b>tooku arimasen</b> | is not far                                 | とおくありません |
| <b>meeteru</b>        | meter(s)                                   | メートル     |
| <b>wakarimashita</b>  | I understand (lit. I understood)           | わかりました   |
| <b>e</b>              | to, towards                                | へ        |
| <b>iku</b>            | go (dictionary form of ikimasu)            | いく       |
| <b>miemasu</b>        | is visible, can be seen                    | みえます     |
| <b>made</b>           | until, as far as                           | まで       |
| <b>aruite</b>         | on foot, walking<br>(TE form of arukimasu) | あるいて     |
| <b>...fun</b>         | minute(s)                                  | .....ふん  |
| <b>gurai</b>          | approximately, about                       | ぐらい      |
| <b>ikeba</b>          | if (you) go                                | いけば      |

Practice

|                |                 |      |
|----------------|-----------------|------|
| <b>chikai</b>  | is near         | ちかい  |
| <b>de</b>      | by means of     | で    |
| <b>kuruma</b>  | car, automobile | くるま  |
| <b>densha</b>  | electric train  | でんしゃ |
| <b>hikooki</b> | air plane       | ひこうき |

Notes

|           |           |         |
|-----------|-----------|---------|
| ...pun    | minute    | .....ぶん |
| hitotsu   | one       | ひとつ     |
| yottsu    | four      | よっつ     |
| itsutsu   | five      | いつつ     |
| muttsu    | six       | むっつ     |
| nanatsu   | seven     | ななつ     |
| yattsu    | eight     | やっつ     |
| kokonotsu | nine      | ここのつ    |
| too       | ten       | とう      |
| gaijin    | foreigner | がいじん    |

Supplement

|             |                |        |
|-------------|----------------|--------|
| ichi-ji     | one o'clock    | いちじ    |
| ni-ji       | two o'clock    | にじ     |
| san-ji      | three o'clock  | さんじ    |
| yo-ji       | four o'clock   | よじ     |
| go-ji       | five o'clock   | ごじ     |
| roku-ji     | six o'clock    | ろくじ    |
| shichi-ji   | seven o'clock  | しちじ    |
| hachi-ji    | eight o'clock  | はちじ    |
| ku-ji       | nine o'clock   | くじ     |
| juu-ji      | ten o'clock    | じゅうじ   |
| juu ichi-ji | eleven o'clock | じゅういちじ |
| juu ni-ji   | twelve o'clock | じゅうにじ  |
| nan-ji      | what time?     | なんじ    |
| han         | half           | はん     |
| mae         | before         | まえ     |
| sugi        | after, past    | すぎ     |



---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Pronunciation Drill**

In giving directions, Japanese people often mention the distance and/or how long it takes to get from one point to another. In this lesson, we will study the words for 'minute' and 'meter.' Study the following by repeating after the instructor.

Note how the pronunciation of the numerals and the words for 'minute' changes in different environments.

| minutes | pronunciation | meters     | pronunciation |
|---------|---------------|------------|---------------|
| 1-pun   | ip-pun        | 1 meeteru  | ichi meeteru  |
| 2-fun   | ni-fun        | 2 meeteru  | ni meeteru    |
| 3-pun   | san-pun       | 3 meeteru  | san meeteru   |
| 4-pun   | yon-pun       | 4 meeteru  | yon meeteru   |
| 5-fun   | go-fun        | 5 meeteru  | go meeteru    |
| 6-pun   | rop-pun       | 6 meeteru  | roku meeteru  |
| 7-fun   | nana-fun      | 7 meeteru  | nana meeteru  |
| 8-pun   | hap-pun       | 8 meeteru  | hachi meeteru |
| 9-fun   | kyuu-fun      | 9 meeteru  | kyuu meeteru  |
| 10-pun  | jup-pun       | 10 meeteru | juu meeteru   |

Read the following:

| minutes    | meters    |
|------------|-----------|
| 21 minutes | 58 meters |
| 36 minutes | 23 meters |
| 54 minutes | 60 meters |
| 60 minutes | 36 meters |
| 43 minutes | 90 meters |
| 13 minutes | 85 meters |
| 45 minutes | 44 meters |
| 37 minutes | 30 meters |
| 48 minutes | 15 meters |
| 32 minutes | 80 meters |

**B. Comprehension Drill** 注: 教師は次の練習のために何分と何メートルを用意する

The instructor will say several different periods of time or distances. Write down below the English equivalents of what you hear.

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |

**C. Substitution Drill**

Eki kara depaato made aruite 5 - fun gurai desu.

- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| 40-pun | 25-fun |
| 15-fun | 7-fun  |
| 20-pun | 10-pun |
| 35-fun | 5-fun  |
| 30-pun | 3-pun  |

**D. Substitution Drill**

Koko kara soko made aruite 30-pun gurai desu.

- basu de  
takushii de  
chikatetsu de  
kuruma de  
densha de  
hikooki de

**E. Substitution Drill**

Eki wa koko kara tooi desu ka?

- kono chikaku desu  
doko desu  
doko ni arimasu  
kono chikaku ni arimasu  
koko kara chikai desu  
koko kara tooi desu

## Lesson 10 Asking the distance

### F. Production Exercise

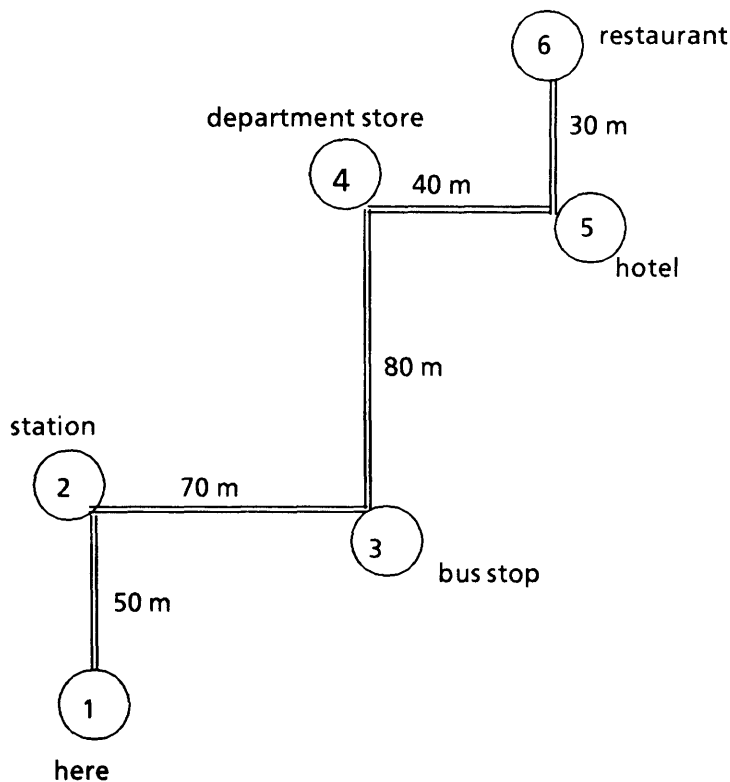
Directions:

Look at the illustration below and give the distance between points 1 and 2, 2 and 3, etc., using the following expression:

...kara ...made ...meetoru gurai desu.

Example:

**Koko kara eki made 50 meetoru gurai desu.**  
(from point 1 to point 2)



### G. Question and Answer Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks whether it is far from point 1 to point 2, from point 2 to point 3, etc., in the illustration for Exercise F above. Student B answers 'no' and gives the distance.

Example:

**A: Koko kara eki made tooi desu ka?** (from point 1 to point 2)

**B: Iie, tooku arimasen. 50 meetoru gurai desu.**

## H. Production Drill

Referring to the list below, say how long it takes to go from a particular place to a destination on foot. Use the following pattern:

Example:

Hibiya Kooen kara Kokkai Gijidoo made aruite 25-fun gurai desu.

Student's list

| departure point   | destination    | minutes |
|-------------------|----------------|---------|
| chikatetsu no eki | Kabukiza       | 5       |
| Amerika Taishikan | Sannoo Hoteru  | 20      |
| Shinjuku-eki      | Shinjuku Gyoen | 15      |
| Ueno-eki          | Ueno Kooen     | 10      |
| Hibiya Kooen      | Kokkai Gijidoo | 25      |

## I. Conversation Management Exercise

注: 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

1. Choose the place to which you are going from the list below.
2. Ask the instructor the location of the place of your choice.  
You can use the following expressions:

...wa doko desu ka?

...wa doko ni arimasu ka?

...wa kono chikaku desu ka?

3. Get directions from the instructor. When you don't understand the directions, ask her/him to repeat or slow down, confirm, etc.
4. Find the correct location of the place on the map on the next page and tell the instructor the letter of the place on the map. If your answer is correct, the instructor will say, *Hai, soo desu*. If it isn't, s/he will say, *lie, chigaimasu*. If your answer is not correct, go back to (3) above.

Student's list

supermarket

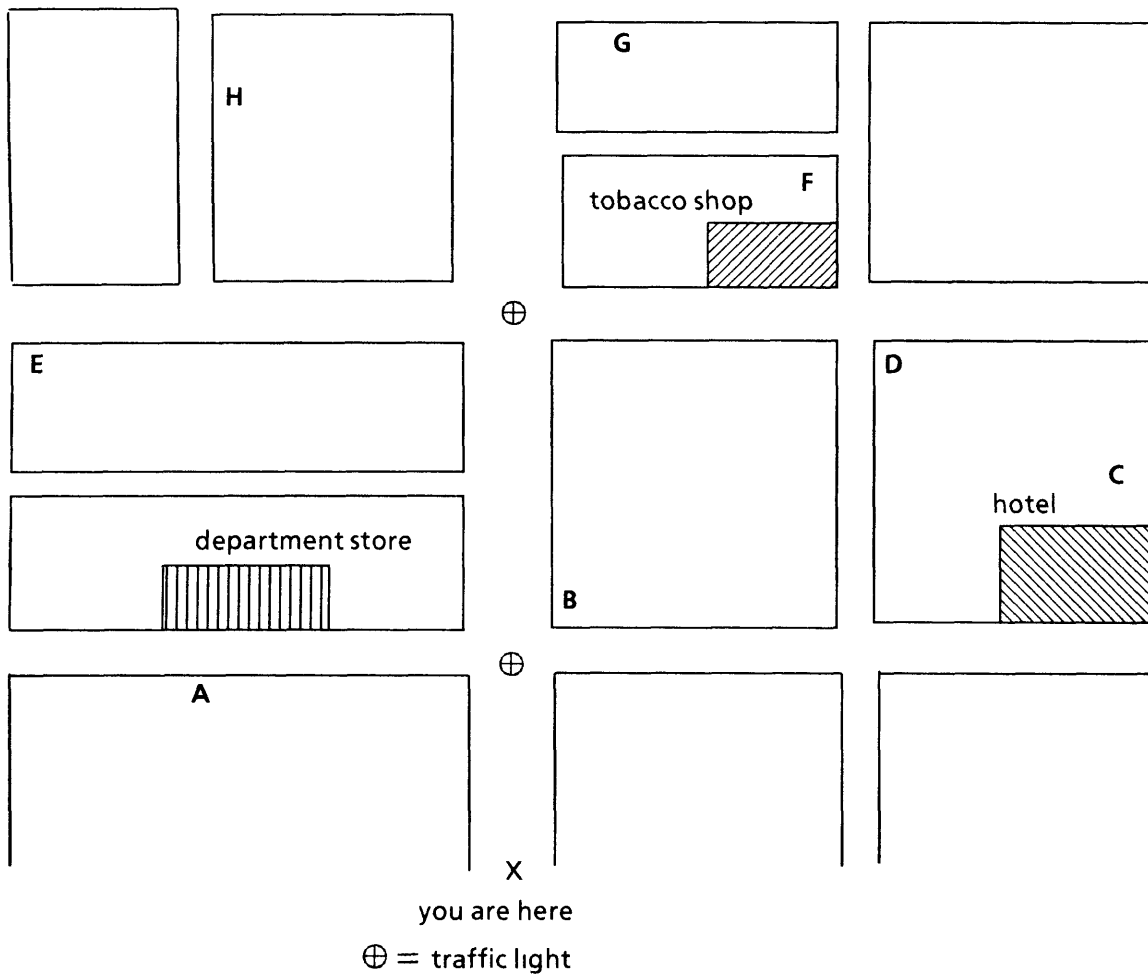
coffee shop

police box

subway station

park

## Lesson 10 Asking the distance



### 教師用スクリプト

1. (スーパー)この道をまっ直く行くと、つきあたりです。そこを右に曲かると、すぐです。歩いて二十分くらいです。
2. (喫茶店)初めの信号を右に曲かって、まっ直く行くと、二つ目の左の角にホテルが見えます。ホテルの隣りにあります。
3. (交番)この道をまっ直く行って、次の交差点を左に曲かります。そこから五十メートルくらい行くと、右にテパートが見えます。そのテパートの前です。
4. (地下鉄駅)ここをまっ直く行って、二つ目の信号を右に曲かると、角にはこ屋があります。そこを左に曲かって、次の左の角にあります。
5. (公園)この道をまっ直く行って、二つ目の信号を左に曲かります。次の角を右に曲かって五十メートルくらい行くと、右にあります。

| READING |   | KANJI       |       |
|---------|---|-------------|-------|
| 1.      | 一 | ichi        | one   |
| 2.      | 二 | ni          | two   |
| 3.      | 三 | san         | three |
| 4.      | 四 | shi/yon     | four  |
| 5.      | 五 | go          | five  |
| 6.      | 六 | roku        | six   |
| 7.      | 七 | shichi/nana | seven |
| 8.      | 八 | hachi       | eight |
| 9.      | 九 | ku/kyuu     | nine  |
| 10.     | 十 | juu         | ten   |

### Supplementary Materials

**A. Age** 注: 教師は「才」を用いる(例: 五十二才)

1. The instructor will read the ages of several people. Check the correct age.

Tanaka            ( ) 25  
                      ( ) 52

Yamada           ( ) 46  
                      ( ) 64

Ueda                ( ) 37  
                      ( ) 73

2. Write the following ages in Japanese:

1 year old \_\_\_\_\_

2 years old \_\_\_\_\_

3 years old \_\_\_\_\_

4 years old \_\_\_\_\_

5 years old \_\_\_\_\_

6 years old \_\_\_\_\_

7 years old \_\_\_\_\_

8 years old \_\_\_\_\_

9 years old \_\_\_\_\_

10 years old \_\_\_\_\_

3. The instructor will now read the above ages. Check your answers and find out how the pronunciation changes in the cases of some of the numbers.

4. Write the following ages in Japanese:

11 years old \_\_\_\_\_

28 years old \_\_\_\_\_

38 years old \_\_\_\_\_

45 years old \_\_\_\_\_

**B. Telling time**

1. Repeat after the instructor for pronunciation practice:

ichi-ji  
 ni-ji  
 san-ji  
 yo-ji  
 go-ji  
 roku-ji  
 shichi-ji  
 hachi-ji  
 ku-ji  
 juu-ji  
 juu ichi-ji  
 juu ni-ji  
 nan-ji

2. Read the following out loud:

(Examples: 1:52 = ichi-ji gojuu ni-fun, 2:30 = ni-ji han)

|      |      |      |       |       |       |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1:15 | 2:47 | 3:13 | 4:25  | 5:38  | 6:29  |
| 7:51 | 8:46 | 9:34 | 10:18 | 11:26 | 12:35 |
| 9:30 | 3:40 | 4:10 | 12:25 | 10:34 | 11:19 |

3. Your instructor will read several times. Write each one down in Arabic numerals.

注: 教師は適宜に時間をいう

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |



## Lesson 10 Asking the distance

### 4. Production Exercise

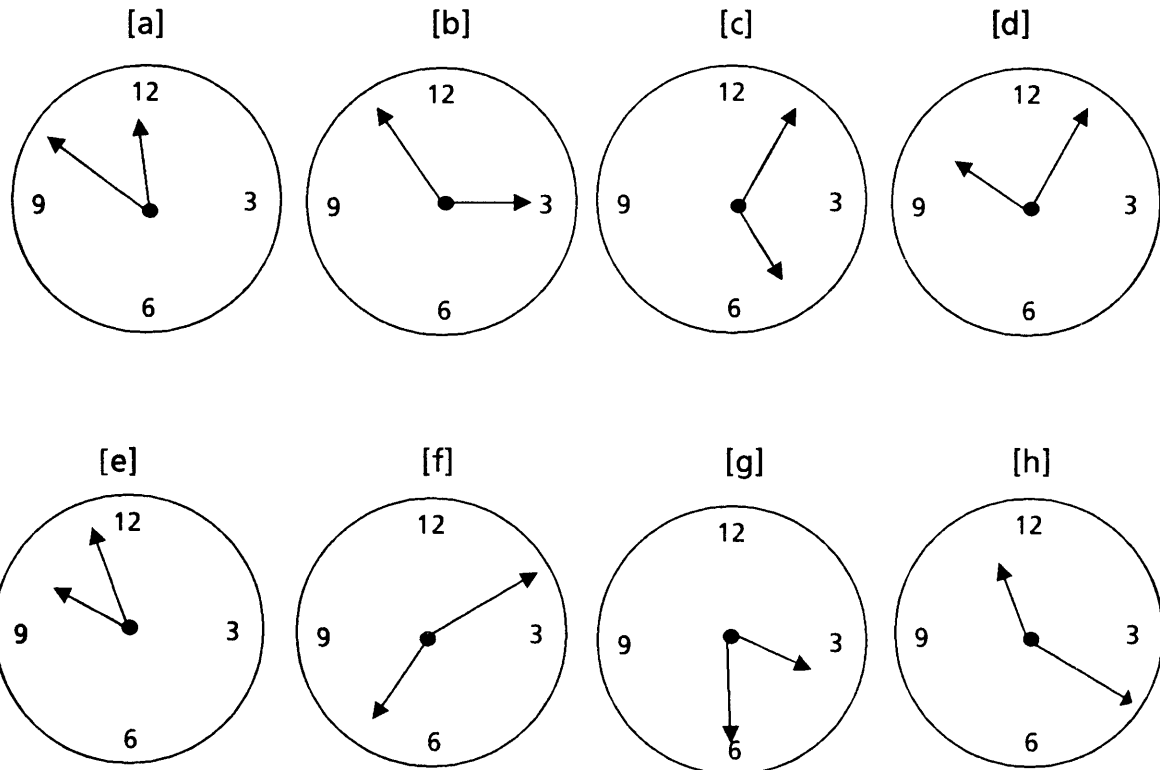
Directions:

Student A asks Student B what time it is. Student B answers by referring to the diagrams below.

Example:

*Student A:* Ima nan-ji desu ka?

*Student B:* (referring to [a] below) Juu ichi-ji gojup-pun desu.



---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *tooi* 'far'

You can use the word *tooi* 'far', when you want to find out if the place to which you are going is far or near, as in the following example:

**Tooi desu ka?**

*Is it far?*

To understand the answer to this question, you will need to be able to pick up the following expression in addition to words like *hai*, *ee*, and *iee*.

**Tooku arimasen.**

*(It's) not far.*

### 2. *gurai* 'about'

The word *gurai* is comparable to English 'about' or 'approximately.' Note that in Japanese *gurai* follows the quantity expression while in English 'about' or 'approximately' precedes.

Examples:

a. **10-pun gurai desu.**

*(It's) about 10 minutes.*

b. **50 meeteru gurai desu.**

*(It's) about 50 meters.*

### 3. *...made* 'as far as...'

You may sometimes hear a Japanese use the word *made* 'as far as' when s/he mentions a destination, as in the following example :

**Soko made 10-pun gurai desu.** *It's about 10 minutes to there.*

Again, note the difference in English and Japanese word order, as in the following:

**eki made**

*to/as far as the station*

**tsugi no shingoo made**

*to/as far as the next traffic light*

If we use the words *...kara* 'from' and *...made* 'as far as...', we can indicate the distance between two places, as in the following examples:

**Tokyo kara Osaka made**

*from Tokyo to Osaka*

**koko kara soko made**

*from here to there*

#### 4. Other expressions often encountered in getting directions

- (a) Japanese people will often say something like 'If you go 50 meters, you will...' The Japanese expression for 'if you go' is *ikuto* or *ikeba*.
- (b) Similarly, they will often say something like 'You will see a department store on your right.' The Japanese expression for 'You will see' is *...ga miemasu*, which literally means 'is visible'

Example.

**50 meetoru gurai ikuto, migi ni depaato ga miemasu.**

*If you go about 50 meters, you will see a department store on the right*

- (c) When indicating how long it takes to get to a place, the Japanese will often specify the means of transportation, e.g., 'on foot' The expression for 'on foot' in Japanese is *aruite*.

Example.

**Soko made aruite 10-pun gurai desu.**

*It is/takes about 10 minutes to get there on foot*

#### 5. Two sets of numerals

In Lesson 8, we learned such expressions as *futatsu-me (no shingoo)*, 'the second (traffic light)', and *mittsu-me (no kado)* 'the third (corner)'. The words *futatsu-me* and *mittsu-me* mean 'the second' and 'the third', respectively, and *futa-* and *mi-* indicate the numbers 'two' and 'three'. These two words are native Japanese numerals. When simply counting numbers, however, the Japanese use another set of numerals which are of Chinese origin. The native Japanese numerals are used only for the numbers one to ten. Any numbers larger than ten are expressed in Chinese numerals. Below is a table that shows the difference between the two systems (Japanese = native Japanese numerals, Chinese = numerals of Chinese origin).

|          | 1    | 2   | 3   | 4   | 5     | 6    | 7      | 8     | 9       | 10  |
|----------|------|-----|-----|-----|-------|------|--------|-------|---------|-----|
| Japanese | hi-  | fu- | mi- | yo- | itsu- | mu-  | nana-  | ya-   | kokono- | too |
| Chinese  | ichi | ni  | san | shi | go    | roku | shichi | hachi | ku/kyuu | juu |

As indicated by the hyphen following the Japanese numerals above, the native Japanese numerals are always used with some other element. The exception is the number 10, *too*, which occurs without *tsu* at the end. Ask your instructor how these two sets of numerals are used in counting objects in Japanese.

## 6. Helpful things to know in getting directions

(a) You may experience a situation in which a Japanese person says to you '*I can't speak English,*' even if you are talking to the person in Japanese! This remark is certainly a very discouraging one, especially to a person who has painstakingly studied Japanese before coming to Japan.

However, don't be too discouraged because even foreigners whose Japanese is quite fluent will have this experience occasionally. This is because ordinary Japanese assume that *gaijin* (外人) '*foreigners*' don't speak Japanese. Furthermore, most Japanese have little confidence in their ability to speak and understand English. Therefore, the first thing a Japanese person might do would be to '*proclaim*' that *s/he* can't speak English (sometimes even before you start to talk).

In order not to embarrass such a person (or not to get embarrassed), be sure to use an attention-getter like *Sumimasen* and to wait for the answer. If you get a reply in Japanese, you can simply go ahead and ask for directions. If the person still does not answer, try someone else.

You may also experience a situation in which a Japanese person replies only in English, even if you are talking to the person in Japanese. In one sense, such a situation is convenient for you, for you can then begin communicating in English. However, you may feel discouraged or even insulted, because you may feel the person believes your Japanese is not good enough. Again, don't take these things too seriously, because it may be that the Japanese is simply trying to be courteous or friendly by speaking in English or that *s/he* wants to practice his/her English.

(b) The metric system is used in Japan and it may take some time to get the 'feeling' of the amount expressed in meters, unless you are already familiar with the system. The following conversion tables are provided to give you a rough idea:

| Meters to feet (approximate) |     |      |      |      |      |
|------------------------------|-----|------|------|------|------|
| meters                       | 1   | 5    | 10   | 15   | 20   |
| feet                         | 3.3 | 16.4 | 32.8 | 49.2 | 65.6 |

| Feet to meters (approximate) |     |     |     |     |     |
|------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| feet                         | 1   | 5   | 10  | 15  | 20  |
| meters                       | 0.3 | 1.5 | 3.1 | 4.6 | 6.1 |

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

テイヒス すみません。高島屋はこの近くですか。  
日本人 高島屋ですか。この道をまっすぐ行って、  
次の交差点を右に曲かると、左にあります。  
テイヒス そうですか。ここから遠いですか。  
日本人 いいえ、遠くありませんよ。80メートルくらいです。  
テイヒス わかりました。どうも。

**Situation 2**

コリンス すみません。世谷駅はどこですか。  
日本人 駅はちょっと遠いですよ。二つ目の角を右へまっすぐ  
行くと、つきあたりにテパートか見えます。  
駅はその前です。  
そうですねえ。ここから駅まで歩いて15分くらいです。  
コリンス 歩いて15分?  
日本人 ええ。  
コリンス そうですか。どうも。

**Situation 3**

ハワート すみません。地下鉄の駅はここから遠いですか。  
日本人 いいえ、すぐですよ。あそこにテパートかありますね。  
あのテパートの右です。  
ここをまっすぐ行けば、すぐわかりますよ。  
ハワート そうですか。どうもありがとう。

---

---

## REVIEW LESSON:

## MAKING IT WORK(1)

---

---

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

### *What do you do or say in the following situations?*

- 1 You want to find out if that building over there is Tokyo Station
- 2 You want to find out if Ginza 4-chome is far from where you are
- 3 Someone gives you directions
- 4 You are shopping in a department store and have to go to the bathroom. When you can't find it, how would you ask your way?
- 5 You want to find out from a Japanese if this is the office of Mr. Johnson
- 6 You are on your way to work in the morning and you want to greet a Japanese acquaintance you see on the way
- 7 You have been asked on the street by a Japanese whose English is poor where the U.S. Embassy is
- 8 You have received something from a Japanese
- 9 You have just gotten off the train and you think that this street goes to Ginza 4-chome. How would you check this?
- 10 It's after work and before you go home
- 11 You want to get a stranger's attention on the street so you can ask something
- 12 You want to find out if there is a taxi stand in the immediate vicinity
- 13 You asked the way to the station but the person you asked speaks Japanese so fast you can't understand
- 14 You want to find out what that building at the end of the street is
- 15 You want a favor done
- 16 You want to find out if the Mitsukoshi Department Store is on the second or third corner (from here)
- 17 You have made a telephone call to a certain office and gotten the wrong number
- 18 You are at a restaurant and have seen something among the plastic samples that you would like to try, but you don't know what it's called in Japanese
- 19 You want to find out if a given Japanese knows English
- 20 You want to go to the Kabuki Theater and you asked a Japanese the way but you didn't understand the answer well
- 21 You are asked by a Japanese 'Are you (your name)?'
- 22 You are asked by a Japanese 'Are you (someone else's name)?'

## Review Lesson: Making It Work (1)

23. You have been looking for Mr. Johnson's office but you can't find it.
24. You want to find out where Mr. Sato's room is.
25. You are first introduced to someone.
26. You think it's Mr. Tanaka of the Trade Ministry but you want to make sure.
27. You meet a Japanese friend. Ask how his wife (or husband) is.
28. You are looking for the Sony Building. You want to find out if it's near or far from where you are now.
29. You're not sure where the station you're looking for is. Ask a Japanese to draw you a map.
30. You're on the train and you want to find out how many more stations there are before Roppongi.
31. You're on the train and you want to make sure that Shinjuku is the station after next.
32. You're on the train and you want to find out what the next station is.
33. You want to find out how long it will take to go from where you are to the subway station.
34. Your Japanese has been praised by a Japanese. How do you respond?
35. There's a phone call for Ms. Tanaka from a Japanese but she is out. What do you do?
36. You want to order sukiyaki.
37. You want to ask about the location of Takashimaya department store.
38. You want to ask for an English menu.
39. You want to propose a time.
40. You want to confirm the name of a person to whom you are introduced.
41. You want to ask a person when s/he wants to meet.
42. You want to ask for a person who understands English.
43. You propose to meet on Saturday.
44. You say you are the wife/husband of an employee.
45. You want to ask a person about a convenient time to meet.
46. You want to introduce your wife/husband to a Japanese.
47. You want to exchange business cards with someone.
48. You want to introduce a friend to your instructor.
49. You want to ask the location of the nearest bus stop.
50. You want to ask the time.

Lesson 11

# BUYING A TRAIN TICKET

横浜へ行きたいんですが.....

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask a Japanese to tell you the fare to your destination
- ask a Japanese to buy a ticket for you
- find out where you can buy a ticket at a station
- buy a ticket at a ticket window
- count numbers up to 999





## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

## Situation 1

*Ms Spencer wants to go to Shibuya to see a special exhibit at a department store. She is now at Tokyo Station. To go to Shibuya, she can use either the subway or the JR-sen. Since there is a subway exit that leads to an underground entrance to the department store, she decides to take the subway.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <i>Supensaa:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Shibuya e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me<br/>I want to go to Shibuya, (but) where is the ticket window?</i>       |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Chikatetsu desu ka, JR-sen desu ka?</b>                                | <i>The subway or the JR-sen?</i>  |
| <i>Supensaa:</i> | <b>Chikatetsu desu.</b>   | <i>The subway.</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Aa, jaa, koko o massugu itte, kaidan o agatte, chotto itta . . .</b>   | <i>Oh, well, go straight from here, go up the stairs and go a little further. . .</i> |
| <i>Supensaa:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Wakarimasen.</b>  | <i>Sorry, I don't understand</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Jaa, tsurete itte agemashoo.</b>                          | <i>Oh. Well, then I'll take you there.</i>  |
| <i>Supensaa:</i> | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>Thank you very much.</i>   |

## Situation 2

*Ms. Norris is at Tokyo station en route to Kamakura for sightseeing. Although her friend has told her how much the fare is to Kamakura, she doesn't remember. To find out the fare she tries to read the fare chart, but all the station names are written in Kanji which she doesn't recognize.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Norisu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Kamakura e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me I want to go to Kamakura, (but) how much is it?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Eeto. . . Koko kara Kamakura made 900-en desu.</b>        | <i>Let me see. . . It's 900 yen from here to Kamakura.</i>       |
| <i>Norisu:</i>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo.</b>                                   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>   |

**Situation 3**

*After a weekend in Hakone, Mr and Mrs. Murphy are going home to Shinjuku by train  
Mr. Murphy sees several ticket-windows at the station. He goes to one of the windows.*

**Maafii:** Sumimasen. Shinjuku e ikitain desu ga, kippu wa koko desu ka? *Excuse me. I want to go to Shinjuku, (but) is this where tickets are sold?*

**Madoguchi no hito:** Ee, soo desu yo. *Yes, that's right.*

**Maafii:** Jaa, Shinjuku, 2-mai. *Well, then, two tickets to Shinjuku.*

**Madoguchi no hito:** 1,280-en desu. *That's 1,280 yen*

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                 |   |          |
|-----------------|---|----------|
| ikitain desu ga | (I) want to go<br>(TAI form of ikimasu)   | いきたいんですか |
| ga              | but (functions like English<br>semicolon) | か        |
| kippu           | ticket                                    | きっぷ      |
| kippu uriba     | ticket window                             | きっぷうりは   |
| kaidan          | stairway                                  | かいたん     |
| agatte          | go up (TE form of agarimasu)              | あかって     |
| ikura           | how much?                                 | いくら      |
| en              | yen                                       | えん       |
| hyaku           | hundred                                   | ひゃく      |

Practice

|                |  |          |
|----------------|--|----------|
| ...byaku       | .. hundred (san-byaku)                   | ひゃく      |
| ...pyaku       | ... hundred<br>(rop-pyaku and hap-pyaku) | ぴゃく      |
| jidoo hanbaiki | vending machine                          | しとうはんはいき |

Notes

|                              |                              |                 |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
| mai                          | counter for flat objects     | まい              |
| madoguchi                    | (sales) window               | まどぐち            |
| ...ban                       | number...                    | はん              |
| shirimasen                   | doesn't/don't know           | しりません           |
| kaisuu-ken                   | coupon tickets               | かいうけん           |
| teeki-ken                    | season pass, commuter ticket | ていきけん           |
| unchin (ryookin)<br>seesanjo | fare adjustment window       | りょうきん<br>せいさんしょ |
| katte kudasai-<br>masen ka   | won't you buy (it) for me?   | かってください<br>ませんか |

kaisatsuguchi

gate (at station)

かいさつぐち

**Personalized List**

---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Comprehension Exercise** 注: 教師は適宜に枚数を言う

The instructor will read numbers of tickets (e.g., ichi-mai, ni-mai, etc.). Write down the number of tickets you hear mentioned.

- |    |    |    |    |     |
|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. | 3. | 5. | 7. | 9.  |
| 2. | 4. | 6. | 8. | 10. |

**B. Translation Exercise**

Example:

(cue) one ticket to Ueno  
(response) Ueno, ichi-mai

two tickets to Yokohama  
four tickets to Shinjuku  
three tickets to Shibuya  
five tickets to Asakusa  
one ticket to the Ginza

**C. Substitution Drill**

Kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

JR-sen no eki  
Chikatetsu no eki  
Chikatetsu no kippu uriba  
Koko  
JR-sen no kippu uriba  
Jidoo hanbaiki

**D. Substitution Drill**

Ueno e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?

|         |          |
|---------|----------|
| Tokyo   | Kyoto    |
| Nagoya  | Osaka    |
| Fukuoka | Yokohama |

## E. Reading numbers

In Lesson 1, we learned how to count from 1 to 99. In this lesson, we will learn the numbers up to 999. Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after the instructor.

|     |              |
|-----|--------------|
| 100 | hyaku        |
| 200 | ni - hyaku   |
| 300 | san - byaku  |
| 400 | yon - hyaku  |
| 500 | go - hyaku   |
| 600 | rop - pyaku  |
| 700 | nana - hyaku |
| 800 | hap - pyaku  |
| 900 | kyuu - hyaku |

123 is read as hyaku ni-juu san. Now read the following numbers:

- |        |        |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. 132 | 3. 243 | 5. 356 | 7. 404 | 9. 580  |
| 2. 671 | 4. 765 | 6. 818 | 8. 927 | 10. 999 |

The instructor will read some numbers. Write them down.

注: 教師は百から九百九十九までの数字を用意する

- |    |    |    |    |     |
|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5.  |
| 6. | 7. | 8. | 9. | 10. |

## F. Information Exchange Exercise

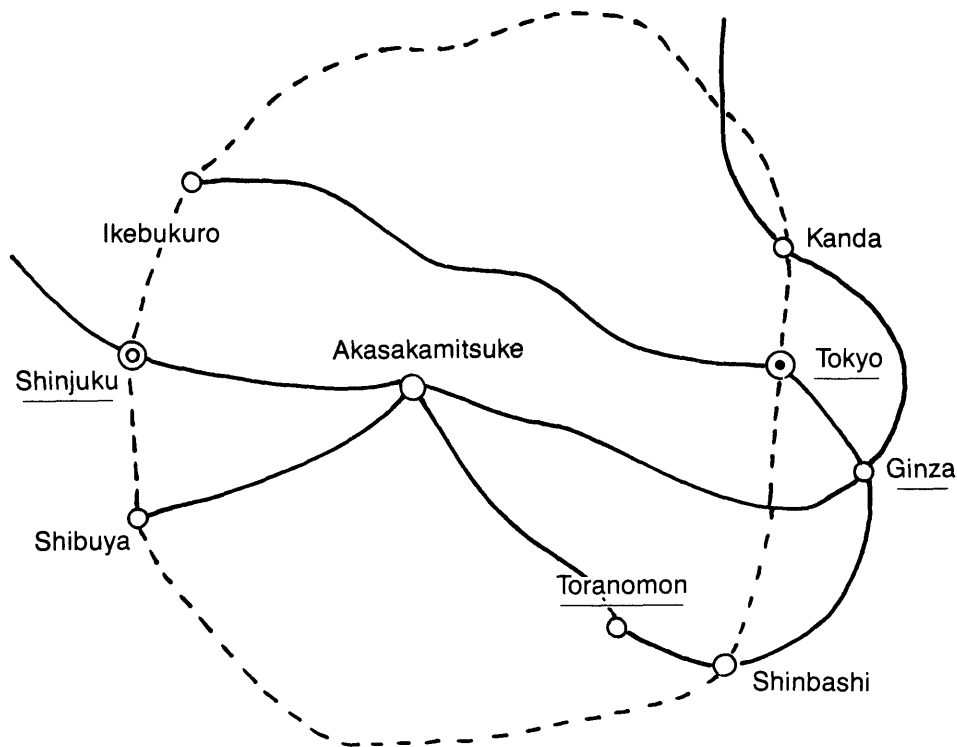
Directions:

Student A selects two subway stations from the map on the next page and asks how much the fare is. (Use the underlined stations only.) Student B answers by referring to the fare chart.

Example:

*Student A:* Tokyo kara Ginza made ikura desu ka?  
*Student B:* Hyaku ni-juu en desu.

## Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket



Note: Toranomom is the subway station nearest the American Embassy.

Fare Chart for Student B

| <u>from</u> | <u>to</u> | <u>fare</u> |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| Tokyo       | Ginza     | 120         |
|             | Toranomon | 180         |
|             | Shinjuku  | 360         |
| Ginza       | Tokyo     | 120         |
|             | Toranomon | 180         |
|             | Shinjuku  | 320         |
| Toranomon   | Tokyo     | 180         |
|             | Ginza     | 180         |
|             | Shinjuku  | 300         |
| Shinjuku    | Tokyo     | 360         |
|             | Ginza     | 320         |
|             | Toranomon | 300         |

## G. Information Exchange Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks for a ticket/tickets to a destination by choosing a place from the list below and asking how much the fare is. The instructor confirms the destination and gives the fare, referring to the fare chart. Student A confirms the fare. The instructor responds to student A's confirmation. (If student A doesn't get the fare correctly, the instructor gives the fare again.) Student A then says Hai 'Here you are,' pretending s/he is giving the money to the instructor.

Example:

*Student A:* Kamakura, ichi-mai. Ikura desu ka?

*Instructor:* Kamakura desu ka? 800-en desu.

*Student A:* 800-en desu ne.

*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu. OR lie, (correct fare) . . . en desu.

*Student A:* Hai (pretending that s/he is giving the money).

### List for student A

| <u>destination</u> | <u>number of tickets</u> |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| Tokyo              | 3                        |
| Ueno               | 2                        |
| Shinagawa          | 2                        |
| Yokohama           | 1                        |
| Kamakura           | 1                        |

### 教師用 運賃表

| <u>行き先</u> | <u>運賃</u> |
|------------|-----------|
| 東京         | 三百円       |
| 上野         | 四百円       |
| 品川         | 三百円       |
| 横浜         | 五百円       |
| 鎌倉         | 九百円       |



## H. Interpreting Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks for information in English, following the directions below. Student B translates the directions into Japanese. The instructor responds (with possible additional information). Student B takes notes, either in English or Japanese, and confirms his/her understanding. Student B expresses his/her thanks. The instructor responds. Student B then translates the information into English for student A.

Example:

**Student A:** I want to go to Otemachi. Please ask where the ticket window is.

**Student B:** Otemachi e ikitai n desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?

**Instructor:** Koko o massugu itte, migi ni arimasu yo. Esukareetaa no mukoo desu.

**Student B:** (asks to slow down or repeat, confirms, etc.)  
Doomo (arigatoo).

**Instructor:** Doo itashimashite, etc.

**Student B:** (to student A) Go straight. It's on the right, beyond the escalator.

Directions for student A:

1. You want to go to Asakusa. Ask where the ticket window is.
2. You want to go to Toranomom. Ask how much the fare is.
3. You want to go to Hibiya. You are at a ticket window. Ask whether you can buy a ticket there or not.
4. You want to go to Mitsukoshi Mae station (in front of Mitsukoshi). Ask the instructor to buy a ticket for you and ask how much the fare is. Give him or her the money.
5. You want to go to Nihonbashi. You are in front of a ticket vending machine. Ask how much the fare is.
6. You want to go to Akasakamitsuke. Ask where you can buy a ticket.

教師用スクリプト

1. 切符売場ですか。その自動販売機ですよ。
2. 虎ノ門ですか。二百円です。
3. そこの自動販売機で買ってください。百八十円です。
4. ええ、いいですよ。(学生がいくらか聞いたあとで) 二百三十円ですよ。(切符を買ってから) はい、これが切符です。
5. さあ、私も知りませんか、ああ、上に表がありますね。ええと、二百八十円です。
6. 赤坂見附ですね。あっちの方です。連れて行ってあげましょう。

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |         |                  |                        |
|---------|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 大人   | otona            | adult                  |
| 2. 小人   | kodomo           | child(ren)             |
| 3. 運賃表  | unchinhyoo       | fare list              |
| 4. 発売中  | hatsubaichuu     | on sale                |
| 5. 発売中止 | hatsubai-chuushi | not on sale            |
| 6. 両替機  | ryoogaeki        | money changing machine |

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. *How to express your desire to do something*

When you want to express your desire to do something, you can use the following pattern:

**V-tain desu.** *I want to V*  
(Note V indicates a verb stem)

In order to use this expression, you have to know the correct verb form. In this lesson, you will learn the verb form *iki-* 'go' as in the following example

**Ikitain desu.** *I want to go*

To specify the place you want to go to, place the destination and the particle *e* in front of the above expression, as illustrated below

**Ginza e ikitain desu.** *I want to go to the Ginza*

This expression will be especially useful when you want to find out where you can buy a ticket, how much the fare is, etc. In such cases, use an expression like the following

*I want to go to the Ginza, where is the ticket window?*

The Japanese expression for the above is

**Ginza e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?**

Note that the particle *ga* in the above sentence literally means 'but.' However, in this sentence it is only a way of smoothing the transition between the statement of desire 'I want to ' and what follows, and should not be taken literally.

#### a. *When you want to find out the fare*

When you want to find out a price, you can use the following expression

**Ikura desu ka?** *How much is it?*

Thus, when you want to say 'I want to go to Toranomom, (but) how much is it?' (i.e., 'how much is the fare'), you can say

**Toranomon e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?**

b. *When you want to find out where you can buy a ticket*

The following are some useful words to know if you want to find out where you can buy a ticket:

|                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>kippu</b>       | <i>ticket</i>                                     |
| <b>kippu uriba</b> | <i>ticket window (lit., ticket selling place)</i> |

- (I) When you want to ask 'Can I buy a ticket here?' or 'Are tickets sold here?,' you can use the following expression:

**Kippu wa koko desu ka?** (*lit., Are tickets here?*)

Thus, the expression *Toranomon e ikitain desu ga, kippu wa koko desu ka?* means 'I want to go to Toranomon; can I buy a ticket here?'

If you are at the wrong window, the clerk at the window will tell you the right window number. S/he will say something like the following:

... **ban no madoguchi desu.** (*It's window #...*)  
(See Lesson 12 for usage of *-ban*.)

- (II) When you want to find out where a ticket window is, you can use the following expression:

**Kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?**

As in (a) above, if you want to say 'I want to go to the Ginza; can you tell me where the ticket window is?,' you can say:

**Ginza e ikitain desu ga, kippu uriba wa doko desu ka?**

2. *Some useful expressions for buying a ticket*

The Japanese expressions used in buying a ticket at a ticket window are very simple. When you want to buy a ticket to the Ginza, for example, you simply say:

**Ginza.**

However, although not very likely, you may be asked by the clerk at the window how many tickets you want. In order to avoid being asked this kind of question, which you may find difficult to understand, it is a good idea to specify the number first. The number of tickets can be expressed in the following pattern:

numeral + **mai**

The word *mai* refers to thin flat objects. Words of this kind are sometimes called counters, for they are used when counting objects and persons. They indicate what kind of objects you are counting.

When you want to say 'One ticket to the Ginza,' for example, you can say:

## Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket

### Ginza, ichi-mai.

Likewise, when you want to say 'Two tickets to Toranomon,' you can say:

### Toranomon, ni-mai.

Note that in specifying the number of tickets, you simply use the appropriate number in Japanese and add mai, which stays the same, regardless of the number.

### 3. *Tsurete itte agemashoo* 'I'll take you there'

When directions you asked would be complicated and the place you are looking for is not far, a Japanese person will often take you there instead of giving you directions. In such a case, s/he would say:

**Tsurete itte agemashoo.** *I'll take you there.*

When a Japanese person doesn't know the place you are looking for, his/her typical reaction will be to say,

**Saa, . . . or Soo desu ne . . .** *Well, . . .*

He or she may then add:

**Watakushi mo shirimasen.** *I don't know, either.*

### 4. *Kinds of tickets*

#### a. Regular tickets

For most short distance trips, tickets can be bought from a ticket vending machine. In some cases, you can buy them only from a machine, not at a window. What you need to do to buy a ticket from a vending machine is:

- (I) Find out the fare from the fare chart, which usually takes the form of a map of train routes and is placed above the machines.
- (II) Put sufficient coins into the slot and push the button that has the correct price on it. The ticket (and change) will come out at the bottom of the machine.

#### b. **kaisuu-ken** (回数券) 'coupon tickets'

The **kaisuu-ken** (回数券) is a kind of discount ticket. It is a sheet of eleven tickets which can be bought at the ticket window of a station for the price of ten regular tickets. It is valid only for the designated stations and a ticket should be separated from the rest only after it is punched or stamped at the gate or **kaisatsuguchi** (改札口) when entering the platform area.

c. **teeki-ken** (定期券) 'season pass' or 'commuter ticket'

The **teeki-ken** (定期券) is a season pass which entitles you to unlimited train rides between the designated stations for the designated period. You can buy a **teeki-ken** that is valid for one month, three months or six months at the ticket window of a station. With a **teeki-ken**, you can save nearly 50% of the regular price, depending on how often you use it and how long it is valid. The longer the designated period, the larger the discount rate is.

## 5. How to buy the correct ticket

Since the station names on the fare chart are usually written only in Kanji, you need to be able to read the Kanji in order to buy the correct ticket unless you know the fare beforehand. You may wonder what you should do if you cannot read the station names and don't know the fare. The following are some suggestions for such occasions.

a. Buy the lowest fare ticket from the machine, take the train and go to the **unchin/ryookin-seesanjo** (運賃/料金精算所) 'fare adjustment window' before you go through the gate at your destination. The clerk there will tell you how much the difference is. Pay the difference and get a receipt from the clerk. When you go through the gate give the receipt to the attendant. (You can't go through the automated gate with the receipt.)

b. Ask a Japanese person near the vending machine to buy the ticket for you. The expressions that can be used for this purpose are

(your destination) **e ikitain desu.** *I want go to (your destination)*  
**Kippu o katte kudasaimasen ka?** *Would you please buy a ticket for me?*

c. If you only want to know the fare, you can ask somebody near you by saying

(your destination) **e ikitain desu ga, ikura desu ka?**  
*I want to go to (your destination), but how much is it?*

d. Ask a Japanese friend to write the name of the station to which you are going in Kanji beforehand. (If your friend knows the fare, you don't need to do this, of course.) When you buy a ticket, match the Kanji station name you have with the one in the fare chart and find out the fare.

## 6. **Kaisatsuguchi** (改札口) 'gate'

When entering or exiting the platform area, you must go through a **kaisatsuguchi** (改札口). In some stations in major cities, there are two types of **kaisatsuguchi**: the automated gate and the one with an attendant. At such stations, if you have a regular ticket bought from the vending machine, you can go through the automated gate by simply inserting the ticket into the machine and removing it as you go through. Your ticket will not be returned when you go through the gate at your destination. If you have a **kaisuu-ken** (回数券) you must use the gate with an attendant, for your ticket must be punched or stamped by the attendant. (You give the ticket to the attendant at your destination.) With the **teeki-ken** (定期券) you should check whether you can use the automated gate or not, because some **teeki-ken** allow you to go through the automated gate and others don't. If you are not sure whether or not you can

## Lesson 11 Buying a train ticket

go through the automated gate with the ticket you have, it is better to use the one with an attendant.

### 7. *Public Transport*

#### a. **JR-sen (formerly Kokuden)**

Japan Railway (JR) operates many electric train services in and through Tokyo. They are known as JR-sen trains, whose lines can be identified by the distinctive color of the coaches.

The Yamate-sen loop line circles the heart of Tokyo, one service going clockwise and the other counterclockwise. It stops at all sub-centers such as Shinjuku, Shinbashi, Shibuya, Ueno, Ikebukuro, Shinagawa, etc. Tokyo station is also one of the stops. The Yamate-sen coaches are green in color. It takes 62 minutes to make one complete round, which gives visitors an excellent cross-section view of Tokyo.

#### b. **Subway**

The Japanese call the subway chikatetsu. The ten subway lines which crisscross under Tokyo are the quickest and cheapest way of going from place to place. The coaches are clean, very well illuminated, and run at frequent intervals.

All lines start operating at 5 a. m. and most stop running just before midnight. The lines connect at various points with JR-sen trains.

Some of the entrances to the subway are on the sidewalk while others are on the sides of buildings. Big stations have several entrances (exits) which could be more than 100 meters apart. Therefore, ask which exit you should take to reach your destination. At every platform, the name of the station is spelled out in English.

Most stations have automatic ticket vendors. It is recommended that, whatever the destination, you buy the minimum . . . en ticket. You can pay the difference when you get off. Tickets are punched as you go through the gate and must be turned in at the end of the ride, so hang on to them.

#### c. **Bus**

The bus is the best way for getting to points between the subway and a JR-sen station. It gets you closest to where you want to go because the distances between stops are short. However, buses are very difficult to use unless you know the language or are familiar with the routes. The tremendous number of routes and the obscure identification of the stops can be most confusing. Ride buses only if you are able to obtain clear, specific, and accurate directions beforehand.

---

 会話
 

---

## Situation 1

- スペンサー すみません。  
 渋谷へ行きたいんですか、切符売場はどこですか。  
 日本人 地下鉄ですか、JR線ですか。  
 スペンサー 地下鉄です。  
 日本人 ああ、じゃ、ここをまっすぐ行って、階段を上かって  
 ちょっと行った  
 スペンサー すみません。わかりません。  
 日本人 そうですか。じゃ、連れて行ってあげましょう。  
 スペンサー とうもありがとう。

## Situation 2

- ノリス すみません。鎌倉へ行きたいんですか、いくらですか。  
 日本人 ええと ここから鎌倉まで九百円です。  
 ノリス そうですか。とうも。

## Situation 3

- マーフィー すみません。  
 新宿へ行きたいんですか、切符はここですか。  
 空口の人 ええ、そうですよ。  
 マーフィー じゃ、新宿、二枚。  
 空口の人 千二百八十円です。



**Lesson 11**   **Buying a train ticket**

Lesson 12

TAKING THE RIGHT TRAIN

大阪行きは何番線ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the track from which your train leaves
- find out if a train is the one you want to take
- check on the destination of a given train
- count numbers up to 9,999



---



---

**DIALOGS**

**KAIWA**

---



---

**Situation 1**

*Mrs. Williams wants to go to Yokohama to do some grocery shopping at the PX. At Shinagawa station, she asks a Japanese person to which track she should go.*

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Uiriamusu:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Yokohama e ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?</b>                                       | <i>Excuse me. I want to go to Yokohama, but is this the right platform?</i>                           |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Yokohama desu ka? Yokohama wa Yokosuka-sen desu kara... eeto... (pointing) mukoo no hoo desu yo.</b> | <i>Yokohama? Since the Yokosuka line goes to Yokohama... let's see... It's over there (pointing).</i> |
| <i>Uiriamusu:</i> | <b>Mukoo?</b>   | <i>Over there?</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Ee, ichi-bansen to ni-bansen desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, platforms number 1 and 2.</i>   |
| <i>Uiriamusu:</i> | <b>Ichi-bansen to?</b>  | <i>Number 1 and?</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Ee, ichi-bansen to ni-bansen desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, number 1 and number 2.</i>  |
| <i>Uiriamusu:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>  |

**Situation 2**

*Ms. Watson is going to Yokosuka to see a doctor at the base. She is waiting for a train on a platform at Tokyo station.*

|                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| <i>Watoson:</i>  | <b>Sumimasen. Kono densha wa Yokosuka e ikimasu ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me. Does this train go to Yokosuka?</i>                |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, ikimasen yo. Yokosuka-iki wa atchi desu.</b>    | <i>No, it doesn't. The train bound for Yokosuka is that way.</i> |
| <i>Watoson:</i>  | <b>Nan-bansen desu ka?</b>                              | <i>What platform number is it?</i>                               |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>San-bansen desu yo.</b>                              | <i>It's number 3.</i>  |
| <i>Watoson:</i>  | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>                                  | <i>Thank you.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*Mr. Russell has an appointment to see a professor at Gakugei Daigaku. He was told that he should take a Toyoko line train bound for Sakuragicho from Shibuya.*

- |                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Rasseru:</i>  | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Kore wa Sakuragicho-iki desu ka?</b>   | <i>Excuse me. Is this train<br/>bound for Sakuragicho?</i>   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Ee, soo desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, it is.</i>   |
| <i>Rasseru:</i>  | <b>Gakugei Daigaku ni tomarimasu<br/>ka?</b>   | <i>Does it stop at Gakugei<br/>Daigaku?</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, kore wa kyuukoo desu kara<br/>tomarimasen yo. Tsugi no<br/>kakueki ga tomarimasu yo.</b> | <i>No, since it's an express<br/>train, it doesn't stop. The<br/>next local train stops there.</i> |
| <i>Rasseru:</i>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>   |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|             |                               |           |
|-------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| hoomu       | platform                      | ホーム       |
| ...sen      | ...line, track                | .....せん   |
| kara        | because                       | から        |
| ...bansen   | line/platform/track number... | .....ばんせん |
| to          | and                           | と         |
| ikimasen    | doesn't/don't go              | いきません     |
| ...iki      | (train) bound for...          | .....いき   |
| nan-bansen  | which line/platform/track     | なんばんせん    |
| tomarimasu  | stop/stops                    | とまります     |
| kyuukoo     | express train                 | きゅうこう     |
| tomarimasen | doesn't/don't stop            | とまりません    |
| kakueki     | local train                   | かくえき      |

Practice

|          |                    |         |
|----------|--------------------|---------|
| ...sen   | thousand           | せん      |
| ...zen   | thousand (san-zen) | ぜん      |
| Chuo-sen | Chuo-line          | ちゅうおうせん |

Notes

|            |                               |        |
|------------|-------------------------------|--------|
| JR         | Japan Railway                 |        |
| Shinkansen | bullet train                  | しんかんせん |
| tokkyuu    | super express train           | とっきゅう  |
| futsuu     | local train (lit., usual)     | ふつう    |
| kaisoku    | express train                 | かいそく   |
| futsuu-sha | coach car                     | ふつうしゃ  |
| guriin-sha | first-class (lit., green car) | グリーンしゃ |
| jiyuu-seki | unreserved seat               | じゅうせき  |

|                        |                              |         |
|------------------------|------------------------------|---------|
| <b>shitee-seki</b>     | reserved seat                | していせき   |
| <b>nobori</b>          | up-train                     | のほり     |
| <b>kudari</b>          | down-train                   | くだり     |
| <b>doozo</b>           | please, go ahead, feel free  | どうぞ     |
| <b>shirubaa shiito</b> | priority (lit., silver) seat | シルハーシート |
| <b>oshiya</b>          | (subway, train) pusher       | おしや     |

**Personalized list**

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Reading Numbers**

In this lesson, we will study numbers up to 9,999. The Japanese word for 'thousand' is *sen* (千). Study the following numbers and practice their pronunciation by repeating after the instructor:

|       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|
| 1,000 | <i>sen</i>      |
| 2,000 | <i>ni-sen</i>   |
| 3,000 | <i>san-zen</i>  |
| 4,000 | <i>yon-sen</i>  |
| 5,000 | <i>go-sen</i>   |
| 6,000 | <i>roku-sen</i> |
| 7,000 | <i>nana-sen</i> |
| 8,000 | <i>has-sen</i>  |
| 9,000 | <i>kyuu-sen</i> |

Note how the pronunciation changes in 3,000 and 8,000.

Now read the following numbers:

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. 1,329 | 6. 6,892  |
| 2. 2,751 | 7. 7,064  |
| 3. 3,648 | 8. 8,276  |
| 4. 4,510 | 9. 9,405  |
| 5. 5,137 | 10. 5,893 |

The instructor will read several numbers aloud. Write them down in Arabic numerals below.

注: 教師は 9,999 までの数を用意する

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |

**B. Substitution Drill**

Yokohama-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?

Tokyo-iki  
san-bansen  
Osaka-iki  
Chuo-sen  
hachi-bansen  
go-bansen  
Yokosuka-iki  
nan-bansen

**C. Substitution Drill**

Yokohama-iki wa kono hoomu desu ka?

nobori  
Tokyo-iki  
yon-bansen  
kudari  
Osaka-iki  
Yokosuka-sen

**D. Substitution Drill**

Kono densha wa Yokohama ni tomarimasu ka?

Ochanomizu  
ikimasu  
Shinagawa  
Toranomom  
tomarimasu  
Ikebukuro  
Yotsuya



### E. Substitution Drill

Kono densha wa Shinjuku ni tomarimasu.

Kono basu  
Ginza yon-choome  
Kono densha  
Ochanomizu  
Kyuukoo  
Ikebukuro  
Yotsuya

### F. Combination Exercise

Directions:

The student asks the instructor the platform of a train from the list below and writes it down.

Example:

*Student:* **Osaka-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?**  
*Instructor:* **Nana-bansen to hachi-bansen desu.**

List for student

注: 教師は適当に答える

a train for Nagoya  
a train for Tokyo  
a train for Yokohama  
a train for Sapporo  
a train for Osaka

Platform # (            )  
Platform # (            )  
Platform # (            )  
Platform # (            )  
Platform # (            )

## G. Reading and Question Exercise

The following is part of the train route of the Chuo-line. Practice the pronunciation of the names of the various stops by repeating after the instructor.

Directions:

The student chooses a station from the chart and asks if the *kaisoku* 'express' stops at the station.

Example:

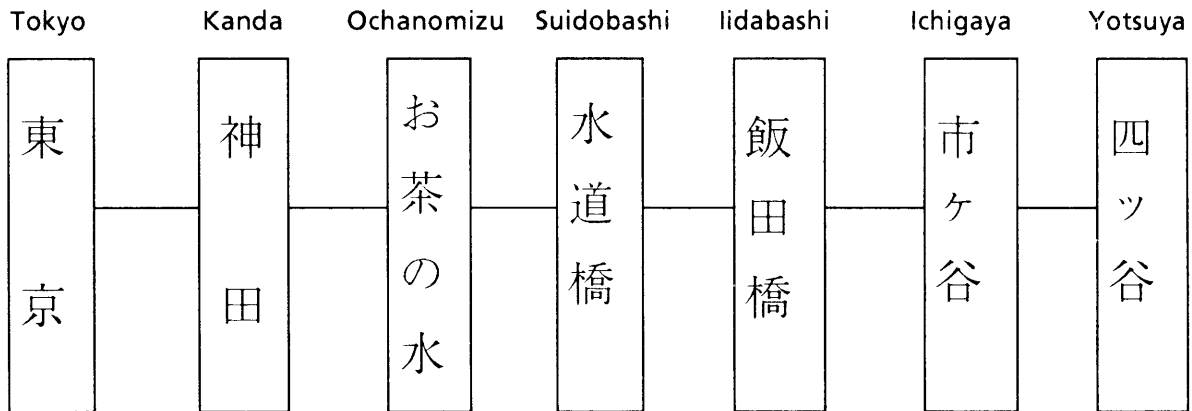
*Student:* **Kanda e ikitain desu ga, kaisoku wa tomarimasu ka?**

*Instructor:* **Hai, tomarimasu.**

or

**lie, tomarimasen.**

注: 快速停車駅は東京、お茶の水、四ッ谷



---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |    |        |                 |                      |
|----|--------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. | --- 番線 | ---bansen       | track ---            |
| 2. | --- 方面 | ---hoomen       | the direction of --- |
| 3. | 時間表    | jikanhyoo       | a timetable          |
| 4. | 渋滞     | juutai          | backup, congestion   |
| 5. | 横浜方面   | Yokohama-hoomen | Yokohama-direction   |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *How to find out the right track/platform*

Since there are usually several tracks in a station (at larger stations, there are more than 10 tracks), you need to know from which platform or track your train leaves. Each track has its own number (a platform usually has two tracks), and this is expressed in the following way

numeral + **bansen**

Thus, track number 1, for example, can be expressed as *ichi-bansen*. One way to find out if your train leaves from track #1 is to ask a question like the following

**(your destination) e ikitain desu ga, ichi-bansen desu ka?**

*I want to go to (your destination), is it track #1?*

(i.e., Does my train leave from track #1?)

Another way to find out the right track is to ask something like 'I want to go to (your destination), from which track does my train leave?'

The Japanese expression for 'what track' is *nan-bansen*. Thus, you can use the following expression

**(destination) e ikitain desu ga, nan-bansen desu ka?**

*I want to go to (destination) What track is it?*

The Japanese word for 'platform' is *hoomu*, which was originally borrowed from the second syllable of the English word. If you want to make sure that you are on the right platform, you can use the following expression

**Yokohama e ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?**

*I want to go to Yokohama Is it this platform?*

**Note** *Kono* in *kono hoomu* means 'this' but the word must always occur with other word(s) after it, as in *kono chikaku* 'this vicinity' (Lesson 3). On the other hand, the word *kore*, which also means 'this,' occurs independently, as in *Kore wa nan desu ka?* 'What is this?' (Lesson 1)

### 2. **(Yokohama)-iki** '(train) bound for (Yokohama)'

When you refer to a train bound for a certain station--Yokohama, for example, you can use the following expression

**Yokohama-iki**

*(trains) bound for Yokohama*

## Lesson 12 Taking the right train

You can use this expression when you want to find out if a train is bound for the place you have in mind or when you want to find out the track from which the train bound for a certain place leaves, as in the following examples.

- a. **Kono densha wa Yokohama-iki desu ka?**  
*Is this train bound for Yokohama?*
- b. **Yokohama-iki wa nan-bansen desu ka?**  
*What track is the Yokohama train?*

### 3. *Ikimasu* 'goes' and *tomarimasu* 'stops'

When you want to find out if a train goes to a certain place or if it stops at a certain station, you might ask in English (a) 'Does this train go to . . .?' and (b) 'Does this train stop at . . .?', respectively. The Japanese expressions for these English questions follow:

- a. **Kono densha wa . . . e ikimasu ka?**  
*Does this train go to . . .?*
- b. **Kono densha wa . . . ni tomarimasu ka?**  
*Does this train stop at . . .?*

It should be noted that the particle *ni* 'at' is used after the name of the station at which the train stops.

The following are typical answers to the above two questions:

1. Yes-answers                      **Hai/Ee, ikimasu/tomarimasu.**
2. No-answers                        **Iie, ikimasen/tomarimasen.**

### 4. *The particle to* 'and'

The word *to* is comparable to English 'and' but the usage is a little different from the English equivalent, as illustrated below:

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| <b>A to B</b>      | <b>A and B</b>     |
| <b>A to B to C</b> | <b>A, B, and C</b> |

Note that in English you need 'and' only before the last item you enumerate while in Japanese, *to* is necessary after each item except the last. The following example will illustrate this difference:

**Kono densha wa Nagoya to Kyoto to Osaka ni tomarimasu.**  
*This train stops at Nagoya, Kyoto, and Osaka.*

Also, note that English 'and' can connect verbs as well as nouns, but Japanese *to* can connect nouns only.

## 5. *Densha* (電車) 'trains'

In the nation-wide transportation services, JR (Japanese Railways) plays the central role, and the *Shinkansen* (新幹線), often referred to as the '*bullet train*', is an important part of JR's operation.

The *Shinkansen* covers the approximately 730 miles between **Tokyo** (東京) and **Hakata** (博多) in **Kyushyu** (九州) and connects the major cities of Japan. The *Shinkansen* trains run at 5 to 10 - minute intervals, the normal travelling speed of the fastest train, the '*Hikari*,' being about 200 km per hour.

### 1. Types of trains

The *Shinkansen* has the following classification of trains:

|               |        |                         |
|---------------|--------|-------------------------|
| <b>Hikari</b> | (ひかり): | stops at major stations |
| <b>Kodama</b> | (こたま): | stops at all stations   |

For long distance trips other than on the *Shinkansen*, you will find the following three major categories of JR trains:

|                |      |  |
|----------------|------|--|
| <b>tokkyuu</b> | (特急) | super express or limited express         |
| <b>kyuukoo</b> | (急行) | express train stopping at major stations |
| <b>futsuu</b>  | (普通) | local trains stopping at all stations    |

Note: *Futsuu* (普通) is also called *kakueki* (各駅), an abbreviation of *kakueki teesha* (各駅停車), that stops at every station. *Hikari*, *Kodama*, *tokkyuu* and *kyuukoo* require a supplementary fare. However, the fare is the same all year round (i.e., there is no 'in-season' or 'off-season' fare).

**JR-sen** has the following major train categories:

|                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>kaisoku</b> (快速)          | <i>express train</i> |
| <b>kakueki-teesha</b> (各駅停車) | <i>local train</i>   |

Note: *Kaisoku* does not require a supplementary fare.

### 2. Types of cars and seats

There are two types of cars and seats on JR trains:

|         |                                |                            |
|---------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| a. cars | (i) <b>futsuu-sha</b> (普通車)    | <i>economy class (car)</i> |
|         | (ii) <b>guriin-sha</b> (グリーン車) | <i>first class (car)</i>   |

Note: A supplementary fare is required for first class. *Griin* means *green*. Each first class car has a square green symbol displayed next to its doors.

|          |                             |                         |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| b. seats | (i) <b>jiyuu-seki</b> (自由席) | <i>unreserved seats</i> |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|

Note: *jiyuu* (自由) *freedom, free*  
*seki* (席) *seat*

## Lesson 12 Taking the right train

(ii) **shitee-seki** (指定席)

*reserved seats*

Note A supplementary fare is required for reserved seats.

3. **nobori** (上り) and **kudari** (下り)

*up-train and down-train*

Trains bound for the originating station of the line are called **nobori** (上り) 'up-train,' and those bound for the other end of the line are called **kudari** (下り) 'down-train.' For example, on the Shinkansen, trains bound for Tokyo are **nobori** and those for Kyoto, Osaka, etc. are **kudari**.

### 6. **Doozo** 'Please (have a seat)' (when you want to offer your seat)

Although 'ladies first' is not generally practiced in Japan, it is a courtesy to offer your seat to the elderly or to a mother with a small child. When you want to offer your seat, you can say **Doozo** 'Please.'

Sometimes you may hear a child asking its mother for a seat. Japanese people who happen to be sitting in front of them usually feel obliged to offer a seat. If you feel the same way, go ahead and offer your seat. If you don't, you may choose to ignore it since, as a foreigner, people will generally assume you did not understand what the child said.

If you take a JR train, it will probably have a **shirubaa shiito** (lit., 'silver seat') for senior citizens and the handicapped. Avoid sitting in this seat unless you consider yourself elderly or handicapped.

As a rule, sit down whenever you find a seat. Especially in a crowded train or bus, you will be much safer and more comfortable if you are seated.

### 7. **More informations on trains**

#### For a Ride on the Bullet Train

The shortest trip that you can take to get the feel of the 'bullet train,' reputedly the most comfortable and fastest in the world, is the 43-minute ride to **Odawara**. So, if you have a bit more than two hours to spare and are willing to invest 5,140 yen (2,570 yen one way) you can experience a ride on the bullet train without having to go all the way to **Kyoto** or **Osaka**. The bullet train is known as the Shinkansen. There are two Shinkansen trains: the **Hikari** and the **Kodama**. For the short ride, you take the **Kodama**. Between **Tokyo** and **Odawara**, it stops only at **Shin-Yokohama**, up to which it runs at a leisurely pace. From there to **Odawara**, it goes faster, although not quite at maximum speed.

#### Stations

The **Hikari** is the faster train because it makes fewer stops. The longest **Hikari** distance is the 1,176.5 kilometers from **Tokyo** to **Hakata** in **Kyushu**. The fastest **Hikari** service between these points takes 6 hours and 56 minutes, with six stops in between--**Nagoya**, **Kyoto**, **Shin Osaka**, **Okayama**, **Hiroshima** and **Kokura**. The slowest service takes 7 hours 48 minutes with additional stops beyond **Okayama**. The **Hikari** covers the distance between **Tokyo** and **Kyoto** (513.6 kilometers) in 2 hours and 53 minutes, **Tokyo-Shin Osaka** in 3 hours 10 minutes, and **Tokyo-Hiroshima** (fastest service) in 5 hours 8 minutes.

The **Kodama** takes one hour longer to get to **Kyoto**. There are no **Kodama** trains which go through from **Tokyo** to **Hakata**. The **Kodama** service is essentially **Tokyo** to **Shin Osaka** and **Shin Osaka** to **Hakata**.

### Frequency

The bullet train service is very frequent. Starting at 6 a.m., about four **Hikari** trains and three or four **Kodama** trains leave **Tokyo** every hour. The day's last **Hikari** for **Hakata** leaves **Tokyo** at 5 p.m., arriving at 11:56 p.m. The last **Hikari** for **Shin Osaka** (one stop beyond **Kyoto**) leaves at 8:24 p.m. The last **Kodama** for **Shin Osaka** leaves at 7:28 p.m. Both the **Hikari** and **Kodama** have reserved seats which are sold seven days in advance at the Green Window installed at major JR stations. At **Tokyo** station they are sold at the south end of the **Yaesu** side.

### Other Trains

More leisurely rail trips from **Tokyo** to **Osaka** and points beyond can be taken on the **Tokaido** limited express (**tokkyuu**) trains. Since the destination of most of the **Tokaido** limited express trains is **Kyushu**, they are not scheduled for convenient arrival times in **Osaka**. For going to **Hiroshima**, the limited express is best.

Limited expresses leave from **Tokyo** station between 4:30 a.m. and 7:25 p.m. at irregular intervals. The travel time to **Osaka** is about 7 hours 30 minutes, but some limited expresses going west do not stop at **Osaka**. The travel time to **Hiroshima** is about 12 hours; to **Hakata** in **Kyushu**, about 16 hours 30 minutes; and to **Nagasaki**, about 19 hours 30 minutes.

### Sleepers

Sleepers are available at extra charge on the limited expresses. There are two types of sleepers, 'A' and 'B.' The A sleepers are either one-bed compartments or just two berths, the upper and the lower.

The B sleepers are either the two-berth type or three berths--the upper, middle, and lower. The berths in the A sleepers are fairly roomy. The upper berth is 30 inches wide and 74 inches long and the lower berth is 37 by 74 inches. The berths of the B sleepers are just as long but only 20.5 inches wide. The cost of the berth is in addition to the regular limited express fares.

Reserved seat, express, limited express, and sleeper tickets must be obtained at the Green Window (**Midori no madoguchi**).



---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

- ウイリアムス: すみません。  
横浜へ行きたいんですか、このホームですか。  
日本人: 横浜ですか。横浜は横須賀線ですから...  
ええと..... むこうの方ですよ。  
ウイリアムス: むこう?  
日本人: ええ、一番線と二番線です。  
ウイリアムス: 一番線と?  
日本人: ええ、一番線と二番線です。  
ウイリアムス: そうですか。どうもありがとうございます。

**Situation 2**

- ワトソン: すみません。この電車は横須賀へ行きますか。  
日本人: いいえ、行きませんよ。横須賀行はあっちです。  
ワトソン: 何番線ですか。  
日本人: 三番線ですよ。  
ワトソン: どうもありがとうございます。

**Situation 3**

- ラノセル: すみません。これは桜木町行ですか。  
日本人: ええ、そうです。  
ラノセル: 学芸大学に止まりますか。  
日本人: いいえ、これは急行ですから、止まりませんよ。  
次の各駅が止まりますよ。  
ラノセル: そうですか。どうも。

Lesson 13

GETTING OFF  
AT THE RIGHT STOP

おります!

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if the next stop is your destination
- find out how many more stops there are before your destination
- ask a Japanese person to let you know when the train or bus arrives at your destination
- say 'Let me out!' on a crowded train or bus when you are getting off

---



---

**DIALOGS**

**KAIWA**

---



---

**Situation 1**

*Mrs. Brown is on a crowded subway to Akasakamitsuke to meet her husband at the American Center. Although she knows that the conductor of the subway has announced the next stop, she didn't understand the announcement.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Buraun:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen. Koko wa Akasakamitsuke desu ka?</b>     | <i>Excuse me. Is this (station) Akasakamitsuke?</i> |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>lie, Akasakamitsuke wa tsugi no tsugi desu yo.</b> | <i>No, Akasakamitsuke is the one after next.</i>    |
| <b>Buraun:</b>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo.</b>                            | <i>Oh. Thanks.</i>                                  |
|                  | . . .   | . . .   |
| <b>Buraun:</b>   | <b>Orimasu!</b>                                       | <i>Let me out, please!</i>                          |

**Situation 2**

*Ms. Lambert is at a bus stop, on her way to see a friend who lives near the Aoyama 3-chome bus stop (a stop along the bus line to Shibuya).*

|                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| <b>Ranbaato:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Shibuya-iki no basu-tee wa koko desu ka?</b>                              | <i>Excuse me. Is this the bus stop for Shibuya?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>lie, kono chotto saki desu.</b>  | <i>No, it's a little further ahead.</i>  |
| <b>Ranbaato:</b> | <b>Doomo.</b>   | <i>Thanks.</i>   |
|                  | . . .   | . . .  |
| <b>Ranbaato:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Aoyama san-chome e ikitain desu ga, tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me. I'd like to go to Aoyama 3-chome, (but) would you tell me when we get there?</i> |
| <b>Untenshu:</b> | <b>Ee, ii desu yo.</b>  | <i>Sure.</i>   |
|                  | . . .   | . . .  |
| <b>Untenshu:</b> | <b>Okyaku-san, Aoyama san-chome desu yo.</b>  | <i>Miss! (lit., Guest/Passenger) This is Aoyama 3-chome.</i>                                   |
| <b>Ranbaato:</b> | <b>Doomo arigatoo gozaimasu.</b>  | <i>Thank you very much.</i>  |
| <b>Untenshu:</b> | <b>lie.</b>   | <i>You're welcome</i>  |

Situation 3

Mr. Turner is on a platform in Harajuku Station and wants to go to Hibiya by subway.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Taanaa:</b> Sumimasen.<br/>Hibiya e ikitain desu ga,<br/>ikutsu-me desu ka?</p>           | <p><i>Excuse me. I want to go to Hibiya,<br/>(but) how many stops are there<br/>to Hibiya?</i></p> |
| <p><b>Nihonjin:</b> Eeto . . . Koko kara itsutsu-me ka<br/>muttsu-me desu.</p>                  | <p><i>Let me see . . . Hibiya is the fifth or<br/>sixth one from here.</i></p>                     |
| <p><b>Taanaa:</b> Aa, soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">. . .</p> | <p><i>I see. Thank you.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">. . .</p>                           |
| <p><i>(later on the train)</i></p>  |  |
| <p><b>Taanaa:</b> Sumimasen.<br/>Hibiya wa tsugi desu ka?</p>                                   | <p><i>Excuse me.<br/>Is Hibiya next?</i></p>   |
| <p><b>Nihonjin:</b> Ee, soo desu.</p>   | <p><i>Yes, it is.</i></p>  |
| <p><b>Taanaa:</b> Doomo.</p>  | <p><i>Thanks.</i></p>  |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                                      |  |                   |
|--------------------------------------|--|-------------------|
| <b>tsugi no tsugi</b>                | the one after next                           | つきのつき             |
| <b>orimasu</b>                       | get off, get down                            | おります              |
| <b>basu-tee</b>                      | bus stop                                     | バスでい              |
| <b>tsuitara</b>                      | when (we) arrive<br>(TARA form of tsukimasu) | ついたら              |
| <b>oshiete kudasai-<br/>masen ka</b> | please tell me                               | おしえてください<br>ませんか  |
| <b>oshiete</b>                       | tell, teach<br>(TE form of oshiemasu)        | おしえて              |
| <b>okyaku-san</b>                    | guest, passenger, customer                   | おきゃくさん            |
| <b>doomo arigatoo<br/>gozaimasu</b>  | thank you very much                          | どうもありがとう<br>ございます |
| <b>ikutsu-me</b>                     | which one<br>(in a numbered series)          | いくつめ              |
| <b>itsutsu-me</b>                    | fifth  | いつつめ              |
| <b>ka</b>                            | or   | か                 |
| <b>muttsu-me</b>                     | sixth  | むつつめ              |

Notes

|                    |         |       |
|--------------------|---------|-------|
| <b>yottsu-me</b>   | fourth  | よつつめ  |
| <b>nanatsu-me</b>  | seventh | ななつめ  |
| <b>yattsu-me</b>   | eighth  | やつつめ  |
| <b>sugimashita</b> | passed  | すきました |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Substitution Drill**

Akasakamitsuke wa koko desu ka?

tsugi  
 tsugi no tsugi  
 mitsu-me  
 mitsu-me no eki

**B. Substitution Drill**

Hibiya wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

koko kara mitsu-me  
 tsugi  
 Akasakamitsuke  
 koko  
 tsugi no tsugi

**C. Combination Drill**

Example:

futatsu-me, mitsu-me → futatsu-me desu ka, mitsu-me desu ka?

tsugi, tsugi no tsugi  
 chikatetsu, JR-sen  
 basu, takushii  
 mitsu-me, yottsu-me

**D. Substitution Drill**

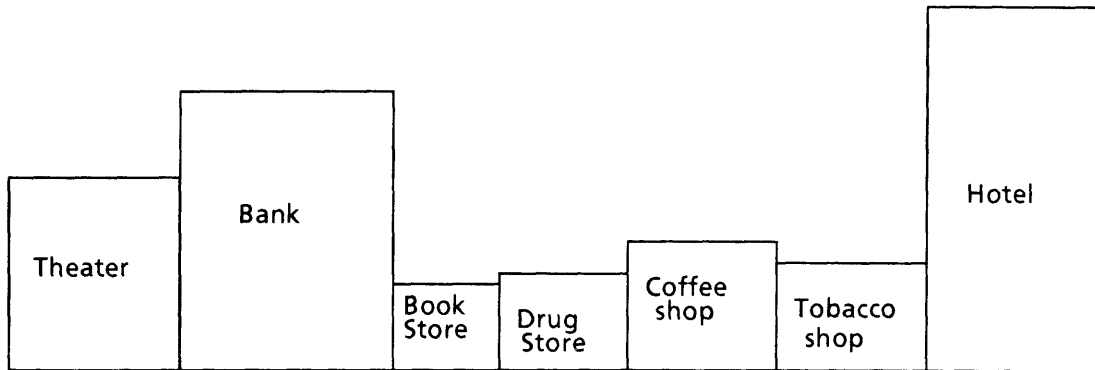
Shibuya ni tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?

|           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| Osaka     | Ginza yon-chome |
| Ueno      | Shinbashi       |
| Yotsuya   | Asakusa         |
| Toranomon | Akasakamitsuke  |

**E. Comprehension Drill**

Directions:

Listen to the instructor's statement and circle true or false, as appropriate. If the statement is false, write the correct answer on the right.



教師用スクリプト

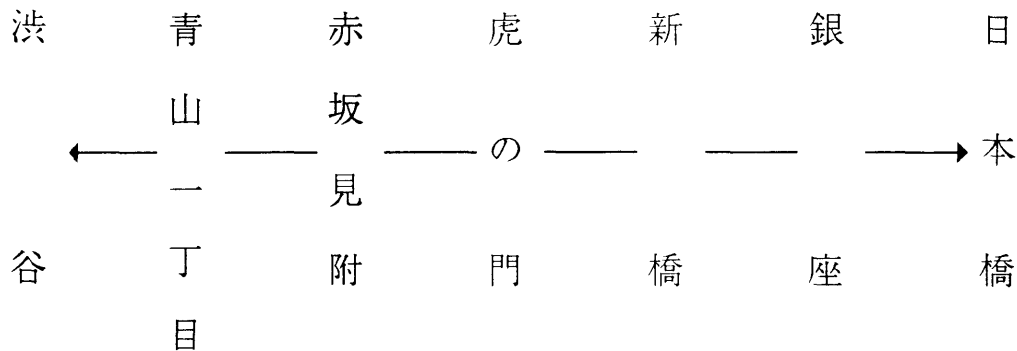
- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 銀行は劇場から三つ目です。   | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 2. 喫茶店はホテルから三つ目です。 | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 3. 菓屋はホテルから五つ目です。  | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 4. 本屋は劇場から四つ目です。   | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 5. 喫茶店はホテルから二つ目です。 | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 6. 銀行は劇場から二つ目です。   | True ( ) False ( ) |
| 7. 本屋はホテルから四つ目です。  | True ( ) False ( ) |

## F. Comprehension Drill

Directions:

The student chooses a station name from the list below. S/he then points to a station on the chart and asks the instructor **Koko wa** (the station s/he has selected) **desu ka?** If the answer is 'No,' the instructor says how many stations there are to that station counting from **Shibuya**. The student writes down the station name in Romaji next to the matching one in Kanji. (Note: With a larger class it may be clearer if the instructor copies the chart on the blackboard and students go up to the blackboard to point at and write down station names.)

### Shibuya



### List of Station Names

1. Aoyama 1-chome
2. Shinbashi
3. Akasakamitsuke
4. Nihonbashi
5. Toranomom
6. Ginza

## G. Interpreting Drill

Directions:

The student asks the instructor how many stops a train makes to get from Shibuya station to a station that s/he chooses, referring to the chart above. The instructor answers and the student interprets the answer into English.

Example:

- Student:* Akasakamitsuke wa ikutsu-me desu ka?  
*Instructor:* (counting from Shibuya station)  
 Shibuya kara futatsu-me desu.  
*Student:* The second station.



## Lesson 13 Getting off at the right stop

### H. Question and Answer Exercise

Directions:

Student A chooses a station from the chart in Drill F, above, and asks Student B how many stops a train makes from Shibuya. Student B gives an answer. Student A makes sure that s/he has understood.

Example:

*Student A:* Akasakamitsuke wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

*Student B:* Futatsu-me desu.

*Student A:* Futatsu-me desu ne?

*Student B:* Ee, soo desu.

### I. Response Exercise

Directions:

The student asks what station this is. The instructor replies, referring to the chart in Drill F. The student asks how many stops there are to get to a station the student chooses. The instructor replies and the student expresses his or her thanks.

Example:

*Student:* Sumimasen, koko wa doko desu ka?

*Instructor:* Shibuya desu.

*Student:* Toranomom wa ikutsu-me desu ka?

*Instructor:* Koko kara mittsu-me desu.

*Student:* Dooomoo arigatoo gozaimasu.

*Instructor:* Iie.

### J. Production and Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

Directions:

The student asks the instructor a question, following the directions below. The instructor answers the student's question, whereupon the student chooses the correct statement below. The answer may include unfamiliar expressions. The student should try to guess what was said by picking up the key words.

1. You are on a street. Ask where the subway station is.

The instructor said

(        ) the subway station is next to the JR station.

(        ) there is no subway station near here.

2. You are at a ticket counter. Ask for four tickets to Yokosuka, then ask how much the fare is.

The instructor could not hear

- (        ) how many tickets you need.  
(        ) where you want to go.

3. You are on a platform. You want to go to Takashima. Ask from what platform or track your train leaves.

The instructor said

- (        ) there is no train that goes to Takashima.  
(        ) to take a train at platform #2.

4. You are on a train. Ask if the next station is Yokohama.

The instructor said

- (        ) Yokohama is the fifth stop.  
(        ) it takes about 15 minutes to get to Yokohama.

5. You are on a subway. Ask to be told when you arrive at Toranomom.

The instructor said

- (        ) s/he would let you know.  
(        ) s/he could not tell you.

6. You are on a subway. Ask to be told when you arrive at Otemachi.

The instructor said

- (        ) s/he would let you know.  
(        ) s/he could not tell you.

教師用スクリプト

1. この近くには、ありませんよ。JR線の駅なら、ありますか  
次の信号を右に曲かったところですよ。
2. え？ 横須賀まで 二枚ですか。
3. 「高島行き」というのはありませんか、二番線にくるのに乗れば、高島へ  
行きますよ。
4. いいえ、横浜はまたまたです。あと十五分くらいかかりますよ。
5. 私はもっと手前でおりますから、ちょっと
6. いいですよ。私も大手町でおりますから

---



---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---



---

- |         |                               |                          |
|---------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 精算所  | seesanjo                      | fare adjustment office   |
| 2. 連絡口  | renrakuguchi                  | connection to . . .      |
| 3. のりば  | noriba                        | (bus) stop, (taxi) stand |
| 4. 東京行  | Tokyo-iki<br>or<br>Tokyo-yuki | Tokyo-bound              |
| 5. 新宿行  | Shinjuku-iki                  | Shinjuku-bound           |
| 6. 東京方面 | Tokyo-hoomen                  | Tokyo-direction          |
| 7. 銀座方面 | Ginza-hoomen                  | Ginza-direction          |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *tsugi* 'next'

In Lesson 8, you learned the word *tsugi* 'next' as in *tsugi no shingoo* 'the next traffic light.' The word can also be used when you want to make sure that the next stop or station is the one you have in mind. What do you think you should say when you want to ask something like 'Is the next station Ginza?' If you thought of the following sentence, you already know a lot about the word *tsugi*:

**Tsugi no eki wa Ginza desu ka?**

If you are on a train and want to ask the same question, you can simply say the following:

**Tsugi wa Ginza desu ka?**

The reason *no eki* is dropped in the above sentence is that it is clear to the listener from the context that *tsugi* refers to *eki*. In fact, the above sentence is the one most Japanese people would use in this situation since it is shorter and easier to use.

It may turn out that the answer to the above question is something like 'the one after next.' In such a case, the Japanese say:

**Tsugi no tsugi desu.** *(It's) the one after next.*

### 2. *Ordinal numbers*

In Lesson 8, you also learned expressions like the following:

|                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>futatsu-me no shingoo</b> | <i>the second traffic light</i> |
| <b>mittsu-me no kado</b>     | <i>the third corner</i>         |

Ordinal expressions like *futatsu-me* 'the second' and *mittsu-me* 'the third' can also be used when you talk about the order of the stations on a train line. Look at the following:

**Ginza wa futatsu-me (no eki) desu.** *Ginza is the second station.*

**Ueno wa mittsu-me (no eki) desu.** *Ueno is the third station.*

As in *Tsugi wa Ginza desu ka?*, it is not necessary to say *no eki* after the ordinal numbers, i.e., *futatsu-me* and *mittsu-me*, since the context clarifies what you are talking about.

### 3. Questions using ordinal numbers

In some situations, you may have to find out how many stations there are between the station at which you boarded the train and your destination, or how many stations there are before your destination. In such situations, you can use the following expression:

**(station name) wa ikutsu-me desu ka?**

English does not have a comparable expression for *ikutsu-me*, although sometimes you may see something like 'the how-many-eth.' *Ikutsu* means 'how many' and, as we have seen, *-me* indicates the preceding word is an ordinal number. Thus, the above sentence can be translated as:

*How many more stations before (station name)(from here)?*

The answer to the above question will include an ordinal expression like *mittsu-me*, *yottsu-me*, etc. The following example will show how this question can be answered:

**A: Yokohama wa ikutsu-me desu ka?**

**B: Yottsu-me desu yo.**

When you have already passed your destination, the Japanese will say something like this:

**(your destination) wa moo sugimashita yo.**

*We've already passed (your destination).*

When the person doesn't know the answer him/herself, s/he will say something like the following:

**Saa, wata(ku)shi mo shirimasen.**      *I don't know, either.*

### 4. Useful expressions for getting off a train or bus

In some cases when you are on a bus or train, you may want to ask a Japanese person to let you know when you arrive at your destination. In such cases, you may find the following expression useful:

**(your destination) ni tsuitara oshiete kudasaimasen ka?**

*Won't you please tell me when we've arrived at (destination)?*

If you are a commuter it is a good idea to become familiar with the Kanji for the name of the stop right before your destination, so that you know when to get ready to get off.

Since commuter trains and buses are incredibly crowded at rush hours, it may happen that because of the crowd you can't get off at your stop. To avoid this, you need to say something in order to get people out of your way. In such cases, you can use the following expression:

**Orimasu!**

*Let me out!(lit., I'm getting off.)*

## 5. *basu* (バス) 'bus'

Japanese buses are equipped with a tape of the pre-recorded names of their stops which is set to announce, at the appropriate time, the name of the next stop.

In most cases, you pay as you enter a bus. It is advisable that you have the exact change, although there is a money exchange machine which exchanges a hundred yen coin for ten yen coins (you can't use a bill). The fares are usually in units of 100 yen and 10 yen. If you don't know the fare, you can ask the driver by saying:

**(your destination) made ikura desu ka?**

Kaisuu-ken (回数券) 'coupon tickets' and teeki-ken (定期券) 'season pass' are also available, but these can't be bought on a bus. You have to go to a ticket window at the main bus terminal. There is no free ticket transfer system.

---

---

会話

---

---

Situation 1

ブラウン: すみません。ここは赤坂見附ですか。  
日本人: いいえ、赤坂見附は次の次ですよ。  
ブラウン: そうですか。どうも ..  
..  
ブラウン: おります!

Situation 2

ランハート: すみません。渋谷行のバス停はここですか。  
日本人: いいえ、このちょっと先です。  
ランハート: どうも.....  
..  
ランハート: すみません。青山三丁目へ行きたいんですか、着いたら  
教えてくださいますか。  
運転手: ええ、いいですよ。  
..  
運転手: お客さん、青山三丁目ですよ。  
ランハート: どうもありがとうございます。  
運転手: いいえ。

Situation 3

ターナー: すみません。  
日比谷へ行きたいんですか、いくつ目ですか。  
日本人: ええと..... ここから五つ目か六つ目です。  
ターナー: ああ、そうですか。どうもありがとう。  
..  
ターナー: すみません。日比谷は次ですか。  
日本人: ええ、そうです。  
ターナー: どうも。

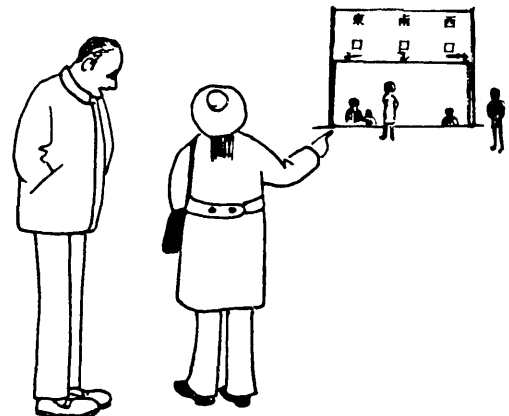
Lesson 14

FINDING OUT THE RIGHT EXIT  
AND  
CHANGING TRAINS AND BUSES

新幹線は八重洲口です。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find the right exit to leave a station
- find the stop or station at which to change trains or buses





---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Harman is going shopping at the Isetan department store . She gets off the train at Shinjuku station and after going down the stairway to the concourse, tries to find the right exit.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <i>Haaman:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Isetan e ikitain desu ga,<br/>dono deguchi desu ka?</b>                 | <i>Excuse me.<br/>I want to go to Isetan. Which<br/>exit is it?</i>         |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Isetan desu ka? Minamiguchi<br/>ga chikai desu yo.</b>                                 | <i>Isetan?<br/>The south exit is closer.</i>                                |
| <i>Haaman:</i>   | <b>Minamiguchi wa dotchi desu ka?</b>   | <i>Which way is the south exit?</i>   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Koko o massugu itte, migi no<br/>hoo desu.</b>   | <i>Go straight and it's on your right<br/>side.</i>                         |
| <i>Haaman:</i>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>  |
|                  | . . .   | . . .   |
| <i>Haaman:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Isetan wa koko<br/>kara migi no hoo desu ka,<br/>hidari no hoo desu ka?</b> | <i>Pardon me.<br/>From here, is Isetan on the right or<br/>on the left?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Koko o dete, hidari no hoo<br/>desu.</b>   | <i>Leaving from here, it's on the left.</i>                                 |
| <i>Haaman:</i>   | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>Thank you.</i>   |

## Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

### Situation 2

*Mr. Sullivan is going to Mitsukoshi department store in Yokohama. At an exit, he asks a Japanese person if it is the west exit.*

- |                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Sariban:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen. Koko wa nishiguchi desu ka?</b>  | <i>Excuse me. Is this the west exit?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>lie, koko wa higashiguchi desu yo.</b>  | <i>No, it's the east exit.</i>  |
| <b>Sariban:</b>  | <b>Soo desu ka.</b>  | <i>I see.</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Doko e ikitain desu ka?</b>   | <i>Where do you want to go?</i>   |
| <b>Sariban:</b>  | <b>Mitsukoshi e ikitain desu ga . . .</b>  | <i>I want to go to Mitsukoshi . . .</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Jaa, ano kaidan o orite, chikadoo o massugu migi no hoo e ikuto Mitsukoshi no iriguchi ga arimasu yo.</b> | <i>Well then, go down that stairway and if you go right, along the underground passageway, there is an entrance to Mitsukoshi</i> |
| <b>Sariban:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen. Wakarimasen.</b>   | <i>I'm sorry I don't understand</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Eeto . . . Kaidan o orite, chikadoo o migi desu.</b>  | <i>Let me see Go down the stairway, go right, along the underground passageway</i>  |
| <b>Sariban:</b>  | <b>Aa, wakarimasu. Dooomoo arigatoo gozaimashita.</b>  | <i>Oh, I see Thank you very much.</i>   |

### Situation 3

*Mr. Walker is going to Shinjuku Gyoen to see the sights. He is at Toranomom subway station on the Ginza line and wants to confirm that the Ginza line goes to Shinjuku.*

- |                |  |  |
|----------------|--|--|
| <b>Uookaa:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Shinjuku wa kono sen de ii desu ne?</b>  | <i>Excuse me. This line goes to Shinjuku, right?</i>   |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>  | <b>Kono sen wa Shinjuku e ikimasen yo. Koko kara Akasakamitsuke e itte, Marunouchi-sen ni norikaete kudasai.</b> | <i>This line doesn't go to Shinjuku. Go from here to Akasakamitsuke, then transfer to the Marunouchi line.</i> |
| <b>Uookaa:</b> | <b>Akasakamitsuke e itte . . .</b>   | <i>Go to Akasakamitsuke . . .</i>  |
| <b>Ekiin:</b>  | <b>Ee, soko de Marunouchi-sen ni norikaete kudasai.</b>  | <i>Yes, there transfer to the Marunouchi line</i>  |
| <b>Uookaa:</b> | <b>Wakarimashita. Dooomoo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>I understand. Thank you</i>   |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                       |  |         |
|-----------------------|--|---------|
| <b>dono</b>           | which?   | どの      |
| <b>deguchi</b>        | exit   | でぐち     |
| <b>minamiguchi</b>    | south gate   | みなみぐち   |
| <b>minami</b>         | south  | みなみ     |
| <b>...guchi</b>       | gate, door, exit<br>(phonetic change of kuchi 'mouth')                     | .....ぐち |
| <b>dotchi</b>         | which way?   | どっち     |
| <b>dete</b>           | leave, go out (TE form of <i>demasu</i> )                                  | でて      |
| <b>nishi</b>          | west   | にし      |
| <b>higashi</b>        | east   | ひがし     |
| <b>orite</b>          | go down (TE form of <i>orimasu</i> )                                       | おりて     |
| <b>chikadoo</b>       | underground passage  | ちかどう    |
| <b>iriguchi</b>       | entrance   | いりぐち    |
| <b>de</b>             | at   | で       |
| <b>norikaete</b>      | change, transfer (trains, buses, etc.)<br>(TE form of <i>norikaemasu</i> ) | のりかえて   |
| <b>sen</b>            | line   | せん      |
| <b>Marunouchi-sen</b> | Marunouchi line  | まるのうちせん |

Notes

|                   |                            |       |
|-------------------|----------------------------|-------|
| <b>kita</b>       | north                      | きた    |
| <b>noborimasu</b> | climb, go up               | のぼります |
| <b>norikae</b>    | a change (of trains, etc.) | のりかえ  |

---

---

**PRACTICE**

---

---

**RENSHUU**

**A. Substitution Drill**

Koko wa minamiguchi desu ka?

kitaguchi  
higashiguchi  
nishiguchi  
minamiguchi

**B. Substitution Drill**

Minamiguchi wa dotchi desu ka?

Kitaguchi  
doko  
Higashiguchi  
dotchi no hoo  
Iriguchi  
migi no hoo

**C. Substitution Drill**

Isetan e ikitain desu ga, deguchi wa dotchi desu ka?

Kokuritsu Gekijoo  
deguchi wa doko  
Kabukiza  
dono deguchi  
Mitsukoshi  
deguchi wa dotchi

## Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

### D. Direction Drill

Directions:

The instructor gives a direction. The student chooses the opposite direction.

Example:

*Instructor:*    **higashi**  
*Student:*        (checks nishi below.)

1.    (        ) **nishi**  
      (        ) **kita**
2.    (        ) **higashi**  
      (        ) **minami**
3.    (        ) **nishi**  
      (        ) **kita**
4.    (        ) **higashi**  
      (        ) **minami**

### E. Comprehension Drill

Choose the appropriate direction in accordance with the following statement.

1.    (        ) **higashi**        You are facing north.  
      (        ) **nishi**            On your right is . . ?
2.    (        ) **higashi**        You are facing north.  
      (        ) **nishi**            On your left is . . . ?
3.    (        ) **minami**        You are facing east.  
      (        ) **kita**            On your right is . . . ?
4.    (        ) **minami**        You are facing west.  
      (        ) **kita**            On your right is . . . ?

**F. Question and Answer Exercise**

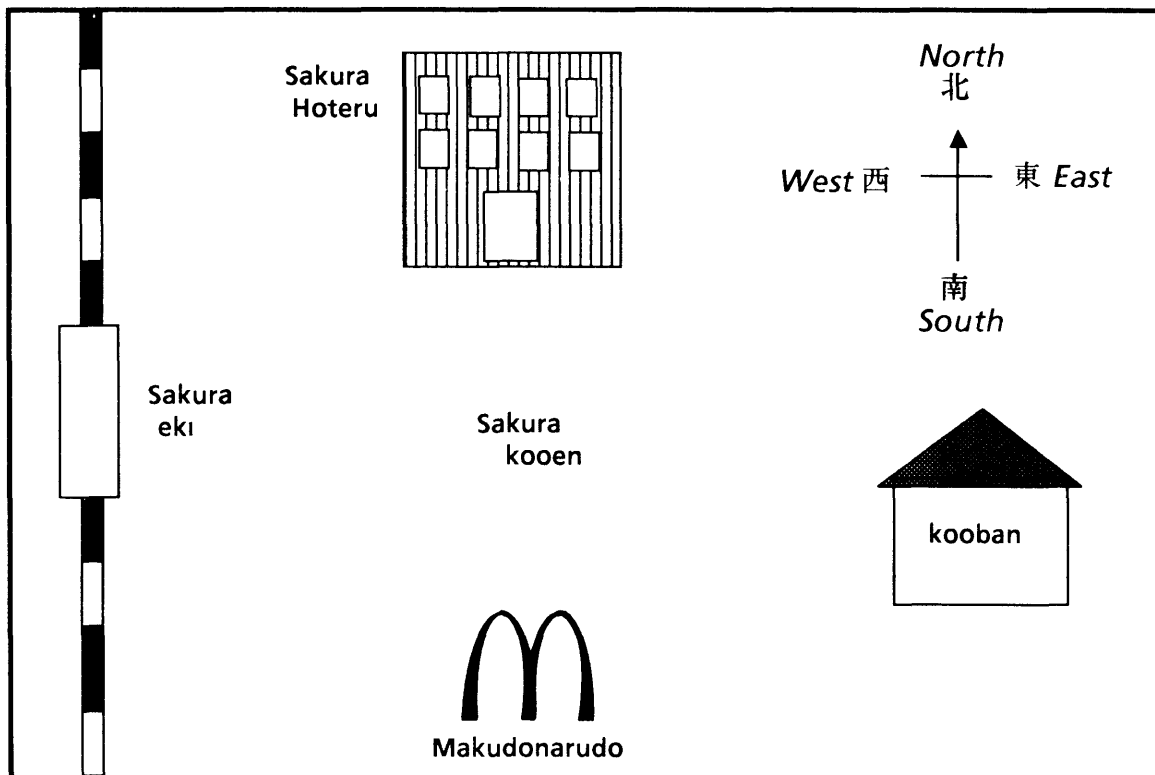
Directions

Referring to the diagram below, complete the sentences using the correct directional words

Example

**Sakura-eki wa Sakura kooen no nishi ni arimasu.**

1. Sakura Hoteru wa Sakura Kooen no \_\_\_\_\_ ni arimasu
2. Kooban wa Sakura Kooen no \_\_\_\_\_ ni arimasu
3. Makudonarudo wa Sakura Kooen no \_\_\_\_\_ ni arimasu
4. Sakura Kooen wa Sakura Hoteru no \_\_\_\_\_ ni arimasu
5. Sakura Kooen wa Sakura-eki no \_\_\_\_\_ ni arimasu

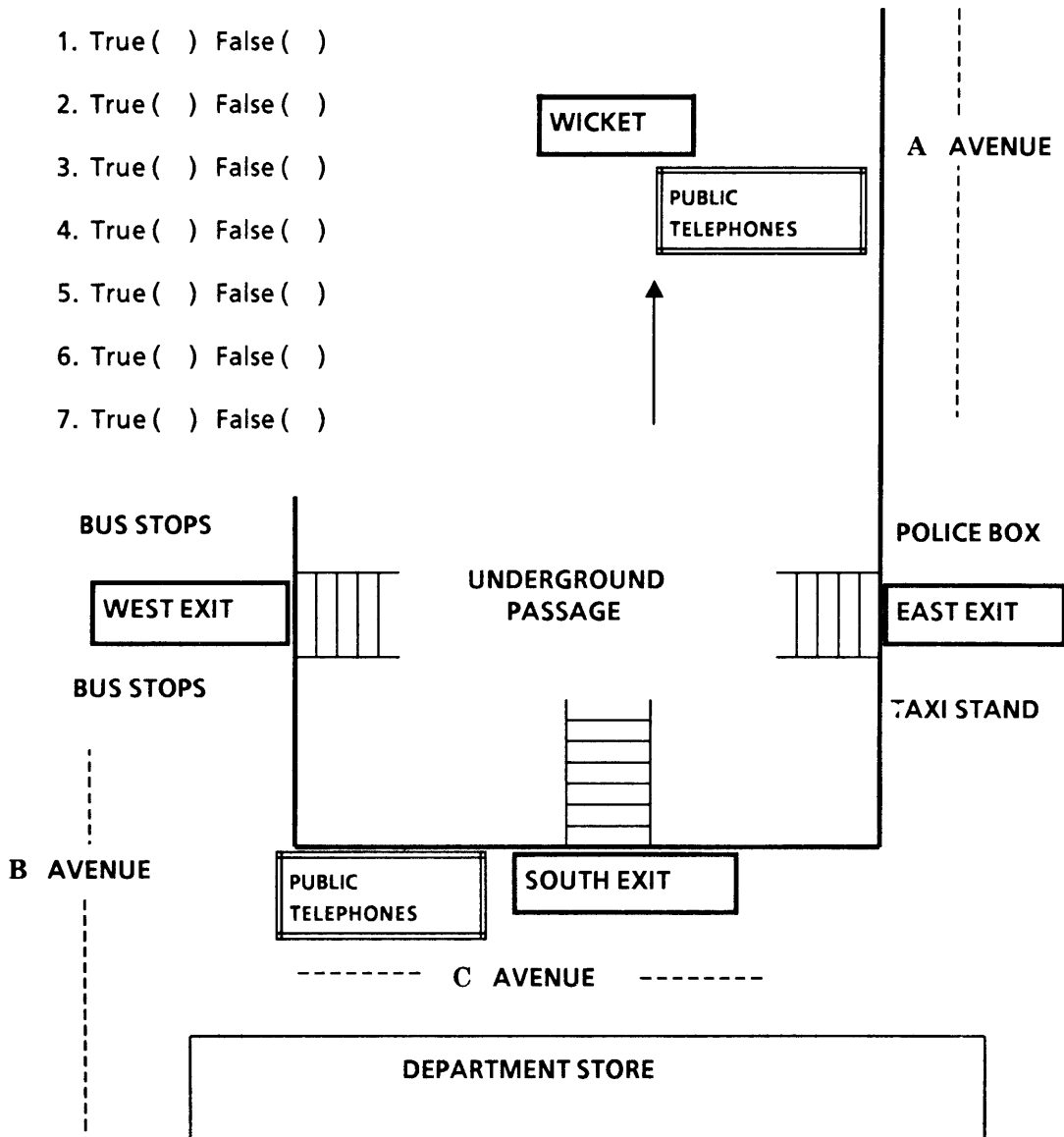


# Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

## G. Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Listen to the instructor's statement and, referring to the sketch below, check True or False.

1. True ( ) False ( )
2. True ( ) False ( )
3. True ( ) False ( )
4. True ( ) False ( )
5. True ( ) False ( )
6. True ( ) False ( )
7. True ( ) False ( )



教師用スクリプト

1. バスの乗り場は東口にあります。
2. 交番は西口です。
3. デパートは南口の前です。
4. 西口はA通りにあります。
5. 公衆電話は南口と改札口のそばにあります。
6. バスの乗り場はB通りにあります。
7. タクシー乗り場は西口です。

## H. Comprehension Exercise

Choose the item that matches the directions the instructor gives.

1. (     ) You go up the stairs.  
   (     ) You go down the stairs.
2. (     ) You go up the stairs.  
   (     ) You go down the stairs.
3. (     ) You go through the underground passageway.  
   (     ) You go up the stairs.  
   (     ) The place is on your right.
4. (     ) You transfer to Kokuden at Shinjuku.  
   (     ) You transfer to the subway at Shinbashi.  
   (     ) You transfer to Kokuden at Shinbashi.
5. (     ) You transfer to the Ginza Line at the Ginza.  
   (     ) You transfer to the Ginza Line at Akasakamitsuke.
6. (     ) You transfer to the Aoyama bus at Shinbashi.  
   (     ) You transfer to the Aoyama bus at Shibuya.  
   (     ) You transfer to the Shinbashi bus at Aoyama.

教師用スクリプト

1. この階段をおりて、まっすぐ行ったところにあります。
2. その階段をおりて、すぐ右の方にあります。
3. 地下道をまっすぐ行って階段をおりて、ちょっと行くと左にあります。
4. 新橋駅で国電に乗り換えて下さい。
5. 赤坂見附まで行って、銀座線に乗り換えて下さい。
6. 渋谷で青山行きのバスに乗り換えて下さい。



## Lesson 14 Finding the right exit and changing trains and buses

### I. Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Direction:

You are at Toranomom subway station on the Ginza line. Referring to the list of places you want to go, find out from the instructor (a station employee) how to get to your destination and fill in the appropriate columns below.

Example.

*Student* Meiji Jinguu e ikitain desu ga, kono sen de ii desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Kasumigaseki de Chiyoda-sen ni norikaete kudasai.  
 Kasumigaseki kara yotts-u-me desu.

Places you want to go

- |          |             |              |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. Ginza | 2. Asakusa  | 3. Tokyo-eki |
| 4. Ueno  | 5. Shinjuku | 6. Ikebukuro |

|   | No transfer | Need transfer | If transfer is necessary |                |
|---|-------------|---------------|--------------------------|----------------|
|   |             |               | At what station?         | To which line? |
| 1 |             |               |                          |                |
| 2 |             |               |                          |                |
| 3 |             |               |                          |                |
| 4 |             |               |                          |                |
| 5 |             |               |                          |                |
| 6 |             |               |                          |                |

教師用スクリプト

- 1 ええ、いいですよ。ここから四つ目です。
- 2 この線で銀座まで行って、そこで銀座線の浅草行に乗り換えて下さい。
- 3 この線で銀座まで行って、丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。
- 4 上野ですか。この線でいいですよ。
- 5 これで霞が関まで行って、そこで丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。
- 6 この線で日比谷まで行って、そこで有楽町線に乗り換えて下さい。

| READING |     | KANJI        |                     |
|---------|-----|--------------|---------------------|
| 1.      | 東口  | higashiguchi | east exit/entrance  |
| 2.      | 西口  | nishiguchi   | west exit/entrance  |
| 3.      | 南口  | minamiguchi  | south exit/entrance |
| 4.      | 北口  | kitaguchi    | north exit/entrance |
| 5.      | 出口  | deguchi      | exit                |
| 6.      | 入口  | iriguchi     | entrance            |
| 7.      | 地下道 | chikadoo     | underground passage |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *deguchi* (出口) 'exit'

Larger stations usually have more than one *deguchi* (出口) 'exit'. Therefore, you will have to know which exit to take to go to your destination. *Deguchi* (出口) 'exit' and *iriguchi* (入口) 'entrance' come in pairs and are located side by side. 入 in *iriguchi* (入口) and 出 in *deguchi* (出口) mean 'enter' and 'go out,' respectively; -guchi (口) means 'an opening.'

The following names are among the most common for station entrances/exits:

|              |      |                     |
|--------------|------|---------------------|
| higashiguchi | (東口) | east exit/entrance  |
| nishiguchi   | (西口) | west exit/entrance  |
| kitaguchi    | (北口) | north exit/entrance |
| minamiguchi  | (南口) | south exit/entrance |

When you want to find the right exit, you can use the following expression:

(Your destination) **e ikitain desu ga, deguchi wa doko desu ka?**  
*I want to go to (your destination) Which exit should I use?*

### 2. *Kaidan* (階段) 'stairway'

In giving directions to your exit, Japanese may say something like 'Go down/up the stairs . . .' The Japanese word for 'stairway' is *kaidan* (階段).

The Japanese language has specific verbs for 'go up (the stairs)' and 'go down (the stairs)'. Look at the following:

- a. **Kaidan o noborimasu/agarimasu.**      *Go up the stairs*
- b. **Kaidan o orimasu.**                      *Go down the stairs*

As mentioned in Lesson 9, Japanese verbs have different forms depending on how they are used in a sentence. Therefore you may hear different forms than *noborimasu* and *orimasu*. However, if you can pick up the key word *kaidan* and locate the staircase, then you can pretty well guess whether to go up or down. If there are two *kaidan* at a place where you have a choice of going up or going down, then ask directions there again.

3. **norikae** (乗り換え) 'transfer'

In some cases, you may have to change trains or buses or change from a train to a bus or vice versa. The Japanese word for 'a transfer (point)' is **norikae** (乗り換え) and 'to transfer' is **norikaemasu**. Look at the following:

**Tokyo-iki ni norikaemasu**      *transfer to a Tokyo-bound train/bus*

**Yokohama de norikaemasu**      *transfer in Yokohama*

**Yokohama de Tokyo-iki ni  
norikaemasu**      *transfer to a Tokyo-bound train/bus  
in Yokohama*

Note: When you change the means of transportation, Japanese will specify that change as in the following:

**Yokohama de Tokyo-iki no  
basu ni norikaemasu**      *transfer to a Tokyo-bound bus in  
Yokohama*

Again, Japanese speakers may use different forms than **norikaemasu**, depending on what words surround it. However, if you can pick up **norikae**, which is common to all the forms, it will not be too difficult to get the meaning correctly.

4. **de** after expressions of location

Note the use of the particle **de** in the following sentence from Situation 3:

**Soko de Marunouchi-sen ni norikaete kudasai.**

*There transfer to the Marunouchi line.*

An expression of location like **soko** 'there' followed by the particle **de** indicates the place where something has happened or will happen. This **de** is often equivalent to English 'at' or 'in', though the exact translation will depend, as here, on the context. You will see this particle again in later lessons.

---

---

会話

---

---

Situation 1

ハーマン すみません。伊勢丹へ行きたいんですか、どの出口ですか。  
日本人 伊勢丹ですか。南口か近いですよ。  
ハーマン 南口はとっちですか。  
日本人 ここをまっすぐ行って、右の方です。  
ハーマン そうですか。とうもありがとうございます。  
...

ハーマン すみません。  
伊勢丹はここから右の方ですか、左の方ですか。  
日本人 ここを出て、左の方です。  
ハーマン とうもありがとうございます。

Situation 2

サリハン すみません。ここは西口ですか。  
日本人 いいえ、ここは東口ですよ。  
サリハン そうですか。  
日本人 どこへ行きたいんですか。  
サリハン 三越へ行きたいんですか  
日本人 しっ、あの階段を下りて、地下道をまっすぐ右の方へ  
行くと、三越の入口がありますよ。  
サリハン すみません。わかりません。  
日本人 ええと 階段を下りて、地下道を右です。  
サリハン ああ、わかります。とうもありがとうございます。

Situation 3

ウォーカー すみません。  
新宿はこの線でいいですね？  
駅員 この線は新宿へ行きませんよ。  
ここから赤坂見附へ行って、丸ノ内線に乗り換えて下さい。  
ウォーカー 赤坂見附へ行って  
駅員 ええ、そこで丸ノ内線に乗り換えてください。  
ウォーカー わかりました。とうもありがとうございます。

Lesson 15

TAKING A TAXI

タクシー

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask a Japanese person to call a taxi for you
- tell the driver the destination
- stop the taxi at your destination
- pay the fare



---



---

**DIALOGS**

**KAIWA**

---



---

**Situation 1**

*Mrs. Black is going shopping at the Mitsukoshi department store in the Ginza. She stops a cruising cab on a street near her apartment.*

- |                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| <i>Burakku:</i>  | <b>Ginza made onegai shimasu.</b>           | <i>Ginza, please.</i>                      |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Hai.</b>                                 | <i>Yes.</i>                                |
|                  | (after a short while)                       |  |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Okyaku-san, Ginza desu yo.</b>           | <i>Miss, we are at the Ginza.</i>          |
| <i>Burakku:</i>  | <b>Mitsukoshi no mae de tomete kudasai.</b> | <i>Please stop in front of Mitsukoshi.</i> |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Hai.</b>                                 | <i>Yes.</i>                                |
|                  | (The taxi stops in front of Mitsukoshi)     |  |
| <i>Burakku:</i>  | <b>Ikura desu ka?</b>                       | <i>How much is it?</i>                     |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>550-en desu.</b>                         | <i>It's 550 yen.</i>                       |

**Situation 2**

*Ms. Parker is going to go to Kyoto by Shinkansen. She flags down a taxi and tells the driver to go to Tokyo station.*

- |                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Paakaa:</i>   | <b>Tokyo Eki made onegai shimasu.</b>                  | <i>To Tokyo station, please.</i>                                     |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Yaesuguchi desu ka, Chuoguchi desu ka?</b>          | <i>Do you want to go to the Yaesu entrance or the Chuo entrance?</i> |
| <i>Paakaa:</i>   | <b>Yoku wakarimasen ga, Shinkansen no noriba desu.</b> | <i>I'm not sure. The Shinkansen boarding area.</i>                   |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Aa, wakarimashita.</b>                              | <i>Oh, I see.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*Mrs. Clark is going to see a friend who lives in Aoyama. Her friend has told her that she will be waiting for her in front of a large supermarket named Meijiya at Aoyama 4-chome.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <i>Kuraaku:</i>  | <b>Aoyama yon-chome made onegai shimasu.</b>                  | <i>Aoyama 4-chome, please.</i>  |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Aoyama yon-chome no doko desu ka?</b>                      | <i>Where in Aoyama 4-chome is it?</i>   |
| <i>Kuraaku:</i>  | <b>Yoku wakarimasen ga, ookii suupaamaaketto no mae desu.</b> | <i>I don't know the exact location, but it's in front of a large supermarket.</i> |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Suupaa no namae wa?</b>                       | <i>I see. What's the name of the supermarket?</i>                                 |
| <i>Kuraaku:</i>  | <b>Meijiya desu.</b>  | <i>Meijiya.</i>   |
| <i>Untenshu:</i> | <b>Aa, wakarimashita.</b>                                     | <i>Oh, I see.</i>   |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                |                            |           |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| de             | at                         | で         |
| tomete         | stop (TE form of tomemasu) | とめて       |
| ookii          | big, large                 | おおきい      |
| suupaamaaketto | supermarket                | スーパーマーケット |
| suupaa         | supermarket                | スーパー      |
| namae          | name                       | なまえ       |
| ...wa?         | what about...?             | .....は?   |

Notes

|                |                            |         |
|----------------|----------------------------|---------|
| yonde          | call (TE form of yobimasu) | よんで     |
| tomemasu       | stop                       | とめます    |
| tomemashoo ka? | (where) shall I stop?      | とめましょうか |

Personalized list

---

---

**PRACTICE**

---

---

---

---

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Ginza made onegai shimasu.

Aoyama 4-chome  
Akasaka  
Roppongi  
Toranomom  
Kabukiza  
Roppongi 3-chome

**B. Substitution Drill**

Mitsukoshi no mae de tomete kudasai.

Koko  
Tugi no kado  
Tsugi no shingoo no mukoo  
Tsugi no koosaten no mukoo  
Eki no mae  
Ano ookii biru no mae

**C. Substitution Drill**

Aoyama 4-chome no doko desu ka?

Ginza  
Roppongi  
Toranomom  
Akasaka  
Shibuya  
Shinjuku

## Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

### D. Role Play

注 教師は質問の中に「.....のどこですか」を用いること

#### Directions

The student selects a destination from the list below and tells the instructor (= driver) where to go. The driver asks for more detailed instructions. Referring to the list below, the student supplies the necessary information by first saying

**Yoku wakarimasen ga, . . .**

#### Example:

*Student:* Tokyo Eki made onegai shimasu.  
*Instructor:* Tokyo Eki no doko desu ka?  
*Student:* Yoku wakarimasen ga, Shinkansen no noriba desu.

#### Student's list

| <u>destination</u>  | <u>stop</u>                             |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. Aoyama san-chome | in front of the Kinokuniya supermarket  |
| 2. Kasumigaseki     | in front of the Kasumigaseki building   |
| 3. Hibiya           | next to the Teikoku Hosteru             |
| 4. Ginza            | at the intersection of Ginza 4-chome    |
| 5. Tokyo Eki        | at the boarding area for the Shinkansen |

### E. Role Play

注 教師用スクリプト次ページ参照

#### Directions

The student makes the requests below. The instructor answers and the student responds appropriately.

#### Example:

(call a taxi)  
*Student:* Sumimasen, takushii o yonde kudasai.  
*Instructor:* Ee, ii desu yo.  
*Student:* Arigatoo.

1. call a taxi
2. go to a place written on a piece of paper  
(Give the instructor a piece of paper with your destination written on it.)
3. go to Shinjuku station (if asked, you want the west exit)

4. go to the Ginza (if asked, you want to get out in front of the Mitsukoshi department store)
5. go to Toranomom (if asked, you want to go to Hotel Okura)

教師用スクリプト

1. はい、わかりました。少々お待ちください。
2. .....ですね。いいですよ。
3. 新宿駅のどこですか？
4. 銀座のどこですか？
5. はい。(少し後で。)  
お客さん、虎ノ門ですよ。どこで止めますか？

## F. Role Play

Directions:

The student selects an area name from the list and tells the instructor (= driver) to go to that place. When the taxi arrives in the area, the driver will say:

**Okyaku-san, (area name) desu yo. Doko de tomemasu ka?**

*'Mr./Miss, we are at (area name). Where shall I stop?'*

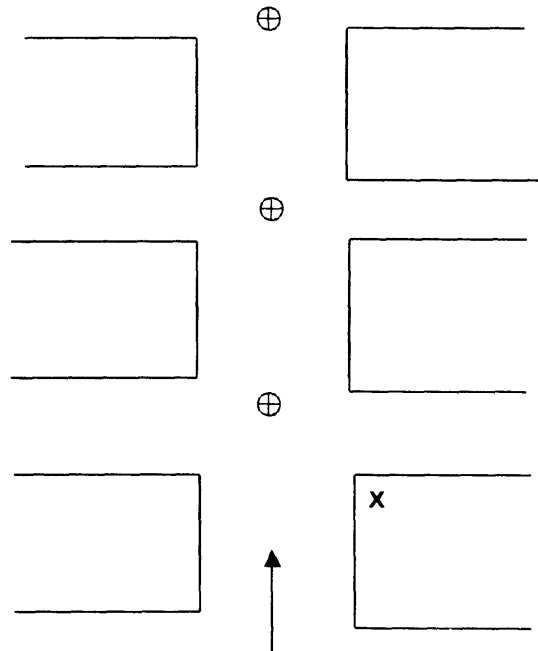
The student gives the driver directions to the destination, referring to the map that corresponds to the selected area. (Your destination is marked with an X.) The instructor follows the direction(s) by tracing the route on the map. When the taxi gets to the destination, the student says:

**Koko de tomete kudasai.**

## Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

Example:

### Aoyama 3 - chome



*Student:* **Aoyama 3-chome made onegai shimasu.**

*Instructor:* **Hai.**

...

*Instructor:* **Okyaku-san, Aoyama 3-chome desu yo.  
Doko de tomemasu ka?**

*Student:* (referring to the map of Aoyama 3-chome)  
**Tsugi no kado desu.**

*Instructor:* **Hai, wakarimashita.** (traces the route on the map)

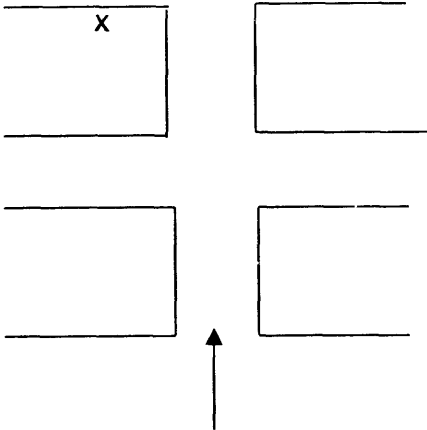
*Student:* (in front of the destination)  
**Koko de tomete kudasai.**

#### Student's list

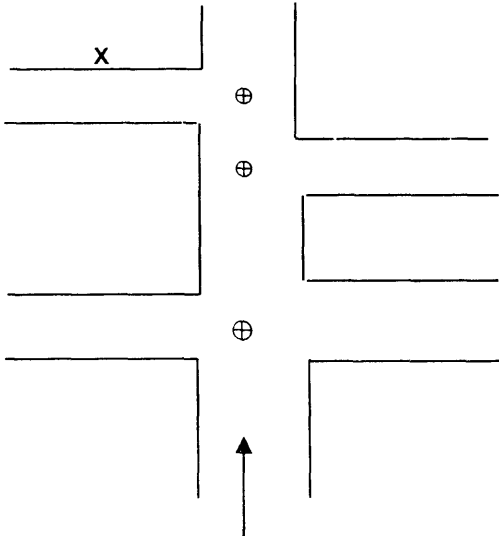
1. Ginza 7- chome
2. Toranomom
3. Shinjuku 1 - chome
4. Roppongi 3 - chome

Area Maps

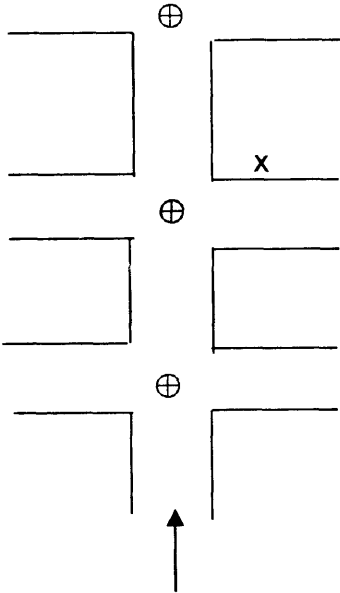
1. Ginza 7 - chome



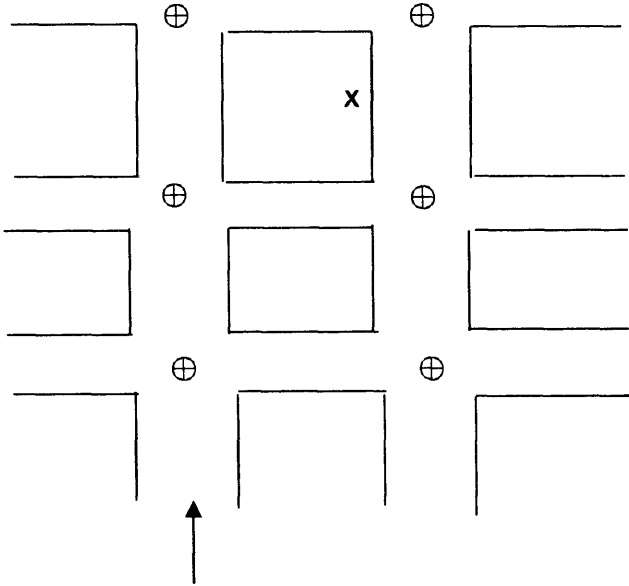
2. Toranomom



3. Shinjuku 1 - chome



4. Roppongi 3 - chome



⊕ = indicates a traffic light

**G. Pattern check**

Fill in the blanks with *de*, *no*, *ni*, or *e*.

1. Tsugi ( ) tsugi wa Yokohama desu ka?
2. Aoyama ( ) tsuitara oshiete kudasai.
3. Kono densha wa Shinjuku ( ) ikimasu ka?
4. Kono chikaku ( ) chikatetsu ( ) eki ga arimasu ka?
5. Koko ( ) tomete kudasai.
6. Takushii noriba wa doko ( ) arimasu ka?
7. Kono chikaku ( ) basu ( ) noriba wa arimasu ka?
8. JR-sen no eki wa koko kara migi ( ) hoo desu ka, hidari ( ) hoo desu ka?
9. Yokohama ( ) ikitain desu ga, kono hoomu desu ka?
10. Kono densha wa Shinbashi ( ) tomarimasu ka?

---

---

**READING**

---

---

**KANJI**

- |        |           |                              |
|--------|-----------|------------------------------|
| 1. 空車  | kuusha    | for hire                     |
| 2. 回送  | kaisoo    | not in service               |
| 3. 予約  | yoyaku    | on call                      |
| 4. 停留所 | teeryuujo | a (bus) stop                 |
| 5. 案内所 | annaijo   | an information desk or booth |



---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. *How to tell the cab driver your destination*

When you are staying at a hotel or visiting a friend and want to ask someone to call a taxi for you, you can use the following expression

**Takushii o yonde kudasai.**      *Please call a taxi (for me)*

When giving the taxi driver the destination, for a relatively well-known place, e.g., the American Embassy, you can simply say:

**Amerika Taishikan made onegai shimasu.**  
*To the American Embassy, please*

If, however, your destination is relatively unknown, e.g., your apartment, you should first give the area name in which your apartment is located. Let us assume that your apartment is located in Aoyama 4-chome. You first say **Aoyama 4-chome made onegai shimasu**. The driver will ask you the exact location when you get to the area, saying something like the following:

**Okyaku-san, Aoyama 4-chome desu yo.**  
*Customer, we are at Aoyama 4-chome*

**Doko de tomemasu (tomemashoo) ka? OR Doko desu ka?, etc.**  
*Where shall I stop? Where do you want me to stop?, etc*

Of course, your driver may not say exactly what is given above. What is important is that when you go to a place whose location is not likely to be familiar to the driver, you give the area name first and then give the directions as you approach the place you want to go. To do this, you must, of course, be familiar with the neighborhood of your destination.

However, when the name you have given covers a large area, the driver may ask where in that area you want to go. Again, the driver may use different expressions, which may include a phrase like (area name) **no doko** 'where in (area name),' as in the following.

Example:

**You:**     **Ginza made onegai shimasu.**  
**Driver:** **Ginza no doko desu ka?**  
              OR  
              **Ginza no doko ni ikitain desu ka?**  
              *Where in the Ginza do you want to go?*

When you give directions to the driver, it is often helpful to mention a landmark near your destination, as the following example illustrates

**You:** **Ginza made onegai shimasu.**  
**Driver:** **Ginza no doko desu ka?**  
**You:** **Mitsukoshi no tonari desu.**  
*Next to the Mitsukoshi department store*

If you are not confident of pronouncing the name of the destination correctly, it is a good idea to have a Japanese friend write the name in Kanji on a piece of paper so that you can take it along to show the driver. When you want to do this, you can simply say the following

**Koko made onegai shimasu.** *To this place, please*

However, this strategy may not always be successful if your destination isn't well known or if you don't know a landmark near your destination to tell the driver. Even though he/she will certainly be able to get to the area of your destination, the driver may still not be able to locate the place. This is because it is very difficult to find out a location by simply reading the address, for not every street has a name nor every house a number.

## 2. How to stop the cab at your destination

When you want to stop the cab at your destination, you can use the following expression

**Koko de tomete kudasai.** *Please stop here*

Note the particle *de* (て) after the word *koko* 'here' in the sentence above. As we mentioned in Lesson 14, an expression of location like *koko* followed by *de* indicates the place where something has happened or will happen. Instead of *koko* in the sentence above you could also use various other place expressions you have learned to tell the cab driver where to stop. For example

**Tsugi no shingoo de tomete kudasai.**  
*Please stop at the next traffic light*

**Mitsu-me no koosaten de tomete kudasai.**  
*Please stop at the third intersection*

## 3. How to pay the fare

Since every taxi has a fare meter in the front and you don't need to tip, you can simply look at the meter and pay the fare before you get out. If you want to make sure of the fare, you can, of course, ask the following question

**Ikura desu ka?** *How much is it?*

When you get out, after having paid the fare, you can say

**Doomo (arigatoo).** *Thank you*

## Lesson 15 Taking a taxi

However, don't be surprised if the driver doesn't respond. S/he may not be very sociable. Some drivers may not say anything until you give them the destination when you get in the cab, or even after you give it to them.

It would be a good idea for you to have 500-yen or 1,000-yen bills available when the destination is not very far, as it may happen that the driver is not able to change a large bill.

### 4. *ookii X* 'large/big X'

In this lesson, we learn the word *ookii* 'large, big'. Look at the following two patterns and compare the structure of the Japanese and English:

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>ookii suupaa</b>              | <i>large supermarket /big supermarket</i> |
| <b>Ano suupaa wa ookii desu.</b> | <i>That supermarket is large.</i>         |

We will learn more words that behave like *ookii* in later lessons.

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

フラック 銀座までお願いします。  
 運転手 はい。

運転手 お客さん、銀座ですよ。  
 フラック 三越の前で止めてください。  
 運転手 はい。

フラック いくらですか。  
 運転手 550円です。

## Situation 2

パーカー 東京駅までお願いします。  
 運転手 八重川口ですか、中央口ですか。  
 パーカー よくわかりませんか、新幹線の乗り場です。  
 運転手 ああ、わかりました。

## Situation 3

クラーク 青山四丁目までお願いします。  
 運転手 青山四丁目のところですか。  
 クラーク よくわかりませんか、大きいスーパーマーケットの前です。  
 運転手 そうですか。スーパーの名前は？  
 クラーク 明治屋です。  
 運転手 ああ、わかりました。



Lesson 16

LOCATING MERCHANDISE

デパート

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find the floor of the sales counter for merchandise you want to see in a department store
- find out the location of the merchandise
- say in Japanese the names for some objects you are likely to want to buy



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Miller wants to buy some china at a department store. She is now at the entrance of the Takashimaya department store.*

- |                |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|
| <b>Miraa:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen, kateeyoohin wa nan-gai desu ka?</b>                 | <i>Excuse me, what floor are household goods on?</i>        |
| <b>Ten in:</b> | <b>Go-kai de gozaimasu.</b>                                       | <i>It's the 5th floor.</i>                                  |
| <b>Miraa:</b>  | <b>Go-kai desu ka? Doomo. A, erebeetaa wa doko ni arimasu ka?</b> | <i>The 5th floor? Thank you. Oh, where is the elevator?</i> |
| <b>Ten in:</b> | <b>Nekutai-uriba no ushiro de gozaimasu.</b>                      | <i>It's behind the necktie section.</i>                     |

### Situation 2

*Mrs. White gets off a train at Shibuya station. She is going to do some grocery shopping at a department store which is connected to the station building.*

- |                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| <b>Howaito:</b>  | <b>Sumimasen. Shokuryoohin-uriba wa doko desu ka?</b>                       | <i>Excuse me. Where is the grocery department?</i>                                 |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Chika ni-kai desu yo.</b>  | <i>On the second level of the basement.</i>  |
| <b>Howaito:</b>  | <b>Anoo, kaidan wa doko desu ka?</b>  | <i>Uh, where is the stairway?</i>  |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Kaidan wa annaijo no mae desu ga, esukareetaa ga soko ni arimasu yo.</b> | <i>It's in front of the information desk, but there is an escalator over there</i> |
| <b>Howaito:</b>  | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>  | <i>Thank you.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*Mr. Kellog wants to see some watches at a department store. At the information desk near the entrance, he asks what floor watches are on.*

- |                 |  |  |
|-----------------|--|--|
| <i>Keroggu:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Tokee-uriba wa nan-gai desu ka?</b>                          | <i>Excuse me. What floor is the watch department?</i>    |
| <i>Ten in:</i>  | <b>Rok-kai de gozaimasu.</b>   | <i>It's on the 6th floor.</i>                            |
| <i>Keroggu:</i> | <b>Doomo.</b>  | <i>Thanks.</i>   |
|                 | . . .  | . . .  |
|                 | (rok-kai de)   | (on the 6th floor)                                       |
| <i>Keroggu:</i> | <b>Tokee-uriba wa doko desu ka?</b>  | <i>Where is the watch section?</i>                       |
| <i>Ten in:</i>  | <b>Kochira no migi no hoo de gozaimasu. Erebeetaa no mae ni gozaimasu.</b> | <i>It's on the right. It's in front of the elevator.</i> |
| <i>Keroggu:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Doomo.</b>   | <i>I see. Thank you.</i>                                 |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**
**KOTOBA**Dialogs

|              |                                 |          |
|--------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| kateeyoohin  | household goods                 | かていようひん  |
| nan-gai      | which floor                     | なんがい     |
| kai          | (counter for) floor, story      | かい       |
| de gozaimasu | is/are/am (very deferential)    | でございます   |
| nekutai      | necktie                         | ネクタイ     |
| shokuryoohin | groceries, foodstuffs           | しょくりょうひん |
| chika        | basement                        | ちか       |
| anoo         | uh, well (indicates hesitation) | あのう      |
| annaijo      | information desk                | あんないじょ   |
| esukareetaa  | escalator                       | エスカレーター  |
| tokee        | watch, clock                    | とけい      |

Practice

|              |                      |         |
|--------------|----------------------|---------|
| okujoo       | roof                 | おくじょう   |
| yuenchi      | amusement park       | ゆうえんち   |
| petto        | pet                  | ペット     |
| tokubaijoo   | bargain/budget floor | とくばいじょう |
| kagu         | furniture            | かぐ      |
| bunboogu     | stationery           | ぶんぼうぐ   |
| omocha       | toy                  | おもちゃ    |
| hon          | book                 | ほん      |
| denki yoohin | electric appliance   | でんきようひん |
| hooseki      | jewel/jewelry        | ほうせき    |
| megane       | eyeglasses           | めがね     |
| fujin        | woman (formal)       | ふじん     |
| kodomo       | child                | こども     |

|                    |                         |        |
|--------------------|-------------------------|--------|
| <b>fuku</b>        | clothing                | ふく     |
| <b>shinshi</b>     | man, gentleman (formal) | しんし    |
| <b>keshoohin</b>   | cosmetics               | けしょうひん |
| <b>kutsu</b>       | shoes                   | くつ     |
| <b>kaban</b>       | luggage                 | かばん    |
| <b>kaze-gusuri</b> | cold medicine           | かぜぐすり  |
| <b>kaze</b>        | a cold                  | かぜ     |
| <b>kusuri</b>      | medicine, drug          | くすり    |
| <b>i</b>           | stomach                 | い      |
| <b>kirikizu</b>    | cut, wound              | きりきず   |
| <b>yakedo</b>      | burn                    | やけど    |
| <b>asupirin</b>    | aspirin                 | アスピリン  |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Number Reading**

The following table shows floor names in Japanese. Study each item by repeating after the instructor. Note that the pronunciation of some numbers changes if the counter kai (階) 'floor' is attached.

|                    |       |              |        |
|--------------------|-------|--------------|--------|
| 1st                | floor | ik-kai       | (一階)   |
| 2nd                | floor | ni-kai       | (二階)   |
| 3rd                | floor | san-gai      | (三階)   |
| 4th                | floor | yon-kai      | (四階)   |
| 5th                | floor | go-kai       | (五階)   |
| 6th                | floor | rok-kai      | (六階)   |
| 7th                | floor | nana-kai     | (七階)   |
| 8th                | floor | hak-kai      |        |
|                    |       | OR           |        |
|                    |       | hachi-kai    | (八階)   |
| 9th                | floor | kyuu-kai     | (九階)   |
| 10th               | floor | juk-kai      | (十階)   |
|                    |       | ...          |        |
| 1st level basement |       | chika ik-kai | (地下一階) |
| 2nd level basement |       | chika ni-kai | (地下二階) |

The kanji for kai 'floor' is 階.

Read the following:

二階  
三階  
五階  
四階  
七階  
一階  
六階  
九階

**B. Pronunciation Practice**

The following is a typical floor plan of a department store in Japan. Practice the pronunciation of the floors and the names of merchandise by repeating after the instructor.

|   |                        |  |
|---|------------------------|--|
| <u>okujoo</u>                             | 屋上                     | <u>roof</u>  |
| yuuenchi<br>petto                         | 遊園地<br>ペット             | <i>amusement park</i><br><i>pets</i>   |
| <u>nana-kai</u>                           | 七階                     | <u>7th floor</u>   |
| tokubai-joo<br>shokudoo                   | 特売場<br>食堂              | <i>budget floor</i><br><i>restaurant</i>                                       |
| <u>rok-kai</u>                            | 六階                     | <u>6th floor</u>   |
| kagu<br>bunboogu<br>omocha<br>hon         | 家具<br>文房具<br>おもちゃ<br>本 | <i>furniture</i><br><i>stationery</i><br><i>toys</i><br><i>books</i>           |
| <u>go-kai</u>                             | 五階                     | <u>5th floor</u>   |
| kateeyoohin<br>denki kigu                 | 家庭用品<br>電気器具           | <i>household goods</i><br><i>electric appliances</i>                           |
| <u>yon-kai</u>                            | 四階                     | <u>4th floor</u>   |
| hooseki<br>tokee<br>kamera<br>megane      | 宝石<br>時計<br>カメラ<br>眼鏡  | <i>jewelry</i><br><i>watches/clocks</i><br><i>cameras</i><br><i>eyeglasses</i> |
| <u>san-gai</u>                            | 三階                     | <u>3rd floor</u>   |
| fujin, kodomo fuku                        | 婦人・子供服                 | <i>women's and children's clothing</i>   |
| <u>ni-kai</u>                             | 二階                     | <u>2nd floor</u>   |
| shinshi fuku                              | 紳士服                    | <i>men's clothing</i>  |
| <u>ik-kai</u>                             | 一階                     | <u>1st floor</u>   |
| keshoohin<br>akusesarii<br>kutsu<br>kaban | 化粧品<br>アクセサリ<br>靴<br>鞆 | <i>cosmetics</i><br><i>accessories</i><br><i>shoes</i><br><i>luggage</i>       |
| <u>chika</u>                              | 地下                     | <u>basement</u>  |
| shokuryoohin                              | 食料品                    | <i>groceries</i>   |

### C. Substitution Drill

Esukareetaa wa doko desu ka?

shokuryoohin  
kaidan  
kateeyoohin  
kodomo-fuku  
nan-gai  
doko  
tokee  
otearai

### D. Translation-Substitution Drill

Kateeyoohin wa go-kai desu ka?

Example:

7th floor → Kateeyoohin wa nana-kai desu ka?

Cameras → Kamera wa nana-kai desu ka?

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| rest room       | 8th floor  |
| household goods | 3rd floor  |
| 6th floor       | watches    |
| toys            | what floor |
| groceries       | restaurant |

### E. Question and Answer Exercise

注: 教師は適宜に返事する

Directions:

The student asks the instructor on which floor the merchandise listed below is found and writes down the answer.

Example:

*Student:* Fujinfuku wa nan-gai desu ka?

OR

Fujinfuku-uriba wa doko desu ka?

OR

Fujinfuku wa doko desu ka?

*Instructor:* San-gai desu.

*Student:* (writes down 3)

## Student's list

| <u>merchandise</u> |              | <u>floor</u> |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------|
| books              | hon          | (       )    |
| amusement park     | yuuenchi     | (       )    |
| men's wear         | shinshifuku  | (       )    |
| stationery         | bunboogu     | (       )    |
| household goods    | kateeyoohin  | (       )    |
| cosmetics          | keshoohin    | (       )    |
| food               | shokuryoohin | (       )    |
| pets               | petto        | (       )    |
| electric appliance | denkikigu    | (       )    |
| women's clothing   | fujinfuku    | (       )    |

**F. Production & Comprehension Exercise**

Directions:

The student asks the instructor (=clerk) where (or on what floor) the merchandise on the list below is located, by using one of the following expressions:

... **uriba wa doko desu ka?/nan-gai desu ka?**

The instructor answers and the student writes down the floor number.

Example:

*Student:* Kamera uriba wa nan-gai desu ka?

*Instructor:* 3-gai de gozaimasu

*Student:* (writes down 3)

## Student's list

|                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| men's wear          | (       ) |
| toys                | (       ) |
| cosmetics           | (       ) |
| stationery          | (       ) |
| household goods     | (       ) |
| women's clothing    | (       ) |
| food                | (       ) |
| electric appliances | (       ) |
| amusement park      | (       ) |
| jewelry             | (       ) |

注: 教師は適宜に「.....で(に)ございます。」を使って返事する

### G. Vocabulary Building & Production Drill

注: 教師は適宜に返事する

When you buy medicine in a drugstore in Japan, you will notice that the contents and directions are written in both Japanese and English. So the first thing you should do in a drugstore is to locate the section for the medicine you want. Then read the contents and choose a brand.

Here is a list of some common medicines. Expand the list by listing other medicines you think you may need.

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| cold medicine      | kaze-gusuri        |
| stomach medicine   | i-gusuri           |
| medicine for cuts  | kirikizu no kusuri |
| medicine for burns | yakedo no kusuri   |

Ask the location of the following medicines:

Example:

(Cue): cold medicine

*Student:* Kaze-gusuri wa doko desu ka?

*Instructor:* Achira de gozaimasu.

stomach medicine  
medicine for burns  
medicine for cuts  
aspirin  
cold medicine

### H. Production & Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student asks where the places on the list below are located. The instructor (=clerk) answers. The student makes a brief note of each location in either Japanese or English. If s/he doesn't understand, s/he should ask the clerk to repeat, slow down, etc. The instructor checks whether or not the student got the location correctly.

Example:

*Student:* Esukareetaa wa doko desu ka?

*Instructor:* Nekutai-uriba no ushiro ni gozaimasu.

*Student:* (writes down key words)

*Instructor:* (checks the student's notes)

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| Student's list | 教師用スクリプト                                     |
| erebeetaa      | ここをいらっしゃると、右の方でございます。                        |
| kateeyoohin    | あちらのエスカレーターのすぐそばにございます。                      |
| kodomofuku     | この先の右にございます。婦人服売り場のそばにございます。                 |
| kamera         | ここを真っ直ぐいらっしゃると、眼鏡売り場の先でございます。                |
| bunboogu       | ここから右の方へいらっしゃいますと、宝石売り場の後ろの方でございます。          |
| hooseki        | ここをずっと真っ直ぐいらっしゃいますと、カメラ売り場がございます。そのそばでございます。 |

## I. Reading Advertisements

Look at the ads of major department stores on the next page. With the help of the instructor, try to see if you can recognize some of the characters. Also, try to identify the area in which each department store is located.





03-352-1111/水曜定休/平日10時-6時/土・日10時-6時半



京王

金・土10時-6時半  
日・月-水10時-6時  
食品売場連日7時迄  
Tel. 342-2111 木曜定休



日本橋  
高島屋

日・月・火・木及び祝日は6時  
金・土は6時半まで営業  
Tel. 211-4111/水曜定休

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |         |              |                     |
|---------|--------------|---------------------|
| 1. 上    | ue           | up                  |
| 2. 下    | shita        | down                |
| 3. 階段   | kaidan       | stairway            |
| 4. 押す   | osu          | push                |
| 5. 引く   | hiku         | pull                |
| 6. 電話   | denwa        | telephone(s)        |
| 7. 公衆電話 | kooshuudenwa | public telephone(s) |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### *How to locate the merchandise you want to see or buy in a department store*

In all major department stores, there are directories written both in English and Japanese. They are usually placed near the entrance, stairways, and elevators. Therefore, you will probably have little problem finding the floor you want. You can ask a person at the information desk (near ground floor entrances), the elevator operator, or the 'escalator girl.' (Ask your instructor about the 'elevator girl' and the 'escalator girl.')

You can use the following expressions, which you learned in Lesson 6, to ask the location of merchandise.

If you want to locate the watch counter, for example, you can say the following:

**Tokee wa doko desu ka?**

*Where are the watches?*

OR

**Tokee-uriba wa doko desu ka?**

*Where is the watch section/  
counter/department?*

Note: uriba (売場) literally means 'selling place.'

Practice B of this lesson contains a typical floor plan of a Japanese department store. Study the names of the merchandise and/or sales counters and, with the help of your instructor, add any words that you think you may need.

eigyoo jikan (営業時間) 'business hours'

The following are typical business hours of stores, shops, department stores, etc. in Japan.

|                   | Weekdays             | Saturday   | Sunday     |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------|------------|
| banks             | 9:00-3:00            | 9:00-12:00 | closed     |
| post offices      | 9:00-5:00            | 9:00-3:00  | closed     |
| stores            | 10:00-8:00           | 10:00-8:00 | 10:00-8:00 |
| department stores | 10:00-6:00           | 10:00-6:30 | 10:00-6:30 |
| barber shops      | 9:00-8:00            | 9:00-8:00  | 9:00-8:00  |
|                   | (closed on Mondays)  |            |            |
| beauty parlors    | 9:00-8:00            | 9:00-8:00  | 9:00-8:00  |
|                   | (closed on Tuesdays) |            |            |

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

- ミラー: すみません。家庭用品は何階ですか。  
店員: 五階でございます。  
ミラー: 五階ですか。どうも。  
あ、エレベーターはどこにありますか。  
店員: ネクタイ売場の後ろでございます。

**Situation 2**

- ホワイト: すみません。食料品売場はどこですか。  
日本人: 地下二階ですよ。  
ホワイト: あのう、階段はどこですか。  
日本人: 階段は案内所の前ですが、エスカレーターが  
そこにありますよ。  
ホワイト: どうもありがとう。

**Situation 3**

- ケロッグ: すみません。時計売場は何階ですか。  
店員: 六階でございます。  
ケロッグ: どうも。  
...  
ケロッグ: 時計売場はどこですか。  
店員: こちらの右の方でございます。  
エレベーターの前でございます。  
ケロッグ: そうですか。どうも。

## Lesson 16 Locating merchandise

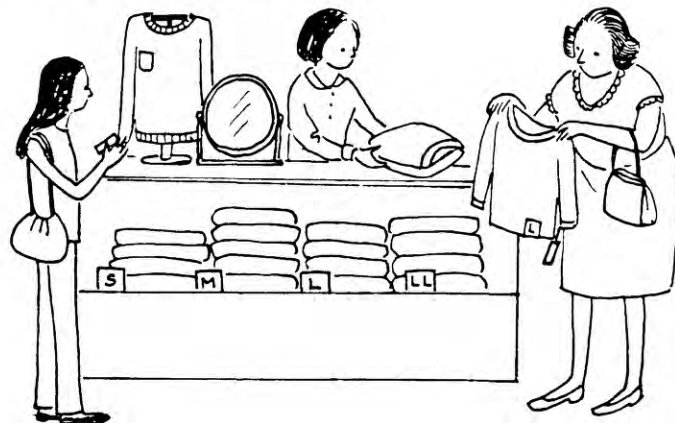
Lesson 17

ASKING FOR SERVICE  
AND  
INDICATING PREFERENCE

それを見せてください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask for service at a store
- ask a clerk if the store carries the merchandise you want
- ask a clerk to bring merchandise you have in mind which is different from the item you are examining
- say 'Just looking, thank you'



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mrs. Schwartz has gone to a department store to buy a sweater. She finds a nice one but it's in a showcase*

- Shuwaatsu:** Sono seetaa o misete kudasai. *Please show me that sweater*  
 (pointing to a sweater)
- Ten in:** Kore desu ka? Doozo. *This one? Here you are*
- . . .
- Shuwaatsu:** Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasen ka? *Do you have any that are*  
*a little larger?*
- Ten in:** Jaa, kore wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka? *Well, how about this one?*  
 (showing another sweater)
- Kochira wa LL-saizu de gozaimasu.** *It's extra large.*

### Situation 2

*Ms. Robinson is window shopping in the Ginza. She sees a nice blouse in a store. She enters the store and finds the same type of blouse on a shelf in a showcase*

- Ten in:** Irasshaimase. *May I help you?*
- Robinson:** Sumimasen. Are o misete kudasai. *Could you please show me*  
 (pointing to merchandise) *that one?*
- Ten in:** Kochira desu ka? *This one?*
- Robinson:** Iie, sono ue desu. *No, the one above it.*
- Ten in:** Hai, doozo. *Here you are.*
- . . .
- Robinson:** Moo sukoshi chigau iro no wa *Do you have one in a slightly*  
 arimasu ka? *different color?*
- Ten in:** Ainiku desu ga, kono katachi wa *I'm sorry, but this style*  
 kono iro dake desu. *comes only in this color.*

### Situation 3

*Mr. King is browsing when a salesclerk approaches him to ask if she can help.*

- Ten in:** Irasshaimase. *Welcome!*  
 Okyakusama no de gozaimasu ka? *Are you looking for some-*  
*thing for yourself?*
- Kingu:** Chotto mite iru dake desu. *Just looking, thank you.*

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                |                               |         |
|----------------|-------------------------------|---------|
| seetaa         | sweater                       | セーター    |
| misete         | show (TE form of misemasu)    | みせて     |
| sukoshi        | a little                      | すこし     |
| ...no          | ...one                        | .....の  |
| ikaga          | how?                          | いかが     |
| saizu          | size                          | サイズ     |
| ue             | above, top                    | うえ      |
| chigau         | different                     | ちがう     |
| iro            | color                         | いろ      |
| ainiku desu ga | it's unfortunate, but...      | あいにくですが |
| katachi        | form, style, model            | かたち     |
| dake           | only                          | だけ      |
| okyakusama     | customer (polite)             | おきゃくさま  |
| mite iru       | is/am looking                 | みている    |
| mite           | look, see (TE form of mimasu) | みて      |

Practice

|            |           |        |
|------------|-----------|--------|
| sukaafu    | scarf     | スカーフ   |
| shatsu     | shirt     | シャツ    |
| akusesarii | accessory | アクセサリー |
| borausu    | blouse    | ブラウス   |

Notes

|         |                         |      |
|---------|-------------------------|------|
| itte    | say (TE form of iimasu) | いって  |
| chiisai | small                   | ちいさい |



## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

|                 |                        |           |
|-----------------|------------------------|-----------|
| yasui           | cheap, inexpensive     | やすい       |
| shita           | under, below           | した        |
| osagashi desu   | look for (very polite) | おさがしです    |
| de irasshaimasu | is/are (very polite)   | でいらっしゃいます |

### Personalized list

---

---

**PRACTICE**

---

---

**RENSHUU**

**A. Substitution Drill**

Sono seetaa o misete kudasai.

kamera  
Kono  
Ano  
sukaafu  
nekutai  
Sono

**B. Substitution Drill**

Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?

Moo sukoshi chiisai  
Chigau saizu  
Moo sukoshi yasui  
Chigau iro  
Chigau katachi  
Moo sukoshi ookii

**C. Substitution Drill**

Sono ue no desu.

shita  
migi  
tonari  
ue  
hidari  
mae

### D. Transformation Drill

*Instructor:* Sono ookii seetaa o misete kudasai.

*Student:* Sono ookii no o misete kudasai.

教師用リスト

もう少し安いシャツ

小さいカメラ

大きいセーター

違うネクタイ

もう少し小さいカメラ

安いスカーフ

### E. Production Exercise

What do you say in the following situations?

Example:

You have found a nice scarf in a showcase close to you and want to look at it more closely.

ANSWER: **Kono sukaafu o misete kudasai.**

(point to the object when you say **kono...**, **sono...** and **ano...**)

1. There is a nice necktie in a showcase near you that you want to look at more closely.
2. A camera in the showcase behind the clerk looks like the one you have been looking for so you want to look at it more closely.
3. There is a small clock in a showcase (not near you) that you want to look at more closely.
4. There is a nice-looking sweater on the top shelf behind the clerk that you want to look at more closely.
5. A brooch in a showcase which is not near you or the clerk looks very nice and you want to look at it more closely.
6. There is a camera on the bottom shelf behind the clerk which you want to look at more closely.
7. There is an attractive scarf in a showcase near you that you want to look at more closely.

**F. Production and Comprehension Exercise** 注: 教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

The student asks the questions below. The instructor answers, reading the script. The student checks the right response, based on the instructor's answer.

Example:

**Student:** Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?

**Instructor:** (reading the script)

Hai, kochira desu. Kore wa L saizu desu.

**Student:** (checks the right response)

1. Ask if there's a cheaper one.

Response

ええと、こちらです。

( ) Yes, there is, but the style is different.

これはちょっと

( ) No, there aren't any in the same color.

形か違いますが.....

2. Ask if there's something in a different color.

Response

この色たけなんてですか.....

( ) Yes, there is and it's cheaper.

こちらはちょっとお安いん

( ) No, there isn't.

ですか、色か違います。

3. Ask if there's something in a different style.

Response

これはいかかですか。

( ) Yes, there is.

色は違いますが、サイズは

( ) No, there isn't.

同じです。

4. Ask if there is a smaller one.

Response

お客様、あいにくですが、

( ) Yes, there is, but the color is different.

丁度 同じのは

( ) No, there isn't.

ございませんが.....

5. Ask if there is a larger one.

Response

ええと..... こちらは

( ) Yes, there is.

Lサイズですね。こちらに

( ) No, there isn't.

LLサイズがございます。

**G. Put the following words in correct order to form a sentence:**

misete, yasui, moo sukoshi, kudasai, no, o

moo sukoshi, arimasu, wa, ka, ookii, no

kono, kudasai, misete, seetaa, o

kudasai, sono, misete, kamera, o

katachi, chigau, arimasu, wa, ka, no

iro, chigau, no, kudasai, o, misete

**H. Production Exercise**

注: 教師は黒板に絵を画くか、又は雑誌等からの写真を黒板に貼って練習させる

Directions:

The student asks the instructor to show him/her an item by pointing to one of the examples on the blackboard. The instructor asks whether the one s/he is pointing to is the right one. The student tells the instructor that the one s/he wants to see is next to it, above it, etc., using the following expressions:

**sono ue/shita/tonari/migi/hidari desu.**

Example:

*Student:* Sono seetaa o misete kudasai.

*Instructor:* Kochira desu ka?

*Student:* Iie, sono ue desu.

*Instructor:* Hai, doozo.

**I. Scrambled Dialogs**

Put the following sentences in the right order for conversation:

1. **A:** Kochira desu ka?  
**B:** Hai, irasshaimase.  
**C:** Chotto sumimasen.  
**D:** Kono kamera o misete kudasai.  
**E:** Ee.

## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

2. A: Moo sukoshi yasui no wa arimasu ka?  
B: Akusesarii desu.  
C: Kore wa nan desu ka?  
D: Kochira ni gozaimasu.
3. A: Soo desu ka.  
B: Chotto sumimasen.  
C: Moo sukoshi ookii no wa arimasu ka?  
D: Kono seetaa o misete kudasai.  
E: Okyakusama, ainiku desu ga. . .  
F: Hai, doozo.
4. A: Kore desu ka? Doozo.  
B: Moo sukoshi chigau katachi no wa arimasu ka?  
C: Sono burausu o misete kudasai.  
D: Irasshaimase.  
E: Sumimasen, ainiku desu ga. . .
5. A: Hai, soo desu.  
B: Are wa tokee desu ka?  
C: Hai, doozo.  
D: Chotto misete kudasai.

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

- |         |                |                  |
|---------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. 改札口  | kaisatsuguchi  | ticket gate      |
| 2. 山手線  | Yamanote-sen   | Yamanote line    |
| 3. 急行   | kyuukoo        | express          |
| 4. 左側通行 | sasoku tsuukoo | keep to the left |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. When you want to say 'Please show me...'

As we learned in earlier lessons, when you want to ask somebody to do something for you, you can use the following pattern

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| V (TE-form)kudasai. | 'Please V (for me),'<br>where V indicates a verb form |
|---------------------|---|

So far we have learned the following expressions, which include the above pattern

|                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| Yukkuri itte kudasai. (Lesson 2) | Please say (it) slowly |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Moo ichi-do itte kudasai. (Lesson 2) | Please say (it) again |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|

|                                   |                        |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|
| Koko ni kaite kudasai. (Lesson 4) | Please write (it) here |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|

|  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Ueno ni tsuitara oshiete<br>kudasai. (Lesson 13) | Please tell me when we<br>get to Ueno |
|--|---------------------------------------|

|                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Takushii o yonde kudasai. (Lesson 15) | Please call a taxi (for me) |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|

Since in this pattern the verb ends with -te (or -de), this form is often referred to as the Te-form of the verb. In this lesson, we learn the verb *misete* 'show'. You can use this word when you want to ask a salesclerk to show you some merchandise, as in the following example

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (merchandise) o misete kudasai. | Please show me (merchandise) |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|

Note Although, grammatically speaking, the particle *o* is necessary after the name of the merchandise, it is often dropped in actual conversation. Hence

|                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| Sore (o) misete kudasai. | Please show me that |
|--------------------------|---------------------|

### 2. One way to indicate your preference: how to say 'one that is larger'

In Lesson 15 we learned the word *ookii* 'large,' 'big,' which can be used just like its English equivalent, as in the following example

|              |                   |
|--------------|-------------------|
| ookii suupaa | large supermarket |
|--------------|-------------------|

In this lesson we learn similar words like *chiisai* 'small' and *yasui* 'cheap, inexpensive'

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| chiisai seetaa | small sweater      |
| yasui kamera   | inexpensive camera |



## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

When you mention the size, price, etc. of merchandise you have been talking about, it is not always necessary to specify the merchandise. In English, for example, you would normally say 'small ones' rather than 'small sweaters' when you have been talking about sweaters. Japanese people do the same thing, and the particle **no** can be used for this purpose. Look at the following examples.

|                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>chiisai seetaa</b> | <i>small sweater(s)</i>      |
| <b>chiisai no</b>     | <i>small one(s)</i>          |
| <b>yasui kamera</b>   | <i>inexpensive camera(s)</i> |
| <b>yasui no</b>       | <i>inexpensive one(s)</i>    |

When shopping, you may often find yourself asking a salesclerk to show you larger/smaller items than the ones you are examining. For example, you may want to say something like 'Please show me smaller ones' or 'Do you carry smaller ones?' In English, you add -er to the word *small*, with a little in front of it. In Japanese, you do not add anything to *chiisai* but instead you place *moo sukoshi* 'a little more' in front of the word, as the following examples illustrate:

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>moo sukoshi chiisai seetaa</b><br>(lit., sweaters which are a little smaller) | <i>a little smaller sweater(s)</i> |
| <b>moo sukoshi chiisai no</b><br>(lit., ones which are a little smaller)         | <i>a little smaller one(s)</i>     |

Thus, if you want to ask a salesclerk if the store carries smaller ones than the one you are examining, you can say:

**Moo sukoshi chiisai no wa arimasu ka?**  
*Do you carry/have smaller ones?* (cf. Lesson 4)

Likewise, when you want to ask the clerk to show you less expensive ones, you can say:

**Moo sukoshi yasui no o misete kudasai.**  
*Please show me ones that are a little cheaper*

### 3. **Another way to indicate your preference: how to say 'one in a different size/color/style'**

The word *chigau* 'different' can be used just like its English equivalent, as the following example shows:

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>chigau iro</b> | <i>different color(s)</i> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|

## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

When you want to say 'a sweater in a different size/color/style,' you can use the following pattern.

|                     |                  |                                     |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>chigau saizu</b> | <b>no seetaa</b> | <i>sweater in different size(s)</i> |
| <b>iro</b>          |                  | <i>color(s)</i>                     |
| <b>katachi</b>      |                  | <i>style(s)</i>                     |

Thus, when you want to say something like 'Do you carry them in different sizes/colors/styles?' or 'Please show me some in different sizes/colors/styles,' you can use the following expressions

- Chigau saizu/iro/katachi no wa arimasu ka?**  
*Do you carry them in different sizes/colors/styles?*
- Chigau saizu/iro/katachi no o misete kudasai.**  
*Please show me this/these in different sizes/colors/styles*

### 4. **kono . . . , sono . . . , ano . . .**      *'this . . . , that . . . , that . . . over there'*

In some cases, you may have to specify which of the items (in a showcase, for example) you want to have a look at. In English, you could say something like 'please show me that sweater.'

The English words this and that do not change form regardless of the position of the word in the sentence. In Japanese, however, the equivalent words do change forms, depending on whether or not they occur before nouns. The following examples will show this difference:

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Kore wa kamera desu.</b> | <i>This is a camera</i> |
| <b>kono kamera</b>          | <i>this camera</i>      |

As indicated above, the word *kono* 'this' occurs only before a noun. Putting it differently, when you want to say 'this camera, sweater, etc.' in Japanese, you must use *kono* and cannot use *kore*. You have already seen this word in *kono chikaku* 'this vicinity' (Lesson 5) and *kono michi* 'this street' (Lesson 10). In this lesson, we will learn *sono* . . . 'that' and *ano* . . . 'that over there'. The meanings of these words are exactly the same as those of the corresponding words *sore* and *are*

The following is a summary of the words of this type we have learned so far:

|    | Meaning           | object/person           | location     | direction             |
|----|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| a. | near S(peaker)    | <i>kore, kono . . .</i> | <i>koko</i>  | <i>kotchi/kochira</i> |
| b. | near L(istener)   | <i>sore, sono . . .</i> | <i>soko</i>  | <i>sotchi/sochira</i> |
| c. | away from S and L | <i>are, ano . . .</i>   | <i>asoko</i> | <i>atchi/achira</i>   |

Note: See Lesson 3 for *kore*, *sore* and *are* and Lesson 7 for the location and direction words.

## 5. Some expressions that indicate the location of merchandise

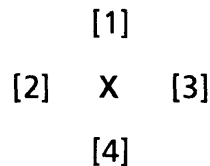
When you ask a salesclerk to show you merchandise, you may have to indicate the position of the merchandise, for example, 'the one above it,' 'the one to the right of it' or the like. This can be expressed in Japanese quite easily if we use words like *kono* 'this,' *sono* 'that', *ano* 'that, over there,' particle *no* 'the one,' *migi* 'right,' *hidari* 'left,' *ue* 'on top,' and *shita* 'below' Look at the following

|                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>migi no kamera</b>      | <i>the camera on the right</i>       |
| <b>migi no</b>             | <i>the one on the right</i>          |
| <b>sono migi no kamera</b> | <i>the camera to the right of it</i> |
|                            | OR                                   |
|                            | <i>that camera on the right</i>      |
| <b>sono migi no</b>        | <i>that one to the right of it</i>   |
|                            | OR                                   |
|                            | <i>that one on the right</i>         |

Let us assume a situation like the following

A salesclerk points to some merchandise and you want to see the one to the right/left of it or above/below it

Each position can be shown as follows



X indicates the item the clerk has pointed to

- a. When you want to see the item represented by [1] in the illustration

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Sono ue (no) desu.</b>           | <i>(It's) the one above it</i>         |
| OR                                  |  |
| <b>Sono ue no o misete kudasai.</b> | <i>Please show me the one above it</i> |

- b. When you want to see the item represented by [4]

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Sono shita (no) desu.</b>           | <i>(It's) the one below</i>            |
| OR                                     |  |
| <b>Sono shita no o misete kudasai.</b> | <i>Please show me the one below it</i> |

- c. When you want to see the item represented by [3]

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Sono migi (no) desu.</b>           | <i>(It's) the one to the right of it</i>   |
| OR                                    |  |
| <b>Sono migi no o misete kudasai.</b> | <i>Please show me the one on the right</i> |

- d. When you want to see the item represented by [2]:

**Sono hidari (no) desu.**

*(It's) the one on the left of it.*

OR

**Sono hidari no o misete kudasai.**

*Please show me the one on the left.*

## 6. A polite expression used by salesclerks

In Lesson 5 the in-group/out-group distinction was introduced. Consistent with this concept, you can expect salesclerks to use polite expressions to customers (out-group members). The following are some of the expressions frequently used by salesclerks:

- a. **Irasshaimase.**

*May I help you? (lit., Welcome!)*

You may hear the less formal form *Irasshai* at your neighborhood store.

- b. **Okyakusama no o osagashi de irasshaimasu ka?**

*Are you looking for something for yourself?*

- c. **...de gozaimasu = desu**

This is the formal and more polite form of *desu* 'is/am/are.'

- d. **Ainiku de gozaimasu ga. . .**

*Unfortunately. . .*

This expression is often used when the store doesn't carry the item you are looking for.

There are many more formal expressions used by clerks. Some of them are routine ones and you can predict when they will occur (like *irasshaimase*). Others are not so predictable. What is important is not that you use them correctly but that you attempt to figure out what the clerk is talking about from the context. You have already learned some helpful expressions that can be used when you have problems comprehending what a Japanese person is saying (e.g., those used to ask someone to repeat, slow down, etc.), so don't be embarrassed even if you don't understand. Furthermore, since you are the customer, the clerk will make an effort to make you understand what s/he is saying or to understand what you are saying.

## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

### 7. Conversion Tables

The following are conversion tables showing the sizes of dresses, suits, shirts, and shoes. The sizes used in Japan are often different from those used in America, England, and the Continent. This chart may help you avoid confusion.

#### Women

##### dresses and suits

|              |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Japanese:    | 9  | 11 | 13 | 15 | 17 | 19 | 21 |
| American:    | 8  | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 20 |
| English:     | 32 | 34 | 36 | 38 | 40 | 42 | 44 |
| Continental: | 38 | 40 | 42 | 44 | 46 | 48 | 50 |

##### shoes

|              |     |      |     |      |     |      |     |
|--------------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|
| Japanese:    | 23  | 23.5 | 24  | 24.5 | 25  | 25.5 | 26  |
| American:    | 6   | 6.5  | 7   | 7.5  | 8   | 8.5  | 9   |
| English:     | 4.5 | 5    | 5.5 | 6    | 6.5 | 7    | 7.5 |
| Continental: | 36  | 37   | 38  | 38   | 38  | 39   | 40  |

#### Men

##### suits, overcoats and sweaters

|              |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Japanese:    | S  |    | M  |    | L  |    | LL |
| American:    | 34 | 36 | 38 | 40 | 42 | 44 | 46 |
| English:     | 34 | 36 | 38 | 40 | 42 | 44 | 46 |
| Continental: | 44 | 46 | 48 | 50 | 52 | 54 |    |

##### shirts and collars

|              |    |      |    |      |    |      |    |
|--------------|----|------|----|------|----|------|----|
| Japanese:    | 36 | 37   | 38 | 39   | 40 | 41   | 42 |
| American:    | 14 | 14.5 | 15 | 15.5 | 16 | 16.5 | 17 |
| English:     | 14 | 14.5 | 15 | 15.5 | 16 | 16.5 | 17 |
| Continental: | 36 | 37   | 38 | 39   | 40 | 41   | 42 |

##### shoes

|              |      |     |      |     |     |      |      |
|--------------|------|-----|------|-----|-----|------|------|
| Japanese:    | 24.5 | 26  | 27.5 | 28  | 29  |      |      |
| American:    | 5.5  | 6.5 | 7.5  | 8.5 | 9.5 | 10.5 | 11.5 |
| English:     | 5    | 6   | 7    | 8   | 9   | 10   | 11   |
| Continental: | 39   | 40  | 41   | 42  | 43  | 44   | 45   |

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

シュワーツ: そのセーターを見せてください。  
店員: これですか。どうぞ。  
...  
シュワーツ: もう少し大きいのはありませんか。  
店員: じゃあ、これはいかかてございますか。  
こちらはLLサイズでございます。

**Situation 2**

店員: いらっしゃいませ。  
ロヒンソン: すみません。あれを見せてください。  
店員: こちらですか。  
ロヒンソン: いいえ、その上です。  
店員: はい、どうぞ。  
...  
ロヒンソン: もう少し違う色のはありますか。  
店員: あいにくですか、この形はこの色だけです。

**Situation 3**

店員: いらっしゃいませ。お客様のてございますか。  
キング: ちょっと見ているだけです。

## Lesson 17 Asking for service and indicating preference

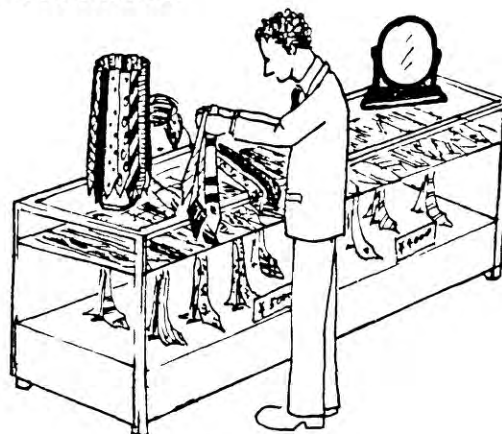
Lesson 18

MAKING A DECISION

これをください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- make a price inquiry
- order various quantities of the same merchandise
- tell the clerk that you don't need the merchandise you have examined
- indicate that you are going to leave the store without buying anything
- read price tags written in Japanese numerals
- use numbers from 10,000 up





---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mr. Moore goes to a neighborhood wine merchant to get some American beer.*

|                |  |   |
|----------------|--|---|
| <b>Muaa:</b>   | <b>Amerika no biiru wa arimasu ka?</b>               | <i>Do you have American beer?</i>                   |
| <b>Sakaya:</b> | <b>Ee, Badowaizaa to Shurittsu dake desu ga. . .</b> | <i>Yes, but we have only Budweiser and Schlitz.</i> |
| <b>Muaa:</b>   | <b>Jaa, Badowaizaa o wan pakku kudasai.</b>          | <i>Then I'll take one pack of Budweiser.</i>        |
| <b>Sakaya:</b> | <b>Sen-nihyaku-en desu. Arigatoo gozaimashita.</b>   | <i>It's 1, 200 yen. Thank you very much.</i>        |

### Situation 2

*Mr. Anderson goes to a department store to buy a necktie*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Andaason:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Kono nekutai to sono nekutai o misete kudasai. (pointing to two ties)</b> | <i>Excuse me. Please show me this tie and that tie.</i> |
| <b>Ten-in:</b>   | <b>Hai, doozo.</b>  | <i>Yes, here you are.</i>                               |
| <b>Andaason:</b> | <b>Kore wa ikura desu ka? (pointing to one of them)</b>                                 | <i>How much is this? (pointing to one of them)</i>      |
| <b>Ten-in:</b>   | <b>Sanzen-gohyaku-en desu.</b>  | <i>It's 3,500 yen.</i>                                  |
| <b>Andaason:</b> | <b>Soo desu ka. Jaa, kore o kudasai.</b>  | <i>I see. Then I'll take it.</i>                        |

### Situation 3

*Ms. Kelly goes to a women's clothing store.*

|                |  |  |
|----------------|--|--|
| <b>Kerii:</b>  | <b>Sono seetaa o misete kudasai.</b>               | <i>Please show me that sweater.</i>                        |
| <b>Ten-in:</b> | <b>Hai.</b>  | <i>Yes.</i>  |
|                | . . .  | . . .  |
| <b>Kerii:</b>  | <b>Akai no wa arimasu ka?</b>                      | <i>Do you have a red one?</i>                              |
| <b>Ten-in:</b> | <b>Ainiku desu ga, kochira dake desu.</b>          | <i>I'm sorry, but this style comes only in this color.</i> |
| <b>Kerii:</b>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata kimasu.</b> | <i>Oh. Then, that's OK. I'll come again.</i>               |

**Situation 4**

*Mrs. Keith goes to a meat market in her neighborhood.*

- |                |  |   |
|----------------|--|---|
| <i>Kiisu:</i>  | <b>Sukiyaki no niku wa arimasu ka?</b>   | <i>Do you carry meat for sukiyaki?</i>                                    |
| <i>Nikuya:</i> | <b>Ee, achira no kauntaa desu.</b>   | <i>Yes, it's over in that showcase.</i>                                   |
|                | . . .  | . . .   |
| <i>Kiisu:</i>  | <b>Kore wa ikura desu ka?</b><br>(pointing to some meat)   | <i>How much is this kind?</i>   |
| <i>Nikuya:</i> | <b>Hyaku-guramu sen-yonhyaku-en desu. Kochira wa sen-nanahyaku-en desu.</b> (pointing to different meat) | <i>It's 1,400 yen per 100 grams.<br/>This is 1,700 yen per 100 grams.</i> |
| <i>Kiisu:</i>  | <b>Jaa, sen-yonhyaku-en no o roppyaku-guramu kudasai.</b>  | <i>Well, then, give me 600 grams of the one that is 1,400 yen.</i>        |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**
**KOTOBA**Dialogs

|                    |                          |          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|----------|
| <b>sakaya</b>      | wine merchant            | さかや      |
| <b>biiru</b>       | beer                     | ビール      |
| <b>wan paku</b>    | one pack                 | ワンパック    |
| <b>akai</b>        | red                      | あかい      |
| <b>kekko(desu)</b> | that's o.k., that's fine | けっこう(です) |
| <b>mata</b>        | again                    | また       |
| <b>kimasu</b>      | come                     | きます      |
| <b>niku</b>        | meat                     | にく       |
| <b>kauntaa</b>     | counter                  | カウンター    |
| <b>guramu</b>      | gram                     | グラム      |

Practice

|                 |                            |       |
|-----------------|----------------------------|-------|
| <b>sakana</b>   | fish                       | さかな   |
| <b>aoi</b>      | blue                       | あおい   |
| <b>mikan</b>    | tangerine, mandarin orange | みかん   |
| <b>kiro</b>     | kilogram/kilometer         | キロ    |
| <b>hankachi</b> | handkerchief               | ハンカチ  |
| <b>shiroi</b>   | white                      | しろい   |
| <b>ebi</b>      | shrimp                     | えび    |
| <b>okome</b>    | (uncooked) rice            | (お)こめ |

Notes

|                 |                     |       |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------|
| <b>man</b>      | ten thousand        | まん    |
| <b>gyuuniku</b> | beef                | ぎゅうにく |
| <b>ringo</b>    | apple               | りんご   |
| <b>ten</b>      | point (in decimals) | てん    |

|                  |  |       |
|------------------|--|-------|
| <b>yasuku</b>    | cheap (ku form of yasui)                 | やすく   |
| <b>narimasen</b> | doesn't become<br>(negative of narimasu) | なりません |

**Personalized list**

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Reading Numbers**

We have so far learned the numbers up to 9,999. Japanese has a special word for ten thousand, which is *man* (万). Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after the instructor:

|           |                     |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 10,000    | <i>ichi-man</i>     |
| 20,000    | <i>ni-man</i>       |
| 30,000    | <i>san-man</i>      |
| 40,000    | <i>yon-man</i>      |
| 50,000    | <i>go-man</i>       |
| 60,000    | <i>roku-man</i>     |
| 70,000    | <i>nana-man</i>     |
| 80,000    | <i>hachi-man</i>    |
| 90,000    | <i>kyuu-man</i>     |
| 100,000   | <i>juu-man</i>      |
| 110,000   | <i>juu-ichi-man</i> |
| .         | .                   |
| .         | .                   |
| .         | .                   |
| .         | .                   |
| .         | .                   |
| 1,000,000 | <i>hyaku-man</i>    |

Now read aloud the following:

- |            |              |               |
|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. 18,047  | 5. 85,816    | 9. 46,925     |
| 2. 74,553  | 6. 36,230    | 10. 51,395    |
| 3. 44,602  | 7. 99,267    | 11. 107,489   |
| 4. 135,000 | 8. 3,000,000 | 12. 7,560,000 |

**B. Reading Numbers**

As mentioned earlier, Kanji numerals are also used in written Japanese. You will find them on some price tags at neighborhood grocery stores, fish stores, etc.

Practice reading the following Kanji numerals by comparing them with the Arabic numerals they follow:

|    |   |       |         |
|----|---|-------|---------|
| 1  | 一 | 11    | 十一      |
| 2  | 二 | 13    | 十三      |
| 3  | 三 | 15    | 十五      |
| 4  | 四 | 17    | 十七      |
| 5  | 五 | 19    | 十九      |
| 6  | 六 | 20    | 二十      |
| 7  | 七 | 456   | 四百五十六   |
| 8  | 八 | 123   | 百二十三    |
| 9  | 九 | 1,368 | 千三百六十八  |
| 10 | 十 | 2,789 | 二千七百八十九 |

Match the following Arabic numbers with the corresponding Kanji numbers

|        |    |
|--------|----|
| 8      | 三  |
| 10     | 九  |
| 5      | 百  |
| 7      | 一  |
| 3      | 四  |
| 100    | 千  |
| 1      | 二  |
| 6      | 十  |
| 2      | 五  |
| 1,000  | 八  |
| 9      | 六  |
| 4      | 七  |
| 10,000 | 一万 |

## Lesson 18 Making a decision

Yen is written in Kanji as 円. Rewrite the following prices using Arabic numbers:

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. | 6. | 7. | 8. |
| 七  | 五  | 八  | 四  | 六  | 九  | 三  | 十  |
| 万  | 万  | 十  | 十  | 万  | 万  | 千  | 二  |
| 四  | 九  | 六  | 七  | 九  | 四  | 七  | 万  |
| 千  | 千  | 万  | 万  | 千  | 千  | 百  | 八  |
| 八  | 円  | 六  | 円  | 五  | 円  | 円  | 千  |
| 百  |    | 千  |    | 百  |    |    | 円  |
| 円  |    | 円  |    | 円  |    |    |    |

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

### C. Substitution Drill

Sore o hitotsu kudasai.

Akai no  
mittsu  
Sono sakana  
Chiisai no  
futatsu  
Ookii no  
Aoi no

### D. Substitution Drill

Kono niku o 300 guramu kudasai.

500 guramu  
Ookii no  
800-en no  
Chiisai no  
1 kiro  
Kore

**E. Combination Drill**

(cue) aoi seetaa, akai seetaa  
 (response) Aoi no to akai no o kudasai.

ookii ringo, chiisai ringo  
 100-en no mikan, 150-en no mikan  
 L saizu no shatsu, S saizu no shatsu  
 kore, sore  
 kono sukaafu, sono sukaafu

**F. Put the following words in the correct order to form a sentence:**

1. kudasai, 600 guramu, 1,200-en, o, niku, no
2. seetaa, ikura, wa, ano, desu, ka?
3. to, no, futatsu, yottsu, kudasai, ookii, chiisai, no, o
4. hankachi, kono, kudasai, futatsu, o
5. 2 kiro, o, 1 kiro, kono, 550-en, no mikan, kudasai
6. mittsu, o, sukaafu, kudasai, shiroi, sono
7. 2,000-en, 3,500-en, gozaimasu, to, no, ga, no

**G. Production Exercise**

Directions:

The student chooses an item from the list below and asks the price. The instructor tells the student the kinds available. The student chooses one kind and requests the amount given in the list below. The instructor then gives the total price. The student listens carefully to be sure that the amount is correct.

Example:

*Student:* Gyuuniku wa ikura desu ka?  
*Instructor:* 100 guramu 1,200-en (no) to 1,500-en no ga arimasu.  
*Student:* 1,200-en no o 600 guramu kudasai.  
*Instructor:* 7,200-en desu.



## Lesson 18 Making a decision

|                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| Student's list     | 在 教師は適当に値段を用意する |
| <u>Item to buy</u> | <u>Amount</u>   |
| gyuuniku           | 600 g           |
| mikan              | 2 kg            |
| ringo              | 5               |
| ebi                | 500 g           |
| okome              | 1 kg            |

### H. Comprehension and Production Exercise

Listen to what the instructor says. Respond by selecting the appropriate English equivalent below and translating it into Japanese.

- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (Then, never mind.)  
(Do you have a different one?)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (Please give me 2kg of the one that is 1,500 yen.)  
(I'll take one of the red ones.)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (I'll take one of the red ones.)  
(Please give me 2kg of the one that is 1,500 yen.)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (Please give me 500g of the one that is 300 yen.)  
(I'll take one of the blue ones.)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (Then I'll come again.)  
(I'll take 200g of the one that is 1,300 yen.)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (I'll take two of those that are 1,300 yen each.)  
(I'll take 200g of the one that is 1,300 yen.)
- Instructor:*  
*Student:* (Give me two of those that are 800 yen each.)  
(Give me 200g of the one that is 500 yen.)

教師用スクリプト

- 1 あいにくですか、これだけです。
- 2 一キロ、千円と千五百円ですか
- 3 白いのと、赤いのかこちらにこさいます。
- 4 百グラム三百円と四百円です。
- 5 百グラム千円と千三百円です。
- 6 こちらは一つ千三百円で、そちらは、一つ千五百円でこさいます。
- 7 こちらは百グラム五百円で、そちらは百グラム八百円ですか。

## I. Comprehension and Production Exercise

Directions

Listen to the instructor's statement and respond appropriately.

Example.

**Instructor:** L saizu to M saizu dake desu ga . . .

**Student:** Soo desu ka. Jaa, L saizu no o kudasai. OR  
Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata kimasu.

教師用スクリプト

- 1 千円のと千二百円のかこさいます。
- 2 大きいのはありますか、小さいのはありません。
- 3 あいにくですか、これだけです。
- 4 LLサイズはありますか、LとMはありません。
- 5 あいにくですか、ちかう形のはこさいません。
- 6 一つ三百円ですか、四つ千円です。
- 7 ちかう色は、赤と青だけです。
- 8 百グラム二百円と三百円です。
- 9 お客様、あいにくですか、ちょっと
- 10 こちらは百グラム二百円、こちらは三百円です。

## J. Put the following words in the correct order to form a sentence:

1. misete, moo sukoshi, kudasai, yasui, no, o
2. kudasai, mitssu, kore, o
3. ringo, kono, o, kudasai, futatsu
4. misete, kono, kudasai, seetaa, o
5. moo sukoshi, misete, kudasai, o, ookii no
6. iro, misete, chigau, no, o, kudasai
7. yasui, wa, moo sukoshi, ka, no, arimasu
8. moo sukoshi, ka, arimasu, wa, ookii no
9. katachi, wa, ka, chigau, arimasu
10. saizu, ga, no, arimasu, chigau, ka

---

---

**READING**

---

---

---

---

**KANJI**

---

---

- |         |            |                        |
|---------|------------|------------------------|
| 1. 非常口  | hijooguchi | emergency exit         |
| 2. 指定席  | shiteeseki | reserved seat          |
| 3. 自由席  | jiyuuseki  | general admission seat |
| 4. 地下   | chika      | basement               |
| 5. 商店街  | shootengai | shopping street        |
| 6. 横断歩道 | oodanhodoo | pedestrian crossing    |
| 7. 注意   | chuui      | caution                |
| 8. 止まれ  | tomare     | stop                   |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Kore o kudasai* 'I'll take this' or 'Please give me this'

As we learned in Lesson 15, the word *kudasai* can be used, with a verb *te*-form before it, when you make a request. For example, when you want to see some merchandise, you can say to the clerk *Kore o misete kudasai* 'Please show me this one.' The word *kudasai* can also be used independently, as the following example illustrates:

**Kore o kudasai.**

*(Please) give me this.*

As the English equivalent indicates, the word *kudasai* by itself means '(Please) give me.' Thus, we can use it when we want to say something like 'I'll take this' in a store. Please note that the word that refers to the thing you want, followed by the particle *o*, is placed before *kudasai*. However, here again, as in *onegai shimasu*, the particle *o* can be omitted in conversation.

When you want to say 'I'll take three of these' or 'Please give me three of these,' you simply add the number (and a counter) in front of *kudasai*, as in the following example:

**Kore o mittsu kudasai.**

*Please give me three of these.*

Please note that a native Japanese numeral is used in the above example. As explained in Lesson 10, Japanese uses different counters for different objects. *-tsu* is the general-purpose counter always used with the native Japanese numerals from one to nine. When you are not sure of the appropriate counter for the thing you want, use the native Japanese numeral and *-tsu*. Although in some cases this may sound odd to a Japanese person, it is comprehensible.

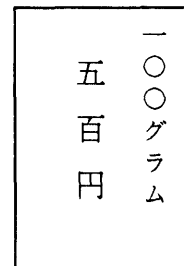
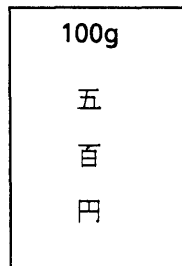
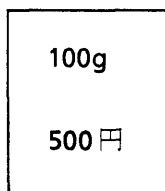
Likewise, when you want to say 'I'll take 100 grams of that,' you can say:

**Sore o hyaku-guramu kudasai.**

*Please give me 100 grams of that.*

### 2. *How to say '500 yen per 100 grams'*

At grocery stores, fish stores, etc., the price tags are often written in the following ways:



Note: The tags above are read as 100 guramu 500 yen

## Lesson 18 Making a decision

When you refer to beef that is 300 yen per 100 grams, for example, you can say:

**100 guramu 300-en no (gyuu)niku**

This expression can be generalized into the following pattern

Unit (100 g, 1 kg, etc.) price no merchandise

e.g. **100 guramu 500-en no gyuuniku**      *100 g of the beef that is 500 yen*

**1 kiro 300-en no ringo**      *1 kg of the apples that are 300 yen*

However, as we discussed in Lesson 17, when you have been talking about a particular item or when you choose one from among several, it is not necessary to say its name again. You can simply say.

**100 guramu 500-en no**      *the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

When you want to order 200 g of the merchandise that is 500 yen for 100 grams, for example, you can use the following expression

**100 guramu 500-en no o 200 guramu kudasai.**      *Please give me 200 g of the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

You may have noticed that this expression is merely an expansion of what we discussed above. Compare the following

**Kore o 200 guramu kudasai.**      *Please give me 200 g of this*

**100 guramu 500-en no o 200 guramu kudasai**      *Please give me 200 g of the one that is 500 yen for 100 g*

### 3. **When you decide not to buy anything and you want to leave the store**

When you find out that the store doesn't carry the item you want and you want to leave, you can use the following expressions

**Jaa, kekkoo desu.**      (lit., 'Well, that's all right')

The word *kekkoo* means 'fine' or 'all right.' The above expression means something like 'If you don't have the merchandise I want, then I'll go without (i.e., I won't buy).'

When you leave the store, you may want to express your gratitude to the clerk for showing you the merchandise by saying *Doomo* (arigatoo), etc.

When you can't find what you want and you want to leave the store, you may say something like 'I'll come again.' This can be expressed as follows:

**Jaa, mata kimasu.**      *Well, I'll come again*

#### 4. *Bargaining*

Ordinarily, you don't bargain in Japan (especially at department stores). However, at small shops such as antique shops, for example, there are cases in which people do bargain. However, you should try to bargain only after observing other customers to find out whether it is acceptable to bargain at the shop you are in, for bargaining can be offensive to the clerk or shopkeeper.

When you want to bargain, you can use the following expression:

**Moo sukoshi yasuku narimasen ka?**

*'Can't you make it cheaper?'* (lit., Won't it become a little cheaper?)

---

---

会話

---

---

Situation 1

ムアー アメリカのヒールはありますか。  
酒屋 スス ハトワイサーとニューリノノたけてすか  
ムアー じゃあ、ハトワイサーをワンパンクください。  
酒屋 1,200円です。ありがとっございました。

Situation 2

アンターノン すみません。このネクタイとそのネクタイを見せてください。  
店員 はい、どうぞ。  
アンターノン これはいくらですか。  
店員 3,500円です。  
アンターノン そうですか、じゃあ、これをください。

Situation 3

ケリー そのセーターを見せてください。  
店員 はい。  
ケリー 赤いのはありますか。  
店員 あいにくいですか、こちらたけてす。  
ケリー そうですか。じゃあ、結構です。また来ます。

Situation 4

キース すきやきの肉はありますか。  
肉屋 ええ、あちらのカウンターです。  
  
キース これはいくらですか。  
肉屋 100グラム、1,400円です。こちらは1,700円です。  
キース じゃあ、1,400円のを600グラム、ください。

Lesson 19

PAYING AND RECEIVING CHANGE

いくらですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out the total price you should pay
- deal with a cashier
- deal with cases in which you are shortchanged





---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Kraft goes to a neighborhood vegetable store .*

- |                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <b>Kurafuto:</b> | <b>Kono mikan kudasai. Ikura desu ka?</b>                            | <i>I'd like these oranges.<br/>How much are they?</i>             |
| <b>Yaoya:</b>    | <b>Hito-yama 550-en desu.</b>  | <i>550 yen per pile.</i>  |
| <b>Kurafuto:</b> | <b>Sore kara, hoorensoo to retasu kudasai.</b>                       | <i>Then I'd like some spinach<br/>and lettuce.</i>                |
| <b>Yaoya:</b>    | <b>Hoorensoo wa ichi-wa 250-en, retasu<br/>wa ik-ko 200-en desu.</b> | <i>Spinach is 250 yen a bunch,<br/>lettuce is 200 yen a head.</i> |
| <b>Kurafuto:</b> | <b>Zenbu de ikura desu ka?</b>                                       | <i>How much is it in all?</i>                                     |
| <b>Yaoya:</b>    | <b>Choodo 1000-en ni narimasu.<br/>Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.</b>     | <i>It comes to exactly 1000 yen.<br/>Thank you very much.</i>     |

### Situation 2

*Mr Hunter picks up a few English language books at a bookstore and takes them to the cashier.*

- |                |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|
| <b>Hantaa:</b> | <b>Kore o kudasai.</b>  | <i>(I'd like to buy) these, please.</i>   |
| <b>Ten-in:</b> | <b>Kashikomarimashita.<br/>Ichiman-en oazukari itashimasu.<br/>Shooshoo omachi kudasaimase.</b> | <i>Certainly.<br/>I've received 10,000 yen.<br/>Please wait a moment.</i>       |
|                | . . .   | . . .   |
| <b>Ten-in:</b> | <b>Omatase itashimashita. Hap-pyaku<br/>gojuu-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu.</b>                   | <i>I'm sorry to have kept you<br/>waiting.<br/>Here is the change, 850 yen.</i> |

### Situation 3

*Mrs. Dixon buys some vegetables for 380 yen at the neighborhood grocery store. Since Mrs. Dixon had given the grocer a thousand yen bill, the change should be 620 yen.*

- |                 |   |   |
|-----------------|---|---|
| <b>Yaoya:</b>   | <b>Hai, doomo. Hyaku nijuu-en no<br/>otsuri desu.</b> | <i>Here you are. Thank you.<br/>This is your change of 120 yen.</i> |
| <b>Dikuson:</b> | <b>Anoo. . . ima sen-en watashimashita ga. . .</b>    | <i>Uh... I just gave you 1,000 yen.</i>                             |
| <b>Yaoya:</b>   | <b>A, doomo sumimasen.</b>                            | <i>Oh, I'm sorry.</i>   |
|                 | . . .   | . . .   |
| <b>Yaoya:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen ne. Mata doozo.</b>                      | <i>I'm sorry Please come again.</i>                                 |

## VOCABULARY

## KOTOBA

Dialogs

|                             |   |                   |
|-----------------------------|---|-------------------|
| hito-yama                   | a pile  | ひとやま              |
| hoorensoo                   | spinach   | ほうれんそう            |
| ichi-wa                     | a bunch   | いちわ               |
| retasu                      | lettuce   | レタス               |
| ik-ko                       | one   | いっこ               |
| zenbu de                    | altogether  | ぜんぶで              |
| zenbu                       | all   | ぜんぶ               |
| narimasu                    | become  | なります              |
| maido arigatoo<br>gozaimasu | thank you very much<br>(used by shop clerks)        | まいどありがとう<br>ごぞいます |
| shooshoo                    | a little  | しょうしょう            |
| oazukari itashimasu         | I'm taking (deferential)                            | おあずかりいたします        |
| kudasaimase                 | Please (very polite)                                | くださいませ            |
| omatase itashimashita       | I'm sorry to have kept<br>you waiting (deferential) | おまたせいたしました        |
| okaeshi de gozaimasu        | your change is. . .<br>(deferential)                | おかえしでございます        |
| otsuri                      | change (money)                                      | おつり               |
| ima                         | now   | いま                |
| watashimashita              | handed over   | わたしました            |

Practice

|                         |                                 |            |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|------------|
| shitsuree itashimashita | I'm sorry,<br>I beg your pardon | しつれいいたしました |
| nashi                   | pear                            | なし         |
| ninjin                  | carrot                          | にんじん       |
| kyuuri                  | cucumber                        | きゅうり       |
| kyabetsu                | cabbage                         | キャベツ       |
| tomato                  | tomato                          | トマト        |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Production and Comprehension Exercise** (注: 教師は適宜に答える)

Directions:

The student asks how much several items cost altogether. The instructor answers and the student repeats and writes down the price. Then the instructor checks whether or not the student got the correct price.

Example:

*Student:* Zenbu de ikura desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Ichiman sanzen-en de gozaimasu.  
*Student:* Ichiman sanzen-en desu ne.  
 (writes 13,000)  
*Instructor:* (checks the student's answer)

Answer sheet

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |

**B. Substitution Exercise**

Directions:

Substitute the various yen amounts listed for gosen-en in the example sentence.

Example:

Ima gosen-en watashimashita ga. . .

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 1. ¥10,000 | 6. ¥30,000 |
| 2. ¥8,000  | 7. ¥6,000  |
| 3. ¥20,000 | 8. ¥2,500  |
| 4. ¥50,000 | 9. ¥7,000  |
| 5. ¥15,000 | 10. ¥3,000 |

C. *Comprehension Exercise*

(注: 教師は適宜に答える)

Directions:

The instructor returns change to the student. The student then thanks him/her and writes down the amount heard. Finally, the instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

*Instructor:* Omatase itashimashita.  
Nisen sanbyaku-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu.  
*Student:* Doomo. (writes down 2,300)  
*Instructor:* (checks the student's answer)

Answer sheet

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |

D. *Substitution & Comprehension Exercise*

Directions:

The student requests fruits or vegetables as given in the list below and asks how much they are. The instructor answers that they cost so-and-so much for a certain amount. The student acknowledges the instructor's response and writes down what s/he has heard. Then the instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

*Student:* Kono mikan kudasai. Ikura desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hito-yama 550-en desu.  
*Student:* Aa soo desu ka. (writes down 1 pile = 550-en)  
*Instructor:* (checks the student's answer)

Student's list

1. Kono kyuuri
2. ano ninjin
3. kyabetsu
4. sono tomato
5. nashi
6. ano ringo

教師用スクリプト

一本 四十円ですが...  
一山 三百五十円でございます。  
一個 百八十円。  
百グラム 百四十五円です。  
一個 百五十円、三個で四百円ですよ。  
大は一つ二百五十円で 小は百二十円です。

## ***E. Translation & Substitution Exercise***

Directions:

The instructor welcomes the student. The student then states that s/he wishes to buy various amounts of fruits and vegetables as given in the list below. The instructor then confirms what s/he has heard.

Example:

*Instructor:*    **Irasshaimase.**

*Student:*      **Hooensoo ni-wa to retasu hitotsu kudasai.**

*Instructor:*    **Hooensoo ni-wa to retasu hitotsu desu ne.**

Student's list

1. one cabbage and a pile of cucumbers
2. three apples and two pears
3. a pile of tomatoes and one cabbage
4. five pears and a pile of carrots
5. two piles of apples and a head of lettuce

**F. Comprehension Drill**

Arrange the following sentences in the right order and give a rough translation of each dialog to the instructor (write the letters of the exchanges in the correct order in the answer space provided):

1. A: 7,800-en desu.  
B: Kore desu ka? Doozo.  
C: Sono akai seetaa o misete kudasai.  
D: Jaa, kore o kudasai.  
E: Ikura desu ka?

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

2. A: Moo sukoshi yasui no wa arimasu ka?  
B: 800-en desu.  
C: Ainiku desu ga...  
D: Sono tokee wa ikura desu ka?  
E: Jaa, kekkoo desu.

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

3. A: Omatase itashimashita. 800-en no okaeshi de gozaimasu.  
B: Hitotsu kudasai.  
C: 2,000-en oazukari itashimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.  
D: Kore wa ikura desu ka?  
E: 1,200-en de gozaimasu.

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

4. A: Sumimasen, kore o kudasai.  
B: Omatase itashimashita.  
C: Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.  
D: Hai, 3,000-en oazukari itashimasu.  
E: 300-en no otsuri desu.

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

5. A: Kashikomarimashita.  
B: Kore wa ikura desu ka?  
C: Jaa, kore o kudasai.  
D: 2,500-en desu.  
E: Dooom arigatoo gozaimashita.  
F: Mata doozo.

Answer: \_\_\_\_\_

**G. Comprehension Exercise**

Listen to the conversation on the tape twice, aiming for overall understanding. Then fill in the chart while listening to the tape again. Check your answers by listening to the tape for a fourth time.

| Conversation No                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Question  |   |   |   |   |   |
| Did the customer buy the merchandise?<br>(yes/no) |   |   |   |   |   |
| What did the customer buy?                        |   |   |   |   |   |
| How much did it cost?                             |   |   |   |   |   |
| Did the customer receive change?<br>(yes/no)      |   |   |   |   |   |

テープ用スクリプト

1. A いらっしゃいませ。お客様のですか。  
B 見ているだけです。
2. A すみません、この本を下さい。  
B かしこまりました。千八百円でございます。  
お待たせ致しました。二百円でございます。毎度ありがとうございます。
3. A いらっしゃいませ。  
B そのカメラを見せてください。  
A はい。  
B これはいくらですか。  
A 三万二千元です。  
B そうですか。もう少し安いがありますか。  
A そうですね。二万九千円のは いかかですか。  
B ああ、いいですね。これを下さい。  
A はい。三万円お預かり致します。  
お待たせ致しました。ありがとうございます。千円のお返してございます。

4. A: ちょっと、すみません。もう少し大きいレインコートはありますか。  
B: ちょっとお待ちください。  
お客様、あいにくですが、大きいのはございません。  
A: そうですか。じゃあ.....
5. A: すみません。そのセーターは、いくらですか。  
B: 八千円でございます。  
A: そうですか。赤いのはありますか。  
B: はい、こちらです。  
A: じゃあ、それを下さい。  
B: かしこまりました。一万円お預かり致します。  
お待たせ致しました。二千円のおつりでございます。



---

---

**READING**

---

---

**KANJI**

- |       |           |                          |
|-------|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1. 一山 | hito-yama | one pile                 |
| 2. 一本 | ip-pon    | one (cylindrical object) |
| 3. 一個 | ik-ko     | one unit                 |
| 4. 一把 | ichi-wa   | one bunch                |
| 5. 大  | dai       | large                    |
| 6. 中  | chuu      | medium                   |
| 7. 小  | shoo      | small                    |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *How to ask the total price you pay*

In English, when you have bought several items or you want to make sure of the price you must pay, you might ask 'How much is that in all?' The Japanese expression for this is:

**Zenbu de ikura desu ka?**                      *How much is it altogether?*

### 2. *Otsuri* 'change'

In most shops, you don't have to take the merchandise to the cashier. The clerk will take care of it (bookstores are an exception). Give the merchandise and the money to the clerk. He or she will wrap it and bring it back to you with your change, if there is any.

It often happens, especially in a department store, that the clerk states the amount of money s/he has received from you at the time you pay. In such cases, s/he will say:

**(amount you gave)-en oozukari itashimasu.**  
*I have received (amount you gave) yen.*

The way the clerk gives you change is different in Japan from the normal American practice. When the clerk hands you your change, s/he may say the following:

**X-en no otsuri de gozaimasu.**                      *Here's your change of X-yen.*

(Note: Instead of *otsuri*, *okaeshi* [which literally means 'return'] may also be used.)

In some cases, the clerk may give you your change without stating the amount.

Although it should not happen very frequently, you may occasionally be shortchanged. When this happens, you should make it clear how much you handed to the clerk. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

**Ima X-en watashimashita ga. . .**                      *I gave you X yen.*

Then the clerk will check the change and give you the correct amount.

### 3. *When you leave the store*

When you leave the store, the clerk will probably say one of the following:

**Arigatoo gozaimashita.  
Maido doomo.**

Thank you very much.  
Thank you. (*maido* literally means 'every time' and is often used at neighborhood stores)

**Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.  
Mata doozo.**

*Thank you very much.  
Please come again.*

It is not necessary to say anything in reply to the above but you may say **Sayonara**, if you wish.

### 4. *A different way of giving change*

When you make a small purchase in a Japanese shop and pay for it with a large bill, you might get the impression that at least in one respect the Japanese are not very considerate. The clerk will not hand you the change in the American way, counting it out as s/he hands it to you. Instead, s/he will hand you all the different denominations in a lump, just saying **Arigatoo gozaimasu** 'thank you'.

This method of giving change might appear inconsiderate to those accustomed to the western way. It might even arouse doubts as to whether one has been 'shortchanged'. But if you carefully observe the Japanese customers, you will note that most of them hardly appear to check the amount before putting it away.

It may be that some customers simply trust the clerks or at least don't want to give the impression that they mistrust them. It might also be that some feel that it's unseemly to count money in public. In most cases, however, it's just that the Japanese are good and fast at arithmetic.

The Japanese who pays for a 1,150 yen purchase with a 10,000 yen note has already calculated in his/her head the amount of change s/he should receive. When the change is given, one swift glance and some quick mental arithmetic tells the customer whether it is the correct amount.

Conversely, a Japanese person traveling in the United States for the first time is usually bewildered when the clerk gives change in the American way. S/he would think that it is a lot of unnecessary trouble and excessive consideration for the customer.

## 5. Counters for fruits and vegetables

In English, we can ordinarily put a number directly before the word for a fruit or vegetable, for example, 'one pear, two cabbages, three cucumbers', etc. However, even in English, there are some exceptions such as 'one head of lettuce' or 'two bunches of spinach', where a counter is needed.

In Japanese, all words for fruits and vegetables (as well as many other nouns) require a counter between the number and the word for the fruit or vegetable. Some commonly used counters include:

yama (for piles of apples, oranges, carrots, cucumbers, tomatoes, etc.)  
 wa (for bunches of spinach or carrots, etc.)  
 ko (for heads of lettuce or cabbage, individual apples, oranges, etc.)  
 hon (for individual cucumbers, carrots, etc.)

Notice the forms for the various numbers plus counter:

| NUMBER | YAMA      | WA        | KO             | HON             |
|--------|-----------|-----------|----------------|-----------------|
| one    | hito-yama | ichi-wa   | ik-ko          | ip-pon          |
| two    | futa-yama | ni-wa     | ni-ko          | ni-hon          |
| three  | mi-yama   | san-wa/ba | san-ko         | san-bon         |
| four   |           |           | yon-ko         | yon/shi-hon     |
| five   |           |           | go-ko          | go-hon          |
| six    |           |           | rok-ko         | rop-pon         |
| seven  |           |           | shichi/nana-ko | shichi/nana-hon |
| eight  |           |           | hachi/hak-ko   | hachi/hap-pon   |
| nine   |           |           | kyuu-ko        | kyuu-hon        |
| ten    |           |           | jik/juk-ko     | jip/jup-pon     |

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

クラフト: このみかん、ください。いくらですか。  
八百屋: 一山、550円です。  
クラフト: それから、ほうれん草とレタスください。  
八百屋: ほうれん草は一把 250円、レタスは一個 200円です。  
クラフト: 全部でいくらですか。  
八百屋: ちょうど、1000円になります。  
毎度ありがとうございます。

**Situation 2**

ハンター: これをください。  
店員: かしこまりました。10,000円おあずかりいたします。  
少々お待ちくださいませ。  
...  
店員: お待たせいたしました。  
850円のおかえしでございます。

**Situation 3**

八百屋: はい、どうも。120円のおつりです。  
テイクソン: あのう..... 今、1,000円わたしましたが.....  
八百屋: あ、どうもすみません。  
...  
八百屋: すみませんね。またどうぞ。

Lesson 20

DAILY GREETINGS

いいお天気ですねえ。

In this lesson, you will learn

- common greetings involving weather
- other routine expressions used for daily greetings
- months and dates



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*On the street near his apartment, Mr. Norton sees a nextdoor neighbor walking towards him. They greet each other.*

|                  |                                     |  |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>Nooton:</i>   | <b>Konnichiwa.</b>                  | <i>Good afternoon.</i>                 |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Konnichiwa.</b>                  | <i>Good afternoon.</i>                 |
| <i>Nooton:</i>   | <b>Kyoo wa ii otenki desu ne.</b>   | <i>It's a beautiful day, isn't it?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Hontoo ni ii otenki desu ne.</b> | <i>Yes, it really is.</i>              |

### Situation 2

*A storekeeper in Mrs. Gordon's neighborhood bows and greets her in the morning when she passes by.*

|                  |  |                                       |
|------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Aa, Goodon-san no okusan, ohayoo gozaimasu.</b> | <i>Oh, Mrs Gordon, good morning.</i>  |
| <i>Goodon:</i>   | <b>Ohayoo gozaimasu.</b>                           | <i>Good morning.</i>                  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Iya na otenki desu ne.</b>                      | <i>Nasty weather, isn't it?</i>       |
| <i>Goodon:</i>   | <b>Soo desu ne.</b>                                | <i>Yes, it is.</i>                    |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Dokoka e odekake desu ka?</b>                   | <i>Are you going out somewhere?</i>   |
| <i>Goodon:</i>   | <b>Ee, chotto. . . Jaa, mata, gomen kudasai.</b>   | <i>Yes. Well, I'll see you . bye.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Itte (i)rasshai.</b>                            | <i>Good-bye.</i>                      |

### Situation 3

*Mr. Bishop is walking home from a subway station when a neighborhood shopkeeper sees him. The shopkeeper bows and greets him.*

|                  |                              |                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Konbanwa.</b>             | <i>Good evening.</i>               |
| <i>Bishoppu:</i> | <b>Konbanwa.</b>             | <i>Good evening.</i>               |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Ima okaeri desu ka?</b>   | <i>Are you returning home now?</i> |
| <i>Bishoppu:</i> | <b>Ee. Ja, oyasuminasai.</b> | <i>Yes. Well, good night.</i>      |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Oyasuminasai.</b>         | <i>Good night.</i>                 |

**Situation 4**

*Mr. and Mrs. Nelson are ready to go out for the evening. They have left their children with their babysitter, Michiko*

|                 |  |   |
|-----------------|--|---|
| <b>Neruson:</b> | <b>Jaa, kodomo-tachi (o) onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Well, please look after the children while we are out.</i> |
| <b>Michiko:</b> | <b>Hai. Itte (i)rasshai.</b>                 | <i>Certainly Bye</i>  |
| <b>Neruson:</b> | <b>Itte mairimasu.</b>                       | <i>See you later.</i>   |
|                 | <b>. . .</b>                                 | <b>. . .</b>  |
| <b>Neruson:</b> | <b>Tadaima.</b>                              | <i>We're home.</i>  |
| <b>Michiko:</b> | <b>Okaerinasai.</b>                          | <i>Welcome back.</i>  |
| <b>Neruson:</b> | <b>Kodomo-tachi wa?</b>                      | <i>How are the children?</i>                                  |
| <b>Michiko:</b> | <b>Chotto mae ni nemashita.</b>              | <i>They went to sleep a little while ago.</i>                 |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                 |   |             |
|-----------------|---|-------------|
| kyoo            | today   | きょう         |
| (o)tenki        | weather   | (お)てんき      |
| hontoo ni       | truly   | ほんとうに       |
| hontoo          | true  | ほんとう        |
| iya             | nasty, unpleasant   | いや          |
| dokoka          | somewhere   | どこか         |
| odekake desu    | go out (polite)   | おでかけてす      |
| gomen kudasai   | excuse me; hello (anyone there?);<br>good-bye                     | こめんください     |
| itte (i)rasshai | good-bye (used by the one staying<br>behind; lit., 'go and come') | いって(い)らっしゃい |
| okaeri desu ka? | are you going home? (polite)                                      | おかえりですか     |
| jaa, mata       | so long, see you again later                                      | じゃあまた       |
| oyasuminasai    | good night  | おやすみなさい     |
| itte mairimasu  | I'm going out<br>(lit., 'I'll go and come back')                  | いってまいります    |
| tadaima         | I'm back (used by the one who has<br>returned)                    | たたいま        |
| okaerinasai     | welcome home (used by the<br>one who stayed behind)               | おかえりなさい     |
| kodomo-tachi    | children  | こどもたち       |
| chotto mae ni   | a little while ago  | ちょっとまえ      |
| nemashita       | went to sleep, went to bed<br>(past tense of nemasu)              | ねました        |

Practice

|            |           |       |
|------------|-----------|-------|
| atsui      | hot       | あつい   |
| samui      | cold      | さむい   |
| natsu      | summer    | なつ    |
| fuyu       | winter    | ふゆ    |
| omoi       | heavy     | おもい   |
| muzukashii | difficult | むずかしい |
| ataakai    | warm      | あたたかい |
| suzushii   | cool      | すずしい  |

|                      |           |         |
|----------------------|-----------|---------|
| <b>ichi-gatsu</b>    | January   | いちかつ    |
| <b>ni-gatsu</b>      | February  | にかつ     |
| <b>san-gatsu</b>     | March     | さんかつ    |
| <b>shi-gatsu</b>     | April     | しかつ     |
| <b>go-gatsu</b>      | May       | こかつ     |
| <b>roku-gatsu</b>    | June      | ろくかつ    |
| <b>shichi-gatsu</b>  | July      | しちかつ    |
| <b>hachi-gatsu</b>   | August    | はちかつ    |
| <b>ku-gatsu</b>      | September | くかつ     |
| <b>juu-gatsu</b>     | October   | しゅうかつ   |
| <b>juuichi-gatsu</b> | November  | しゅういちかつ |
| <b>juuni-gatsu</b>   | December  | しゅうにかつ  |

**Notes**

|                           |   |            |
|---------------------------|---|------------|
| <b>chotto (soko made)</b> | just over there (answers 'where are you going?' used as a greeting) | ちよっと(そこまで) |
| <b>haru</b>               | spring  | はる         |
| <b>aki</b>                | fall  | あき         |
| <b>...do</b>              | degree (of temperature)   | と          |
| <b>tsuyu</b>              | rainy season  | つゆ         |

**Supplement**

|                      |  |         |
|----------------------|--|---------|
| <b>tsuitachi</b>     | first day of the month                 | ついたち    |
| <b>futsu-ka</b>      | second day of the month, two days      | ふつか     |
| <b>mik-ka</b>        | third day of the month, three days     | みっか     |
| <b>yok-ka</b>        | fourth day of the month, four days     | よっか     |
| <b>itsu-ka</b>       | fifth day of the month, five days      | いつか     |
| <b>mui-ka</b>        | sixth day of the month, six days       | むいか     |
| <b>nano-ka</b>       | seventh day of the month, seven days   | なのか     |
| <b>yoo-ka</b>        | eighth day of the month, eight days    | ようか     |
| <b>kokono-ka</b>     | ninth day of the month, nine days      | ここのか    |
| <b>too-ka</b>        | tenth day of the month, ten days       | とおか     |
| <b>juuichi-nichi</b> | eleventh day of the month, eleven days | しゅういちにち |
| <b>juuni-nichi</b>   | twelfth day of the month, twelve days  | しゅうににち  |

## Lesson 20 Daily greetings

|                         |   |           |
|-------------------------|---|-----------|
| <b>juuyok-ka</b>        | fourteenth day of the month, fourteen days          | じゅうよっか    |
| <b>hatsuka</b>          | twentieth day of the month, twenty days             | はつか       |
| <b>nijuuuyok-ka</b>     | twenty-fourth day of the month,<br>twenty-four days | にじゅうよっか   |
| <b>sanjuu-nichi</b>     | thirtieth day of the month, thirty days             | さんじゅうにち   |
| <b>sanjuuichi-nichi</b> | thirty-first day of the month, thirty-one days      | さんじゅういちにち |

### Personalized list

## PRACTICE

## RENSHUU

## A. Production Drill

Greet the instructor by repeating what s/he said.

Example:

*Instructor:* Ohayoo gozaimasu.  
*Student:* Ohayoo gozaimasu.

教師用スクリプト

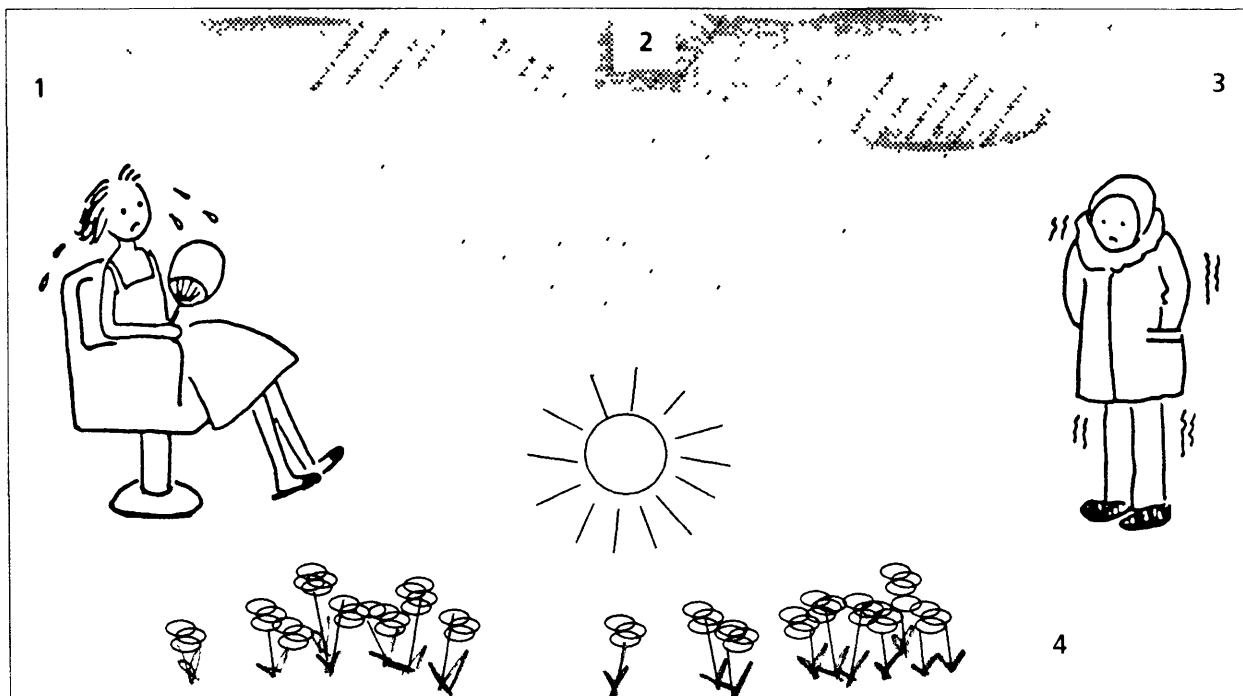
|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 暑いですねえ。      | 今日は。          |
| いい(お)天気ですねえ。 | 今晚は。寒いですねえ。   |
| お休みなさい。      | 暖かいですねえ。      |
| 涼しいですねえ。     | いやな(お)天気ですねえ。 |

## B. Production Drill

Greet the instructor, using the illustrations below as cues.

Example.

*Student:* Atsui desu ne. (referring to illustration 1)  
*Instructor:* (responds with an appropriate greeting)



### C. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The instructor greets a student. The student returns the greeting by selecting an appropriate response from the list below and ends the conversation with *Jaa, mata* or *Jaa, gomen kudasai*.

Example.

*Instructor:* **Konnichiwa.**

*Student:* **Konnichiwa.**

*Instructor:* **Kyoo wa atsui desu ne.**

*Student:* **Ee, atsui desu ne. OR Soo desu ne.**

**Jaa, mata. OR Jaa, gomen kudasai.**

任 教師は適当にませて挨拶する

おはようございます。

いやなお天気ですねえ。

今晚は。

今、お帰りですか。

寒いですね。

どこかへお出かけてですか。

いっぺんいらっしやい。

いいお天気ですねえ。

今日は。

今日は暑いですねえ。

じゃ、お休みなさい。

じゃ、こめんください。

今日は暖かいですねえ。

Student's choice

**Atsui desu ne.**

**Ee, chotto...**

**Soo desu ne.**

**Hontoo ni...**

**Konbanwa.**

**Iya na (o)tenki desu ne.**

**Oyasuminasai.**

**Ee.**

**Ohayoo gozaimasu.**

**Konnichiwa.**

**Itte mairimasu.**

**Jaa, gomen kudasai.**

**Ja, mata.**

### D. Production Exercise

What do you say in the following situations?

1. You meet your next door neighbor in the morning on a cold day.
2. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper in the evening. The weather is nasty.
3. You meet someone who lives in your apartment building during the day. It's a very hot day.
4. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper in the morning. The weather is beautiful.
5. You come home from a concert. The babysitter greets you.
6. You meet a neighborhood shopkeeper who greets you by asking 'Are you going out somewhere?'
7. You meet a next door neighbor who asks 'Are you returning home now?'

**E. Names of the months**

Directions:

Repeat after the instructor.

|     |           |
|-----|-----------|
| 一月  | January   |
| 二月  | February  |
| 三月  | March     |
| 四月  | April     |
| 五月  | May       |
| 六月  | June      |
| 七月  | July      |
| 八月  | August    |
| 九月  | September |
| 十月  | October   |
| 十一月 | November  |
| 十二月 | December  |

**F. Matching Exercise**

Directions:

Match the Kanji below with the corresponding English translation.

|     |           |
|-----|-----------|
| 八月  | February  |
| 三月  | September |
| 十一月 | April     |
| 五月  | December  |
| 二月  | June      |
| 七月  | August    |
| 十二月 | November  |
| 六月  | July      |
| 一月  | October   |
| 十月  | May       |
| 四月  | January   |
| 九月  | March     |

### G. Translation Exercise

Directions: Translate the following Kanji into English.

- |       |        |         |
|-------|--------|---------|
| 1. 九月 | 5. 五月  | 9. 一月   |
| 2. 六月 | 6. 十月  | 10. 四月  |
| 3. 八月 | 7. 二月  | 11. 十二月 |
| 4. 七月 | 8. 十一月 | 12. 三月  |

### H. Completion Drill

Directions: Choose the expression which correctly completes each sentence.

1. Washinton no natsu wa
  - a. atsui desu.
  - b. atsuku arimasen.
2. Furorida no fuyu wa
  - a. samui desu.
  - b. samuku arimasen.
3. Amerika kara Nihon made
  - a. tooi desu.
  - b. tooku arimasen.
4. Nyuuyooku no fuyu wa
  - a. samui desu.
  - b. samuku arimasen.
5. Kanada no natsu wa
  - a. atsui desu.
  - b. atsuku arimasen.

### I. Transformation Drill

Directions: Transform the following sentences into the negative.

1. Koko kara eki made tooi desu.
2. Koko wa samui desu.
3. Kore wa omoi desu.
4. Tanaka-san no kuruma wa chiisai desu.
5. Nihongo wa muzukashii desu.
6. Koko wa atatakai desu.
7. Koko wa suzushii desu.

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |         |                |             |
|---------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. 駐車禁止 | chuusha kinshi | no parking  |
| 2. 制限速度 | seegen sokudo  | speed limit |
| 3. 一時停止 | ichiji teeshi  | stop        |
| 4. 駐車場  | chuushajoo     | parking lot |



## Supplementary materials

### A. Repetition Drill

The following is a table of the months in Japanese. Fill in the blanks and repeat after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| January   | ichi-gatsu   |
| February  | ni-gatsu     |
| March     | san-gatsu    |
| April     | shi-gatsu    |
| May       | (     )gatsu |
| June      | (     )gatsu |
| July      | (     )gatsu |
| August    | (     )gatsu |
| September | ku-gatsu     |
| October   | (     )      |
| November  | (     )      |
| December  | (     )      |

### B. Dictation Practice

The instructor will dictate the names of various months. Write down in English what you hear.

注：教師は適宜に一月から十二月まで言う

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  | 11. |
| 2. | 7.  | 12. |
| 3. | 8.  | 13. |
| 4. | 9.  | 14. |
| 5. | 10. | 15. |

C. *Days of the months*

1. Repeat after your instructor.

|       |                      |     |       |                          |      |
|-------|----------------------|-----|-------|--------------------------|------|
| 1st:  | <b>tsuitachi</b>     | 一日  | 17th: | <b>juushichi-nichi</b>   | 十七日  |
| 2nd:  | <b>futsu-ka</b>      | 二日  | 18th: | <b>juuhachi-nichi</b>    | 十八日  |
| 3rd:  | <b>mik-ka</b>        | 三日  | 19th: | <b>juuku-nichi</b>       | 十九日  |
| 4th:  | <b>yok-ka</b>        | 四日  | 20th: | <b>hatsuka</b>           | 二十日  |
| 5th:  | <b>itsu-ka</b>       | 五日  | 21st: | <b>nijuuichi-nichi</b>   | 二十一日 |
| 6th:  | <b>mui-ka</b>        | 六日  | 22nd: | <b>nijuuni-nichi</b>     | 二十二日 |
| 7th:  | <b>nano-ka</b>       | 七日  | 23rd: | <b>nijuusan-nichi</b>    | 二十三日 |
| 8th:  | <b>yoo-ka</b>        | 八日  | 24th: | <b>nijuuyok-ka</b>       | 二十四日 |
| 9th:  | <b>kokono-ka</b>     | 九日  | 25th: | <b>nijuugo-nichi</b>     | 二十五日 |
| 10th: | <b>too-ka</b>        | 十日  | 26th: | <b>nijuuroku-nichi</b>   | 二十六日 |
| 11th: | <b>juuichi-nichi</b> | 十一日 | 27th: | <b>nijuushichi-nichi</b> | 二十七日 |
| 12th: | <b>juuni-nichi</b>   | 十二日 | 28th: | <b>nijuuhachi-nichi</b>  | 二十八日 |
| 13th: | <b>juusan-nichi</b>  | 十三日 | 29th: | <b>nijuuku-nichi</b>     | 二十九日 |
| 14th: | <b>juuyok-ka</b>     | 十四日 | 30th: | <b>sanjuu-nichi</b>      | 三十日  |
| 15th: | <b>juugo-nichi</b>   | 十五日 | 31st: | <b>sanjuuichi-nichi</b>  | 三十一日 |
| 16th: | <b>juuroku-nichi</b> | 十六日 |       |                          |      |

## Lesson 20 Daily greetings

2. The instructor will give several days of the month. Write down what you hear.

注：教師は適宜に日にちを言う

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  | 11. |
| 2. | 7.  | 12. |
| 3. | 8.  | 13. |
| 4. | 9.  | 14. |
| 5. | 10. | 15. |

3. Match the following:

- |              |        |
|--------------|--------|
| 1. yok-ka    | a. 五日  |
| 2. too-ka    | b. 七日  |
| 3. mik-ka    | c. 一日  |
| 4. nano-ka   | d. 六日  |
| 5. futsu-ka  | e. 二十日 |
| 6. mui-ka    | f. 八日  |
| 7. kokono-ka | g. 二日  |
| 8. tsuitachi | h. 四日  |
| 9. hatsuka   | i. 三日  |
| 10. yoo-ka   | j. 九日  |
| 11. itsu-ka  | k. 十日  |

4. Read the following Kanji:

- |         |        |          |
|---------|--------|----------|
| 1. 三日   | 6. 五日  | 11. 十八日  |
| 2. 六日   | 7. 十日  | 12. 十四日  |
| 3. 二日   | 8. 九日  | 13. 一日   |
| 4. 二十四日 | 9. 七日  | 14. 三十日  |
| 5. 四日   | 10. 八日 | 15. 二十七日 |

注：教師はカレンダーを使って学生に月、日を練習させる

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. Weather terminology and greetings

After exchanging greetings like *Ohayoo gozaimasu* 'Good morning' or *Konnichiwa* 'Good afternoon,' Japanese often mention something about the weather. The weather expressions used in such situations should be taken as a kind of greeting just as in English. However, you may find that the Japanese use these expressions more frequently than Americans. The following are some weather words frequently used in greetings:

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>atsui</b>           | <i>hot</i>                               |
| <b>samui</b>           | <i>cold</i>                              |
| <b>ii (o)tenki</b>     | <i>good weather</i> ([o]tenki = weather) |
| <b>iya na (o)tenki</b> | <i>awful weather</i>                     |

All these words can be used in the following pattern:

**Kyoo wa (atsui) desu.**                      *Today is (hot).*

When Japanese weather expressions are used as greetings, they typically take the form of a request for confirmation, as in English:

*English:*    *It's hot, isn't it?*  
*Japanese:*    **Atsui desu ne.**

Again, as in English, Japanese responses to this kind of greeting are usually in the affirmative (i.e., you say that you agree).

The following are some typical Japanese responses:

a. Simple repetition

**A: Atsui desu ne.**  
**B: Atsui desu ne.**

b. **Soo desu ne.**                      *That is so, isn't it?*

**A: Samui desu ne.**                      *It's cold, isn't it?*  
**B: Soo desu ne.**                      *Yes, isn't it?*

c. **Hontoo desu ne.**                      *That's true, isn't it?*

**A: Ii otenki desu ne.**                      *It's a fine day, isn't it?*  
**B: Hontoo desu ne.**                      *It certainly is.*

## 2. *Where are you going?*

In Lesson 1, you learned that '*How are you?*' functions in English primarily as a greeting and that the expression is not usually used to make an inquiry about the listener's health. The comparable Japanese expression, *Ogenki desu ka?*, is used both as a greeting and as an inquiry about health.

In this lesson, you will learn another such formula. When you go out, your neighbor may say something like the following

**(Ima) odekake desu ka?**                      *Are you going out (now)?*

**Dokoka e odekake desu ka?**              *Are you going somewhere?*

If a person is not familiar with the way these expressions are used, it might seem that the Japanese are very nosy. However, these are routine expressions used as part of a greeting and should not be taken literally. Just like English '*How are you?*', they are used to acknowledge a human relationship. Since this is the case, you don't really have to give exact answers to the 'inquiry.' A typical answer is *Ee, chotto (soko made)* 'Yes, just over there.'

Similarly, when you come home, your neighbor may say

**(Ima) okaeri desu ka?**                      *Are (you) coming home (now)?*

You can simply answer *Ee* to this greeting

## 3. *How to close an encounter*

Often it is more difficult to close a conversation than to open one. This is especially true when speaking a foreign language. In your daily encounters with your Japanese neighbors, it may sometimes happen that greetings become longer than you really want them to be. Look at the following

*Nihonjin:*    **Jonson-san, ohayoo gozaimasu.**

*Jonson:*     **Ohayoo gozaimasu.**

*Nihonjin:*    **Ima odekake desu ka?**

*Jonson:*     **Ee.**

*Nihonjin:*    **Kyoo wa ii otenki desu ne.**

*Jonson:*     **Soo desu ne. Ja, mata.**

Unless Jonson-san shows some sign that he wants to go, the friendly Japanese may feel that s/he has to continue the conversation, although to Jonson-san the conversation may have already become too long (he may be in a rush to get to his office). The expressions Jonson-san needs are '*Excuse me, I have to go now,*' or '*Well, I'll see you,*' or the like. The following are expressions that can be used in the above situation:

**Jaa, mata.**                                      *Well, (see you) again*

**Jaa, gomen kudasai.**                      *Well, excuse me (I have to go)*

Note that **Sayoonara** would sound a little odd in the above situation, for it is usually used when the speaker thinks s/he will not meet the hearer again, at least on the same day.

If a similar conversation takes place late in the evening, **Oyasuminasai** 'Good night' is also appropriate in place of *mata* 'again.' You can use **Gomen kudasai** here, too.

#### 4. Set expressions for greetings

**Itte (i)rasshai.**

*See you. Good-bye.*

**Itte mairimasu.**

*See you. Good-bye.*

The expression **Itte irasshai** literally means '*Please go and come back,*' and **Itte mairimasu** means '*I'll go and come back.*' These expressions are exchanged in a home when a family member leaves. The person going out says **Itte mairimasu** or **Itte kimasu** and those remaining say **Itte (i)rasshai**.

These expressions are also used among non-family members when they feel that they belong to the same group. The concept of 'group' differs in its range depending on the individual, but usually people living in a neighborhood or people working at the same company would be regarded as members of a group.

Ordinarily, you should respond to **Itte irasshai** by saying **Itte mairimasu**. However, once you have said **Jaa, mata** or **Jaa, gomen kudasai**, you don't have to reply to **Itte irasshai**.

**Tadaima**

*I'm back.*

**Okaerinasai.**

*Welcome home.*

**Tadaima** literally means '*right now*' and is said by the person who has returned. The person who has been waiting for the person who has returned says **Okaerinasai**, which literally means '*You have come home.*' In English, people use various expressions when leaving and coming home but in Japan set expressions are used for these occasions. Such expressions as **Konnichiwa**, **Konbanwa** or **Sayoonara** are not used among family members.

#### 5. The four seasons and the Japanese climate

Japan has four seasons, each three months long. March through May are the spring months; June through August, the summer months; September through November, the fall months; and December through February, the winter months. Spring, summer, fall, and winter are called in Japanese **haru**, **natsu**, **aki**, and **fuyu**, respectively. In Japanese, months are literally referred to as '*the first month,*' '*the second month,*' etc., which corresponds to January, February, etc., in English. The following names of the seasons and months are given for reference:

| <u>Season</u> |               | <u>Month</u>      |    |
|---------------|---------------|-------------------|----|
| <b>haru</b>   | <i>spring</i> | <b>san-gatsu</b>  | 三月 |
|               |               | <b>shi-gatsu</b>  | 四月 |
|               |               | <b>go-gatsu</b>   | 五月 |
| <b>natsu</b>  | <i>summer</i> | <b>roku-gatsu</b> | 六月 |

## Lesson 20 Daily greetings

|      |        |               |     |
|------|--------|---------------|-----|
|      |        | shichi-gatsu  | 七月  |
|      |        | hachi-gatsu   | 八月  |
| aki  | fall   | ku-gatsu      | 九月  |
|      |        | juu-gatsu     | 十月  |
|      |        | juuichi-gatsu | 十一月 |
| fuyu | winter | juuni-gatsu   | 十二月 |
|      |        | ichi-gatsu    | 一月  |
|      |        | ni-gatsu      | 二月  |

Generally speaking, the climate of Japan is similar to that of the middle portion of the U.S. The mean temperatures (in Fahrenheit), percent humidity, and number of rainy days during the four seasons in the major cities are as follows:

|         | HARU (spring) |    |    | NATSU (summer) |    |    | AKI (fall) |    |    | FUYU (winter) |    |    |
|---------|---------------|----|----|----------------|----|----|------------|----|----|---------------|----|----|
|         | T             | H  | R  | T              | H  | R  | T          | H  | R  | T             | H  | R  |
| Sapporo | 43.0          | 68 | 9  | 68.4           | 80 | 9  | 50.7       | 74 | 13 | 22.8          | 75 | 16 |
| Tokyo   | 56.3          | 66 | 10 | 77.4           | 79 | 10 | 62.4       | 74 | 11 | 39.4          | 57 | 5  |
| Nagoya  | 55.6          | 69 | 10 | 78.3           | 81 | 12 | 61.9       | 76 | 9  | 37.8          | 71 | 7  |
| Kyoto   | 55.6          | 67 | 7  | 79.0           | 76 | 8  | 62.1       | 74 | 5  | 38.3          | 72 | 5  |
| Fukuoka | 57.0          | 74 | 10 | 79.7           | 80 | 11 | 63.1       | 76 | 7  | 41.5          | 75 | 12 |
| Naha    | 69.4          | 79 | 10 | 82.8           | 82 | 9  | 75.4       | 74 | 9  | 60.8          | 70 | 13 |

Note: T=temperature      H=humidity in %      R=rainy days

### 6. How to describe the temperature in Japanese

As mentioned in previous lessons, since the metric system is used in Japan, temperatures are indicated in Centigrade rather than in Fahrenheit as in the U.S. The following is a conversion table between Centigrade and Fahrenheit:

|            |    |    |    |    |    |      |     |     |
|------------|----|----|----|----|----|------|-----|-----|
| Fahrenheit | 23 | 32 | 41 | 50 | 68 | 98.6 | 104 | 212 |
| Centigrade | -5 | 0  | 5  | 10 | 20 | 36.9 | 40  | 100 |

#### Conversion Formulas

To convert Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract 32 from Fahrenheit and divide by 1.8:

$$\text{Centigrade} = \frac{\text{Fahrenheit} - 32}{1.8}$$

To convert Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply Centigrade by 1.8 and add 32:

$$\text{Fahrenheit} = \text{Centigrade} \times 1.8 + 32$$

The counter used in giving temperatures is **-do** 'degree,' and the pronunciation of numbers before this counter is the same as in the simple counting of numbers.

Examples:

5 *degrees*  
34 *degrees*

**go-do**  
**sanjuu yon-do**



---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

ノートン 今日。  
日本人 今日。  
ノートン 今日はいいお天気ですね。  
日本人 本当にいいお天気ですね。

**Situation 2**

日本人 ああコートンさんの奥さん、お早うございます。  
コートン お早うございます。  
日本人 いやなお天気ですね。  
コートン そうですね。  
日本人 どこかへお出かけてですか。  
コートン ええ、ちょっと じゃあ、又。ごめんください。  
日本人 行って(い)らつしゃい。

**Situation 3**

日本人 今晩は。  
ヒシヨノブ 今晩は。  
日本人 今、お帰りですか。  
ヒシヨノブ ええ。じゃあ、おやすみなさい。  
日本人 おやすみなさい。

**Situation 4**

ネルソン じゃあ、子供たちをお願いします。  
みちこ はい。いっていらっしゃい。  
ネルソン いってまいります。

ネルソン たたいま。  
みちこ お帰りなさい。  
ネルソン 子供たちは？  
みちこ ちょっと前に寝ました。

**REVIEW LESSON:****MAKING IT WORK(2)**

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

***What do you say or do in the following situations?***

- 1 You want to go to Shinjuku but don't know where to buy tickets
- 2 You want to know if the train at the platform stops at Shinjuku
- 3 You plan to go to Shinjuku but don't know how to buy tickets, so you ask a Japanese person to do it for you
4. You need to find out which train to take to get to Kanda
- 5 You want to know if the express train stops at Ochanomizu
- 6 You ask a Japanese person how many stops there are before Ginza 4-chome, where you want to get off
7. You want to get off at Ginza 3-chome but are afraid you'll miss it. Ask a Japanese person next to you to let you know when you reach it
8. You're looking for the Nikkatsu Hotel. Walking in that direction, you ask which building from here it is
9. You're pretty sure Nihonbashi is the next station but you ask a Japanese person to make sure
- 10 You ascertain that the station you are just coming into is Toranomon
- 11 You want to know which exit to take to get to the Kabuki Theater
- 12 You want to know if the exit you're about to take is the right one for Isetan department store
- 13 You want to go to Nihonbashi and want to know if there's a direct line to there
- 14 You ask a taxi driver to take you to the U.S. Embassy
15. You have come as far as the Ginza by taxi. Tell the driver to stop at the entrance to Mitsukoshi department store
- 16 You have reached your destination by taxi. Now you want the driver to let you out right away
- 17 You tried calling a taxi without success, so you ask a Japanese person to help
- 18 You want to take the bus to Yokohama. Find out which bus stop to go to and which bus to take
19. You need to find out at a department store information desk which floor women's sweaters are sold on
- 20 While shopping at a department store, you get a headache. Find out where the drug counter is and buy some aspirin
- 21 You ask a salesclerk at a department store to show you a sweater

## Review Lesson: Making It Work (2)

22. You are asked by a salesperson if you are looking for something. You answer that you're just looking.
23. You had a salesclerk show you a white sweater but now you want to know if they have a red one in the same style.
24. You've tried on a pair of shoes but they're too small. You ask for one size larger.
25. In front of a camera showcase, you have pointed out a camera to the salesclerk. He gives you the wrong one, the one above the one you want. Tell him to show you the one below.
26. You were shown a necktie for 7000 yen but that is more than you want to pay. Ask to see a cheaper one.
27. You've gone into a neighborhood shop and looked about but decided not to buy anything. Give the proper greeting when leaving.
28. At the fish store, buy three of the fish you want.
29. Buy 400g of the sukiyaki beef that sells for 800 yen per 100 grams.
30. Buy 2kg of the tangerines that sell for 750 yen per kg.
31. You paid for 750 yen's worth of purchases with a 1000 yen bill but received only 150 yen in change. What now?
32. You've bought two or three items and want to know the total amount of the purchase.
33. You meet an acquaintance on a rainy, sultry afternoon.
34. You meet a neighbor on a cold winter evening.
35. Ask today's date.
36. In response to question no. 35, say that you don't know.
37. What do you say when you cannot think of the right word?
38. Ask what train track a train you are waiting for will arrive at.
39. Offer your seat to someone.
40. Ask if Ueno is the third station.
41. Ask if this train stops at Ochanomizu.
42. Ask how much it is.
43. Ask the time the store closes on Sunday.
44. Ask how much a Shinkansen ticket to Kyoto is.
45. Ask the directions to the South exit.
46. Tell a salesclerk to give you five of these.
47. Greet your Japanese neighbors (various ways).
48. Ask if there is a different color.
49. Ask a salesclerk to show you some object.
50. Reply to a Japanese neighbor when s/he says to you 'Dokoka e odekake desu ka?'

Lesson 21

SEATING AND ASKING FOR SERVICE

英語のメニューがありますか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you
- ask to share a table
- ask the waiter/waitress to come with you  
(to the display of dishes with food)
- tell the waiter/waitress how many people there are in  
your group
- ask for an English menu



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mrs Proctor is shopping in a department store. It's lunch time and she goes to the dining hall of the department store. She has heard that one is supposed to buy a meal ticket at the entrance.*

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| <i>Purokutaa:</i> | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Nihongo ga wakarimasen.<br/>Kore no shokken o katte<br/>kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Excuse me. I don't understand<br/>Japanese. Would you buy me a<br/>meal ticket for this dish?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Ee, ii desu yo.</b>   | <i>Sure</i>  |
| <i>Purokutaa:</i> | <b>Kore, okane desu.</b>   | <i>Here's the money.</i>   |
|                   | . . .  |  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Hai.</b>  | <i>Here you are (handing her the ticket)</i>   |
| <i>Purokutaa:</i> | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>Thank you very much</i>   |

### Situation 2

*Ms Hamilton is with three of her friends, none of whom speaks Japanese. They go to a restaurant.*

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Ueetaa:</i>    | <b>Irasshaimase.<br/>Nan-nin-sama desu ka?</b>      | <i>Welcome<br/>How many (people is it)?</i> |
| <i>Hamiruton:</i> | <b>Yo-nin desu.</b>                                 | <i>Four</i>                                 |
| <i>Ueetaa:</i>    | <b>Doozo kochira e.</b>                             | <i>This way, please</i>                     |
|                   | . . .   |   |
| <i>Hamiruton:</i> | <b>Eego no menyuu wa arimasu<br/>ka?</b>            | <i>Do you have an English menu?</i>         |
| <i>Ueetaa:</i>    | <b>Hai, gozaimasu.<br/>Shooshoo omachi kudasai.</b> | <i>Yes, we do<br/>Just a moment, please</i> |
|                   | . . .   |   |
| <i>Ueetaa:</i>    | <b>Hai, doozo.</b>                                  | <i>Here you are (handing her the menu)</i>  |
| <i>Hamiruton:</i> | <b>Doomo arigatoo.</b>                              | <i>Thank you</i>                            |

**Situation 3**

*Mr Johnson goes to a Japanese-style restaurant which is very crowded. He finds an empty seat at a table near a window but a Japanese person is sitting at the table.*

- |                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Sumimasen. Koko ii desu ka?</b>   | <i>Excuse me, may I sit here?</i>                                  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>  | <b>Ee, ii desu yo.</b>   | <i>Sure.</i>   |
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Doomo.</b>  | <i>Thank you.</i>  |
|                   | . . .  | . . .  |
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Sumimasen.</b>  | <i>Excuse me.</i>  |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Irasshaimase.<br/>Nan ni nasaimasu ka?</b>  | <i>Welcome.<br/>Would you like to order?</i>                       |
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Eego no menyuu wa<br/>arimasu ka?</b>   | <i>Do you have an English menu?</i>                                |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Ainiku desu ga, gozaimasen.</b>   | <i>I'm sorry, we don't.</i>  |
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Soo desu ka.<br/>Jaa, sumimasen ga, chotto<br/>issho ni kite kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Oh.<br/>Well then, could I trouble you to<br/>come with me?</i> |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai.</b>  | <i>Sure.</i>   |
|                   | . . .  | . . .  |
| <i>Jonson:</i>    | <b>Are onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>I'd like that one. (pointing to a dish)</i>                     |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai, wakarimashita.</b>   | <i>All right.</i>  |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                 |                           |          |
|-----------------|---------------------------|----------|
| shokken         | meal ticket               | しょっけん    |
| katte           | buy (TE form of kaimasu)  | かって      |
| kudasaimasen ka | won't you please          | くださいませんか |
| nan-nin-sama    | how many people? (polite) | なんにんさま   |
| nan-nin         | how many people?          | なんにん     |
| yo-nin          | four people               | よにん      |
| menyuu          | menu                      | メニュー     |
| nasaimasu       | do, make (polite)         | なさいます    |
| issho ni        | together                  | いっしょに    |
| kite            | come(TE form of kimasu)   | きて       |

Practice

|            |             |        |
|------------|-------------|--------|
| hito-ri    | one person  | ひとり    |
| futa-ri    | two persons | ふたり    |
| shinbun    | newspaper   | しんぶん   |
| zasshi     | magazine    | ざっし    |
| sandoitchi | sandwich    | サンドイッチ |
| sarada     | salad       | サラダ    |

Notes

|                 |  |           |
|-----------------|--|-----------|
| itashimashoo ka | (what) shall I do/make?<br>(deferential) | いたしまししょうか |
|-----------------|--|-----------|

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Number of People**

1. The counter for person(s) is -ri or -nin, which is written in Kanji as 人. Study the following and practice the pronunciation by repeating after your instructor.

|            |                 |     |
|------------|-----------------|-----|
| 1 person   | hito-ri         | 一人  |
| 2 persons  | futa-ri         | 二人  |
| 3 persons  | san-nin         | 三人  |
| 4 persons  | yo-nin          | 四人  |
| 5 persons  | go-nin          | 五人  |
| 6 persons  | roku-nin        | 六人  |
| 7 persons  | shichi/nana-nin | 七人  |
| 8 persons  | hachi-nin       | 八人  |
| 9 persons  | ku/kyuu-nin     | 九人  |
| 10 persons | juu-nin         | 十人  |
| 11 persons | juu ichi-nin    | 十一人 |
| 12 persons | juu ni-nin      | 十二人 |
| • •        | •               |     |
| • •        | •               |     |

2. Say the following in Japanese:

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. 3 persons | 7. 7 persons   |
| 2. 4 persons | 8. 9 persons   |
| 3. 2 persons | 9. 8 persons   |
| 4. 1 person  | 10. 6 persons  |
| 5. 5 persons | 11. 10 persons |
| 6. 6 persons | 12. 14 persons |



## Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

3. The instructor will read several different numbers of people. Write them down in English.

- |    |     |
|----|-----|
| 1. | 6.  |
| 2. | 7.  |
| 3. | 8.  |
| 4. | 9.  |
| 5. | 10. |

4. Match each of the following Kanji expressions with the corresponding romanization:

- |        |               |
|--------|---------------|
| 1. 三人  | a. futa-ri    |
| 2. 九人  | b. yo-nin     |
| 3. 五人  | c. kyuu-nin   |
| 4. 十五人 | d. go-nin     |
| 5. 一人  | e. san-nin    |
| 6. 七人  | f. juu go-nin |
| 7. 二人  | g. hito-ri    |
| 8. 四人  | h. kyuu-nin   |
| 9. 六人  | i. shichi-nin |
| 10. 九人 | j. roku-nin   |

### B. Response Drill

Directions:

The waitress (= instructor) asks how many people are in the group. The customer (= student) answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

**Waitress:** Nan-nin-sama desu ka?  
**Customer:** San-nin desu.

Student's list

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. 3 persons | 4. 2 persons |
| 2. 1 person  | 5. 6 persons |
| 3. 5 persons | 6. 4 persons |

C. *Substitution Drill*Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?

shinbun  
hon  
chizu  
zasshi  
menyuu

D. *Production and Comprehension Exercise* 注：教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

The instructor (= waitress/waiter) greets a student (= customer). The student chooses a dish from the list below and asks if the restaurant serves it. The instructor answers yes or no. The student checks the instructor's response on the answer sheet.

Example:

*Instructor:* Irasshaimase.  
*Student:* Sandoitchi wa arimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, gozaimasu.  
*Student:* (checks the correct response)

Student's list

Answer sheet

|               |         |        |
|---------------|---------|--------|
| 1. bifuteki   | ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| 2. koohii     | ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| 3. biiru      | ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| 4. sarada     | ( ) yes | ( ) no |
| 5. sandoitchi | ( ) yes | ( ) no |

教師用スクリプト

1. お待たせいたしました。何に致しましょうか。  
あいにくですが、ビフテキはございませんが.....
2. いらっしゃいませ。はい、アメリカン・コーヒーとモカですが.....
3. お待たせ致しました。何になさいますか。  
はい、「きりん」でよろしいですか。
4. いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。はい、(指さす)こちらです。
5. いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。はい、ハム・サンド、  
野菜サンド、それに、トマト・サンドがございます。

**E. Production and Comprehension Exercise** 注：教師は下記スクリプト参照

Directions:

Make a request or ask a question as instructed below. After the instructor answers your question in Japanese, select the statement which best describes the instructor's response.

1. Ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you.  
(     ) The person will buy a ticket for you.  
(     ) The person didn't understand what you want.
2. Ask the person if you can share the table with him/her.  
(     ) The person said O.K.  
(     ) You can't sit down there.
3. Call a waitress and ask her if they have an English menu.  
(     ) They don't have one.  
(     ) The waitress will bring one.
4. Ask someone to come with you.  
(     ) The person will come with you.  
(     ) The person didn't understand what you want him/her to do.
5. You are in front of plastic samples. Order a dish by pointing.  
(     ) The person understood what you want.  
(     ) The person didn't understand what you want.
6. The waitress asked how many people there are in your group.  
Answer that there are six.  
(     ) The waitress will take you to a table.  
(     ) The waitress didn't get the number of people.

教師用スクリプト

1. 食券ですか。いいですよ。
2. あ、すみませんね。今、友達か来るんですよ。
3. いらっしゃいませ。何に致しましょうか。  
英語のメニューですか。申し訳ございませんか、ございません。
4. は？ 何ですか。
5. あ、あれですね。わかりました。
6. 六人様でございますね。こちらへどうぞ。

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |    |    |          |                          |
|----|----|----------|--------------------------|
| 1. | 食堂 | shokudoo | dining hall, dining room |
| 2. | 食券 | shokken  | meal ticket              |
| 3. | 百  | hyaku    | hundred                  |
| 4. | 千  | sen      | thousand                 |
| 5. | 万  | man      | ten thousand             |
| 6. | 円  | -en      | yen                      |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Shokken* (食券) 'meal ticket'

At some restaurants--department store dining halls, for example, you are required to buy a *shokken* (食券) 'meal ticket' at the *shokken uriba* (食券売場), which is located at the entrance. After you buy a *shokken*, give it to the waitress or waiter at your table. The waiter/waitress will then bring you the dish. When you finish the meal, you simply leave the restaurant.

To buy a *shokken*, you need to know the name of the dish you want. At department store dining halls as well as at many other places, there is a window near the entrance in which plastic samples of available dishes are displayed. The name of the dish and its price are placed in front of each sample. Therefore, what you do is look at the display, decide on a dish, and give its name and the money to the attendant at the *shokken uriba*. If you can't read the name of the dish you want, you can ask a Japanese person to buy a *shokken* for you by pointing to the dish in the display. You can use the following expression for this purpose.

**Kore no shokken o katte kudasaimasen ka?**

*Would you please buy a meal ticket for this dish?*

You may have noticed that in the above sentence, the phrase *kudasaimasen ka* is used after the verb *katte* 'buy'. As you studied earlier, you can express the same meaning by using *kudasai*, as in the following.

**Kore no shokken o katte kudasai.**

*Please buy a meal ticket for this one.*

However, as indicated by the difference in the translations of the two sentences, the first sentence is more polite than the second one. Since you are asking a stranger for a favor, it is more appropriate to use the more polite expression, i.e., the first sentence.

### 2. *Seating*

With the exception of some western-style restaurants and expensive Japanese restaurants, you don't have to wait to be seated. You may simply take any unoccupied seat. However, if the restaurant you are in is crowded, you may have to share a table with someone else. If such is the case, you should ask the person already at the table if it's all right to take the seat by saying

**Koko ii desu ka?**

*May I sit here? (literally, 'Is here O.K. ?')*

The Japanese will probably say

**(Ee,) ii desu yo.**

*Sure /Please*

You can pretty well guess when the seat is already taken by observing the person's attitude, even if you don't understand what is being said. A refusal will probably begin with an apology.

When you are with several people at a restaurant where someone seats you, the waiter/waitress will probably ask you how many people there are in your group by saying:

**Nan-nin-sama desu ka?**                      *How many people are there?*

After getting the number from you, s/he will take you to a table by saying:

**Kochira e doozo.**                              *This way, please.*

When you want to call a waiter/waitress for service, you can say:

**Sumimasen.**                                      *Excuse me.*

When a waiter/waitress comes to your table, s/he will first say *Irasshaimase* 'Welcome' and will probably then say:

**Nan ni itashimashoo ka?**                      *What shall we serve you?*

OR

**Nan ni nasaimasu ka?**                      *What would you like?*

The above two expressions are comparable to 'May I take your order?' or 'Would you like to order?' in English.

### 3. *How to find the dish you want*

In some restaurants, menus are written both in Japanese and English. If you don't see an English menu on the table, you may want to find out if they have one. You can use the following expression:

**Eego no menyuu wa arimasu ka?**  
*Do you have an English menu? (cf. Lesson 4)*

If the restaurant doesn't have an English menu but has a display window outside, you can ask the waiter/waitress to come with you to the display by saying:

**Chotto issho ni kite kudasaimasen ka?**  
*Would you please come with me?*

The word *chotto* in the above sentence literally means 'a little bit'. It is used to soften the tone of the request and should not be taken literally.

You may wonder what you should do if the restaurant you are in has neither an English menu nor plastic samples. One way to cope with such a situation is to ask if they serve a dish you like. (You must know the name of the dish in Japanese, of course.) You can use the following expression for this purpose:

(dish name) **wa arimasu ka?**              *Do you serve (dish name)?*

## Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

Another way out of this dilemma is to see if anyone at another table is eating a dish that attracts you. If you see a dish you like, you can order the same by saying:

**Are onegai shimasu.**

*That one, please.*

If the restaurant doesn't have a dish you want and you don't want to bother, you can say *Jaa, mata kimasu 'I'll come again'* and leave the place to find a restaurant that has plastic samples outside.

---



---

会話

---



---

**Situation 1**

プロクター すみません。日本語わかりません。  
 この食券を買って下さいませんか。  
 日本人 ええ、いいですよ。  
 プロクター これ、お金です。

日本人 はい。  
 プロクター どうもありがとうございます。

**Situation 2**

ウエイター いらっしゃいませ。何名様ですか。  
 ハミルトン 四人です。  
 ウエイター どうぞ、こちらへ  
 ハミルトン 英語のメニューはありますか。  
 ウエイター はい、ございます。少々お待ち下さい。

ウエイター はい、どうぞ。  
 ハミルトン どうもありがとうございます。

**Situation 3**

シヨンノン すみません。ここ、いいですか。  
 日本人 ええ、いいですよ。  
 シヨンノン どうも。

シヨンソン すみません。  
 ウエイトレス いらっしゃいませ。何になさいますか。  
 シヨンノン 英語のメニューはありますか。  
 ウエイトレス あいにくですか、ございません。  
 シヨンノン そうですか。じゃ、すみませんか、ちょっと  
 一緒に来て下さいませんか。  
 ウエイトレス はい。

シヨンノン あれ、お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい、わかりました。



## Lesson 21 Seating and asking for service

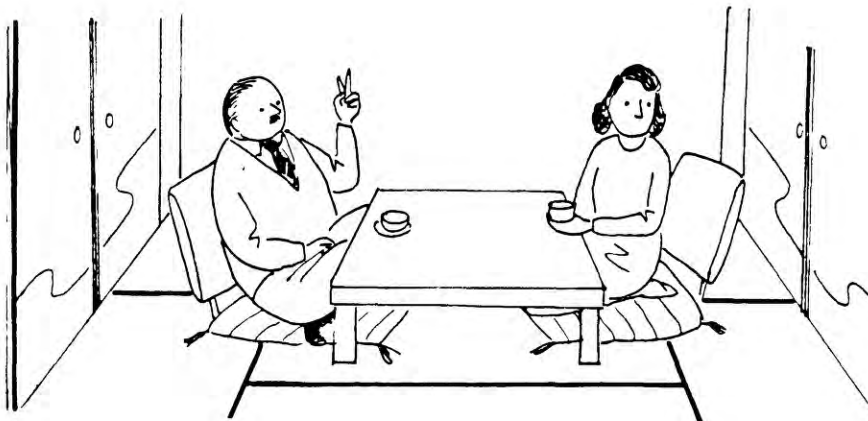
Lesson 22

PLACING AN ORDER

二人前、お願いします。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- indicate that you are not yet ready to place an order
- get the waiter/waitress's attention to tell him/her that you are ready to place an order
- order a certain number of servings of a dish
- place an order for more of something you have already ordered



## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

## Situation 1

*Mr Wilson and his friend go to a Japanese style restaurant near the American Embassy*

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Uiruson:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.</b>                           | <i>Excuse me I'd like to order, please</i>                    |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Okimari desu ka?</b>                                     | <i>Have you decided?</i>                                      |
| <i>Uiruson:</i>   | <b>Ee, tempura futatsu to biiru hitotsu onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Yes, please bring two servings of tempura and one beer</i> |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai.</b>   | <i>Certainly</i>  |
| . . .             |   |   |
| <i>Uiruson:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Biiru moo ip-pon onegai shimasu.</b>          | <i>Excuse me One more bottle of beer, please</i>              |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai, kashikomarimashita.</b>                             | <i>Certainly</i>  |

## Situation 2

*Mr Young is in a Japanese style restaurant in the Ginza with two friends*

|                   |  |   |
|-------------------|--|---|
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Irasshaimase. Gochuumon wa?</b>                           | <i>May I help you?<br/>What would you like?</i>                         |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>Chotto matte kudasai.</b>                                 | <i>Please wait a moment</i>   |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai.</b>  | <i>Certainly</i>  |
| . . .             |  |   |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>Sumimasen.<br/>Onegai shimasu.</b>                        | <i>Excuse me<br/>I'm ready to order</i>                                 |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai. Nan(i) ni itashimashoo ka?</b>                       | <i>All right What will it be?</i>                                       |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>Sashimi mittsu to sukiyaki san-ninmae onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Three servings of sashimi and three servings of sukiyaki, please</i> |

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Hai. Onomimono wa?</b>                           | <i>Certainly. And to drink?</i>           |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>Osake ni-hon to koora ip-pon onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Two sake and a cola, please.</i>       |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Sumimasen. Koora wa gozaimasen ga. . .</b>       | <i>I'm sorry, but we don't have cola.</i> |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>A, soo desu ka.</b>                              | <i>Oh, I see.</i>                         |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Ocha wa ikaga desu ka?</b>                       | <i>How about green tea?</i>               |
| <i>Yangu:</i>     | <b>Jaa, ocha onegai shimasu.</b>                    | <i>Well, then, green tea, please.</i>     |

### Situation 3

*Ms. Sanders and her friend go to a restaurant for dinner.*

|                   |  |   |
|-------------------|--|---|
| <i>Sandaasu:</i>  | <b>Suteeki futatsu onegai shimasu. Sarada wa arimasu ka?</b> | <i>Two steaks, please. Do you have salad?</i>     |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Mikkusu sarada to guriin sarada ga gozaimasu .</b>        | <i>We have mixed salad and green salad.</i>       |
| <i>Sandaasu:</i>  | <b>Jaa, guriin sarada futatsu.</b>                           | <i>Well, then, two green salads, please.</i>      |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Suteeki wa midiamu desu ka, rea desu ka?</b>              | <i>Would you like your steaks medium or rare?</i> |
| <i>Sandaasu:</i>  | <b>Midiamu to rea desu.</b>                                  | <i>One medium and one rare, please.</i>           |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Onomimono wa ikaga desu ka?</b>                           | <i>How about something to drink?</i>              |
| <i>Sandaasu:</i>  | <b>Wain wa arimasu ka?</b>                                   | <i>Do you serve wine?</i>                         |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i> | <b>Aka to shiro ga gozaimasu.</b>                            | <i>Yes, we have red and white.</i>                |
| <i>Sandaasu:</i>  | <b>Jaa, aka ip-pon onegai shimasu.</b>                       | <i>A bottle of red wine, please.</i>              |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                        |                                |         |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|
| <b>okimari desu ka</b> | Have you decided (polite)      | おきまりですか |
| <b>ip-pon</b>          | one cylindrical object         | いっぽん    |
| <b>gochuumon</b>       | (your) order (polite)          | ごちゅうもん  |
| <b>matte</b>           | wait<br>(TE form of machimasu) | まって     |
| <b>san-ninmae</b>      | three servings                 | さんにんまえ  |
| <b>ni-hon</b>          | two cylindrical objects        | にほん     |
| <b>(o)nomimono</b>     | something to drink (polite)    | (お)のみもの |
| <b>koora</b>           | cola                           | コーラ     |
| <b>ocha</b>            | (green) tea                    | おちゃ     |
| <b>suteeki</b>         | steak                          | ステーキ    |
| <b>mikkusu sarada</b>  | mixed salad                    | ミックスサラダ |
| <b>guriin sarada</b>   | green salad                    | グリーンサラダ |
| <b>midiamu</b>         | medium (steak)                 | ミディアム   |
| <b>rea</b>             | rare (steak)                   | レア      |
| <b>wain</b>            | wine                           | ワイン     |
| <b>aka</b>             | red                            | あか      |
| <b>shiro</b>           | white                          | しろ      |

Practice

|                    |                           |        |
|--------------------|---------------------------|--------|
| <b>ip-pon</b>      | one cylindrical object    | いっぽん   |
| <b>ni-hon</b>      | two cylindrical objects   | にほん    |
| <b>san-bon</b>     | three cylindrical objects | さんほん   |
| <b>yon-hon</b>     | four cylindrical objects  | よんほん   |
| <b>go-hon</b>      | five cylindrical objects  | ごほん    |
| <b>rop-pon</b>     | six cylindrical objects   | ろっぽん   |
| <b>ichi-ninmae</b> | one serving               | いちにんまえ |
| <b>ni-ninmae</b>   | two servings              | ににんまえ  |
| <b>san-ninmae</b>  | three servings            | さんにんまえ |

|             |               |        |
|-------------|---------------|--------|
| yo-ninmae   | four servings | よにんまえ  |
| go-ninmae   | five servings | ごにんまえ  |
| roku-ninmae | six servings  | ろくにんまえ |
| naifu       | knife         | ナイフ    |
| fooku       | fork          | フォーク   |
| pai         | pie           | パイ     |
| dezaato     | dessert       | デザート   |

**Notes**

|                              |                                    |             |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| okimari ni<br>narimashita ka | Have you decided?<br>(very polite) | おきまりになりましたか |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------|

**Personalized list**

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Repetition Drill**

Directions: Repeat after the instructor.

|                |                                  |                    |                       |
|----------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ip-pon</b>  | <i>one cylindrical object</i>    | <b>ichi-ninmae</b> | <i>one serving</i>    |
| <b>ni-hon</b>  | <i>two cylindrical objects</i>   | <b>ni-ninmae</b>   | <i>two servings</i>   |
| <b>san-bon</b> | <i>three cylindrical objects</i> | <b>san-ninmae</b>  | <i>three servings</i> |
| <b>yon-hon</b> | <i>four cylindrical objects</i>  | <b>yo-ninmae</b>   | <i>four servings</i>  |
| <b>go-hon</b>  | <i>five cylindrical objects</i>  | <b>go-ninmae</b>   | <i>five servings</i>  |
| <b>rop-pon</b> | <i>six cylindrical objects</i>   | <b>roku-ninmae</b> | <i>six servings</i>   |

**B. Substitution Drill**

Tenpura onegai shimasu.

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Sushi</b>   | <b>Osake</b>          |
| <b>Sashimi</b> | <b>Biiru</b>          |
| <b>Koora</b>   | <b>Naifu to fooku</b> |

**C. Combination Drill**

Directions: Combine the following by using the appropriate counter and onegai shimasu.

Example:

|                  |   |                 |                   |
|------------------|---|-----------------|-------------------|
| <b>cue:</b>      | <b>tenpura 3 servings</b>                             |                 |                   |
| <b>response:</b> | <b>Tenpura mittsu (OR san-ninmae) onegai shimasu.</b> |                 |                   |
| <b>sushi</b>     | <b>4 servings</b>                                     | <b>sashimi</b>  | <b>5 servings</b> |
| <b>biiru</b>     | <b>2 bottles</b>                                      | <b>yakitori</b> | <b>2 servings</b> |
| <b>sake</b>      | <b>1 bottle</b>                                       | <b>sukiyaki</b> | <b>1 serving</b>  |
| <b>fooku</b>     | <b>2</b>  | <b>koohii</b>   | <b>1</b>          |
| <b>koora</b>     | <b>3 bottles</b>                                      | <b>tenpura</b>  | <b>3 servings</b> |

**D. Production Drill**

Using the items in C above, place additional orders.

Example:

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| <b>cue:</b>      | <b>tenpura 3 servings</b>                 |
| <b>response:</b> | <b>Tenpura moo mittsu onegai shimasu.</b> |

**E. Matching Drill**

Match the following Japanese expressions with the corresponding English expressions:

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>Kaite kudasai.</b>  | Please wait.      |
| <b>Matte kudasai.</b>  | Please buy.       |
| <b>Kite kudasai.</b>   | Please say.       |
| <b>Katte kudasai.</b>  | Please come.      |
| <b>Itte kudasai.</b>   | Please write.     |
| <b>Misete kudasai.</b> | Please show (me). |

**F. Production Drill**

Example:

*cue:* Ask (him/her) to wait a moment.

*response:* **Chotto matte kudasai.** or **Chotto matte kudasaimasen ka?**

- Ask (him/her) to come with you.
- Ask (him/her) to repeat.
- Ask (him/her) to buy a meal ticket.
- Ask (him/her) to buy a (train) ticket.
- Ask (him/her) to repeat slowly.
- Ask (him/her) to write here.
- Ask (him/her) to show it to you.

**G. Menu Reading**

Look at the menu from a kissaten 'coffee shop' on the next page:

**Round 1**

Directions:

The instructor will ask you where a certain section of items is written on the menu. Answer by pointing to the section and saying **Koko desu.**

Example:

*Instructor:* **Sofuto dorinku wa doko desu ka?**

*Student:* **Koko desu.** (pointing to the section)

注: 教師は適当にメニューを見ながら学生に聞く。



## メニュー

ソフト・ドリンク

|          |     |
|----------|-----|
| コーヒー     | 480 |
| 紅茶       | 450 |
| アイスコーヒー  | 480 |
| アイス紅茶    | 430 |
| コココーラ    | 380 |
| ミルク      | 300 |
| ソータ水     | 350 |
| ココア      | 450 |
| ウイナーコーヒー | 500 |

フロート

|          |     |
|----------|-----|
| クリームソーダ  | 480 |
| コーヒーフロート | 480 |
| オレンジフロート | 550 |
| コーラフロート  | 480 |
| ミルクセーキ   | 480 |

クリームパフェ

|            |     |
|------------|-----|
| アイスクリーム    | 400 |
| チョコレートサンデー | 500 |
| チョコレートパフェ  | 500 |
| フルーツパフェ    | 500 |

ランチ・タイム・サービス

(AM 11 30 - PM2 00)

|           |     |
|-----------|-----|
| ロイヤル・ランチ  | 950 |
| ハウス・スペシャル | 800 |
| レテイス・ランチ  | 750 |

ライス・コンソメスープ付き  
コーヒー又は紅茶付き

フレッシュ・ジュース

|          |     |
|----------|-----|
| トマトジュース  | 400 |
| オレンジジュース | 450 |
| レモネード    | 450 |
| ハナナジュース  | 500 |
| ミックスジュース | 500 |
| レモンスカッポ  | 500 |
| オレンジスカッポ | 500 |

ア・ラ・カルト

(PM2 00から)

|              |     |
|--------------|-----|
| スパゲッティ・ナポリタン | 700 |
| チキン・クラタン     | 800 |
| シュリンプ・クラタン   | 800 |
| チキン・ピラフ      | 700 |
| シュリンプ・ピラフ    | 700 |

サントイッチ

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| トースト厚焼き<br>(ハター・シヤム付き) | 300 |
| ハム・トースト                | 420 |
| 野菜サントウイッチ              | 400 |
| エッグ・サントウイッチ            | 400 |
| ミックス・サントウイッチ           | 500 |
| ホットトック                 | 400 |

ティー・タイム・サービス

(PM2 00-5 00)

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| チーズ・ケーキ        | 600 |
| チョコレート・ケーキ     | 600 |
| ストロベリー・ショートケーキ | 600 |

コーヒー又は紅茶付き

Round 2

## Directions

Find the following items on the menu:

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| milk         | ham sandwich   |
| tomato juice | chocolate cake |
| Coca-Cola    | coffee         |

Round 3

## Directions

Find out the following, with the help of your instructor:

special lunch menu  
 the price of cheese cake  
 the price of tea  
 the price of iced tea  
 the price of a vegetable sandwich

**G. Production and Comprehension Exercise** 注 教師は下記スクリプト参照

## Directions:

The instructor asks if the student would like to have dessert or a drink. The student selects an appropriate item from the list and asks if the restaurant serves it or not. The instructor answers by giving the kinds of desserts/drinks the restaurant serves. The student chooses one and orders it.

## Example

**Instructor:** Onomimono wa ikaga desu ka?  
**Student:** Wain wa arimasu ka?  
**Instructor:** Aka to shiro ga gozaimasu.  
**Student:** Jaa, aka onegai shimasu.

注 教師は「お飲み物はいかかてございますか。」又は「デザートはいかかてございますか。」のどちらかを使うこと。

## Student's list

wine  
 pie  
 ice cream  
 coffee

## 教師用返事

赤と白かございます。  
 アップルとチェリーかございます。  
 ハニラとチョコレートかございます。  
 アメリカンとモカかございます。

## H. Role Play

Directions.

The instructor (=waitress or waiter) asks if the student is ready to order. The student says 'Wait' and the instructor responds. The student selects an item from the list below and calls the instructor to place an order. The student orders and the instructor responds.

Example:

*Instructor:* **Irasshaimase. Nan ni itashimashoo ka?**

*Student:* **Chotto matte kudasai.**

*Instructor:* **Hai.**

...

*Student:* **Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.**

...

*Instructor:* **Okimari ni narimashita ka?**

*Student:* **Sushi to (o)sake futatsu onegai shimasu.**

*Instructor:* **Wakarimashita. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.**

注 教師は「いらっしゃいませ」「何にいたしましょうか」「何になさいますか, 「かしこまりました」「少々お待ち下さい」「ご注文は?」「はい、わかりました」「お決まりになりましたか」「お決まりですか」などを返事にませること。

### Student's list

1. two portions of sushi and two bottles of sake
2. two servings of tempura and a bottle of beer
3. (o)sashimi and (o)sake
4. sukiyaki for three people and three bottles of beer
5. three mixed sandwiches and three coffees
6. two steaks, one medium and one rare, and two green salads
7. two bottles of beer and three servings of tempura
8. one mixed sandwich, one ham sandwich, and two coffees

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |        |            |                       |
|--------|------------|-----------------------|
| 1. 三人前 | san-ninmae | three servings        |
| 2. 営業中 | eegyoochuu | open for business     |
| 3. 開店  | kaiten     | the opening of a shop |
| 4. 開場  | kaijoo     | doors open            |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *How to indicate that you are ready to place an order*

You can place an order with any waitress you see, not necessarily the one that waited on you first. When you want to call a waitress to place an order, you can say

**Sumimasen. Onegai shimasu.**                      *I would like to place an order*

Sumimasen acts as an attention getter. The expression *onegai shimasu*, which you've already encountered a number of times, literally means something like 'I'm going to make a request' or 'I'm making a request'. When used in the above situation, it indicates that you're asking for service.

If you are not yet ready to order, you can say the following to the waitress or waiter:

**Chotto matte kudasai.**                      *Please wait a moment*

The waitress/waiter may wait at your table or may leave your table and return when you call her/him.

### 2. *Useful expressions to know in placing an order*

When the waitress or waiter comes to your table to take your order, s/he will probably say:

**Nan ni nasaimasu ka?**                      *What would you like to order?*  
**Nan ni itashimashooka?**

**Okimari ni narimashita ka?**                      *Have you decided yet?*  
*Are you ready to order?*

**Gochuumon wa?**                      *What is your order?*  
*Are you going to place an order?*

The simplest way of placing your order is to point to the item on the menu and say

**Kore onegai shimasu.**                      *This, please (cf. Lesson 15)*  
**Kore kudasai.**                      *Please give me this (cf. Lesson 18)*

When you order a certain number of servings of food or drinks, you can use the following pattern, which is similar to the one you studied in Lesson 18.

(food/drink) number + counter + **onegai shimasu.**  
 (cf. [merchandise] number + counter + **kudasai** in Lesson 18)

**Tenpura san-ninmae onegai shimasu.**  
**Hankachi ni-mai onegai shimasu.**

As we discussed earlier, the Japanese use different counters for different types of objects. For example, when they refer to (train) tickets, they use the counter . . .mai, as in the following examples:

|                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Yokohama, ichi-mai.</b> | <i>One ticket to Yokohama.</i> |
| <b>Kyoto, ni-mai.</b>      | <i>Two tickets to Kyoto.</i>   |

When the Japanese refer to people, they use the counter . . .ri for the numbers one and two and . . .nin for the numbers larger than two, as in the following examples:

|                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| <b>hitori</b>   | <i>one person</i>    |
| <b>futari</b>   | <i>two persons</i>   |
| <b>san-nin</b>  | <i>three persons</i> |
| <b>yo-nin</b>   | <i>four persons</i>  |
| <b>go-nin</b>   | <i>five persons</i>  |
| <b>roku-nin</b> | <i>six persons</i>   |
| <b>juu-nin</b>  | <i>ten persons</i>   |

The following are some counters that are frequently used in restaurants:

. . .hon: used for cylindrical objects like bottles

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>biiru ip-pon</b>   | <i>one bottle of beer</i>  |
| <b>(o)sake ni-hon</b> | <i>two bottles of sake</i> |
| <b>san-bon</b>        | <i>three bottles</i>       |
| <b>rop-pon</b>        | <i>six bottles</i>         |

. . .ninmae: used in counting servings of a dish

|                            |                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>tenpura ichi-ninmae</b> | <i>one portion of tenpura</i>  |
| <b>sashimi ni-ninmae</b>   | <i>two servings of sashimi</i> |
| <b>san-ninmae</b>          | <i>three servings</i>          |
| <b>yo-ninmae</b>           | <i>four servings</i>           |

You also learned that the counter . . .tsu can be used with the native Japanese numerals (numbers one to ten) when referring to the number of corners, intersections, etc. This counter is also used in a shopping situation like the following:

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| <b>Kore o mittsu kudasai.</b> | <i>Please give me three of these.</i><br>(cf. Lesson 18) |
|-------------------------------|--|

## Lesson 22 Placing an order

In Lesson 18, we mentioned that when you are not sure of the appropriate counter, you can use . . .tsu. The amount expressed in this way is usually comprehensible to the Japanese, although it may sound a little odd. This is also true when placing an order at a restaurant. Although there are specific counters used for bottles, servings, etc., as we discussed above, if you can use the counter . . .tsu correctly, you should be able to place an order at a restaurant. Here are some examples:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Biiru hitotsu onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>One (bottle of) beer, please.</i>      |
| <b>Sashimi futatsu onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Two (servings of) sashimi, please.</i> |

When you want to place an additional order, you can use the following pattern:

**(Food/drink) moo + number + . . .tsu onegai shimasu.**

Thus, when you want to order two more bottles of sake, you can say:

**(O)sake moo ni-hon (OR moo futatsu) onegai shimasu.**  
*Two more bottles of sake, please.*

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

ウイルノン すみません。お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス お決まりですか。  
 ウイルノン ええ、てんぷら二つとヒール一つお願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい。

ウイルノン すみません。ヒールもう一本お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい、かしこまりました。

## Situation 2

ウエイトレス いらっしゃいませ。ご注文は?  
 ヤンク ちょっと侍ってください。  
 ウエイトレス はい。

ヤンク すみません。お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい。何にいたしましょうか。  
 ヤンク さしみ 三つと、すきやき 三人前、お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい。お飲み物は?  
 ヤンク お酒 二本と、コーラ 一本 お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス すみません。コーラはこさいませんか  
 ヤンク あ、そうですね。  
 ウエイトレス お茶はいかかですか。  
 ヤンク じゃ、お茶お願いします。

## Situation 3

サンタース ステーキ二つお願いします、サラタはありますか。  
 ウエイトレス ミノクスサラタとクリーンサラタかこさいます。  
 サンタース じゃ、クリーンサラタ二つ。  
 ウエイトレス ステーキはミティアムですか。レアですか。  
 サンタース ミティアムとレアです。  
 ウエイトレス お飲み物はいかかですか。  
 サンタース ワインはありますか。  
 ウエイトレス 赤と白かこさいます。  
 サンタース じゃ、赤一本お願いします。





Lesson 23

PLACING AN ORDER AND PAYING

おかんじょう、お願いします。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- find out if a dish has a taste you like or don't like
- ask the waiter for a recommendation
- ask for the check
- find out where to pay
- deal with cashier etiquette



---



---

**DIALOGS**

**KAIWA**

---



---

**Situation 1**

*Ms Shaw is in a restaurant looking at the menu As she wants to have a beef dish, she asks a waitress where beef dishes are on the menu*

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <b>Shoo:</b>      | <b>Biifu wa doko desu ka?</b>             | <i>Where are the beef dishes?</i>       |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Kochira de gozaimasu.</b>              | <i>They are here</i>                    |
| <b>Shoo:</b>      | <b>Kore wa karai desu ka?</b>             | <i>Is this one spicy?</i>               |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>lie, kareku arimasen yo.</b>           | <i>No, it isn't</i>                     |
| <b>Shoo:</b>      | <b>Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.</b>          | <i>I'll have it, then</i>               |
|                   | . . .                                     | . . .                                   |
| <b>Shoo:</b>      | <b>Sumimasen. Okanjoo onegai shimasu.</b> | <i>Excuse me Check, please</i>          |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Hai. Maido arigatoo gozaimasu.</b>     | <i>Here you are Thank you very much</i> |

**Situation 2**

*Mrs Henderson is in a Japanese-style restaurant She decides to try a fish dish and asks a waitress where fish dishes are on the menu*

|                   |  |                                   |
|-------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Sakana wa doko desu ka?</b>         | <i>Where are the fish dishes?</i> |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Kochira desu.</b>                   | <i>They are here</i>              |
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Kore wa shiokaraku arimasen ka?</b> | <i>Isn't this one salty?</i>      |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Ee, sukoshi shiokarai desu ne.</b>  | <i>Yes, it's a little salty</i>   |
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Kore wa?</b>                        | <i>How about this one?</i>        |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Sore wa shiokaraku gozaimasen.</b>  | <i>That one is not salty</i>      |
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.</b>       | <i>I'll have this one, then</i>   |
|                   | . . .                                  | . . .                             |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Osumi desu ka?</b>                  | <i>Are you finished?</i>          |
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Ee. Okanjoo wa doko desu ka?</b>    | <i>Yes Where do I pay?</i>        |
| <b>Ueetoresu:</b> | <b>Achira de gozaimasu.</b>            | <i>Over there, please</i>         |
| <b>Hendaason:</b> | <b>Doomo.</b>                          | <i>Thank you</i>                  |

**Situation 3**

*Mr. Johnson wants to have tempura, so he asks a waitress where tempura is on the menu.*

|                      |  |  |
|----------------------|--|--|
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Tenpura wa doko desu ka?</b>                                      | <i>Where are the tempura dishes?</i>                                     |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i>    | <b>Kochira de gozaimasu.</b>   | <i>They are here.</i>  |
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Dore ga oishii desu ka?</b>                                       | <i>Which one is good?</i>  |
| <i>Ueetoresu:</i>    | <b>Soo desu ne. Kore wa taihen oishii desu yo.</b>                   | <i>Well, this one is very good.</i>                                      |
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Jaa, sore kudasai.</b>  | <i>I'll have it, then.</i>   |
|                      | . . .  | . . .  |
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Ikura desu ka?</b>  | <i>How much is it?</i>   |
| <i>Reji no hito:</i> | <b>850-en ni narimasu.</b>   | <i>It comes to 850- yen.</i>   |
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Hai.</b>  | <i>Here you are.</i>   |
| <i>Reji no hito:</i> | <b>150-en no okaeshi desu. Maido arigatoo gozaimasu. Mata doozo.</b> | <i>Here's 150-yen in change. Thank you very much. Please come again.</i> |
| <i>Jonson:</i>       | <b>Gochisoosama.</b>   | <i>It was very good.</i>   |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                          |                                      |          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>biifu</b>             | beef                                 | ビーフ      |
| <b>karai</b>             | hot and spicy                        | からい      |
| <b>karaku arimasen</b>   | not hot (spicy)                      | からくありません |
| <b>okanjoo</b>           | bill, check                          | おかんじょう   |
| <b>kochira</b>           | here (polite)                        | こちら      |
| <b>shiokarai</b>         | salty                                | しおからい    |
| <b>osumi desu ka?</b>    | are you finished? (polite)           | お済みですか   |
| <b>dore</b>              | which one                            | どれ       |
| <b>oishii</b>            | good (tasting), delicious            | おいしい     |
| <b>soo desu nee. . .</b> | let me think for a minute            | そうですねえ   |
| <b>taihen</b>            | very                                 | たいへん     |
| <b>gochisoosama</b>      | thank you for the good food (polite) | ごちそうさま   |

Practice

|                 |                    |      |
|-----------------|--------------------|------|
| <b>atsui</b>    | hot                | あつい  |
| <b>tsumetai</b> | cold               | つめたい |
| <b>pooku</b>    | pork               | ポーク  |
| <b>yasai</b>    | vegetables         | やさい  |
| <b>gohan</b>    | cooked rice        | ごはん  |
| <b>soosu</b>    | sauce              | ソース  |
| <b>tori</b>     | chicken            | とり   |
| <b>niku</b>     | meat               | にく   |
| <b>maguro</b>   | tuna               | まぐろ  |
| <b>toro</b>     | fatty part of tuna | トロ   |

**Notes**

|                |                                     |      |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|------|
| <b>suppai</b>  | sour                                | すっぱい |
| <b>amai</b>    | sweet                               | あまい  |
| <b>nigai</b>   | bitter                              | にがい  |
| <b>ageta</b>   | fried                               | あげた  |
| <b>nita</b>    | cooked in broth<br>(Japanese-style) | にた   |
| <b>yaita</b>   | grilled                             | やいた  |
| <b>nama no</b> | raw                                 | なまの  |
| <b>reji</b>    | cash register                       | レジ   |
| <b>chippu</b>  | tip                                 | チップ  |
| <b>demae</b>   | delivery of prepared food           | でまえ  |

**Personalized list**

---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Kore wa karai desu ka?

amai  
shiokarai  
suppai  
nigai  
karai  
atsui  
tsumetai

**B. Transformation Drill**

Example:

(cue) spicy  
(Question) Karai desu ka?  
(Response) Iie, karaku arimasen.

sweet  
salty  
sour  
bitter  
spicy  
cold  
hot

**C. Response Drill**

Directions:

Student A asks Student B, referring to the list for Student A below. Student B answers, referring to the list for Student B below.

Example:

*Student A:* Kore wa karaku arimasen ka?  
*Student B:* Ee, karaku arimasen.

List for student A

1. sweet
2. salty
3. sour
4. spicy
5. bitter

List for student B

- Yes  
No  
No  
Yes  
No

## D. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student selects an item from the list below and asks the instructor whether it is salty, hot, spicy, sour, or bitter. The instructor answers. The student then checks the correct statement on the answer sheet.

Example:

*Student:* Kono biifu wa karai desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Iie, karaku arimasen.  
*Student:* (checks the correct statement)

### List for student

|       |        |
|-------|--------|
| biifu | spicy? |
| ebi   | sweet? |
| yasai | sour?  |
| pooku | salty? |
| soosu | sour?  |

### Answer sheet

- |    |                           |     |
|----|---------------------------|-----|
| 1. | The beef is spicy.        | ( ) |
|    | The beef isn't spicy.     | ( ) |
| 2. | The shrimp are sweet.     | ( ) |
|    | The shrimp aren't sweet.  | ( ) |
| 3. | The vegetable is sour.    | ( ) |
|    | The vegetable isn't sour. | ( ) |
| 4. | The pork is salty.        | ( ) |
|    | The pork isn't salty.     | ( ) |
| 5. | The sauce is sour.        | ( ) |
|    | The sauce isn't sour.     | ( ) |

### 教師用スクリプト

そうですねえ、あまりからくないと思いますけど。

そうですねえ、少し甘いですけど.....

いいえ、そんなに酸っぱいというほどじゃありませんよ。

そうですねえ、最近はあまり塩辛くしないようにしてますから.....

そうですねえ、ちょっと甘酸っぱいですけど、そんなに酸っぱくはありません。



### E. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The instructor (waiter/waitress) refers to the menu on the next page and asks if the student is ready to place an order. The student asks the instructor to wait, selects food from the list below, and asks where the food is on the menu. The instructor points to the dishes. The student then selects a dish and asks about its taste, referring to the list below. The instructor answers. The student orders it if the taste is to his or her liking. If it is not, s/he chooses a different dish until s/he finds one whose taste s/he doesn't mind.

Example:

*Instructor:* Nan ni itashimashoo ka? (handing student the menu)  
*Student:* Chotto matte kudasai. (looking at the menu below)  
*Instructor:* Hai.  
*Student:* Biifu wa doko desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Kochira de gozaimasu.  
*Student:* Kore wa kaku arimasen ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, kaku gozaimasen.  
*Student:* Jaa, kore onegai shimasu.

Student's list

| Type of food | Taste you don't like |
|--------------|----------------------|
| 1. tori      | hot                  |
| 2. sakana    | spicy                |
| 3. yasai     | sweet                |
| 4. pooku     | sour                 |
| 5. biifu     | salty                |

## 特別御定食

メニュー(御夕食)

|                                 |       |        |
|---------------------------------|-------|--------|
| 日本料理定食                          | (松)   | 8,200円 |
|                                 | (竹)   | 6,000円 |
| 刺身定食                            |       | 4,600円 |
| (刺身盛り合わせ・お椀・御飯香物・デザート)          |       |        |
| 天婦羅定食                           |       | 4,600円 |
| (天婦羅・お椀・御飯香物・デザート)              |       |        |
| 牛ロースてり焼定食                       |       | 6,800円 |
| (牛ロースてり焼・お椀・御飯香物・トマトサラダ・デザート)   |       |        |
| しゃぶしゃぶ定食                        | (松)   | 9,500円 |
| (しゃぶしゃぶ・野菜添え・そば香物・アイスクリーム)      |       |        |
|                                 | (竹)   | 6,400円 |
| (刺身盛り合わせ・しゃぶしゃぶ・野菜添え・そば香物・デザート) |       |        |
| オイル焼き定食                         | (ロース) | 8,500円 |
| (オイル焼き・野菜添え・トマトサラダ・御飯香物・デザート)   |       |        |
|                                 | (ヒレ)  | 9,600円 |

**F. Production Exercise**

What do you say when you want to

1. get the attention of a waitress?
2. ask the waitress if the restaurant has an English menu?
3. ask the waitress to come with you to the plastic display?
4. ask the waitress to bring you a knife and a fork?
5. ask someone to buy a meal ticket for you?
6. ask where the cashier is?
7. ask if they serve teriyaki?
8. order the same thing that someone else is eating?
9. ask the waitress to wait a moment, because you haven't decided what to order yet?
10. ask the waitress to bring you some tea?
11. order one dish of tempura?
12. make sure the dish you have selected is not salty?
13. order one more bottle of beer?
14. ask for a check?
15. thank the waitress/cashier on leaving the restaurant?

## G. Role Play

With the help of your instructor, list the words you think you will need in order to place an order. For example:

|       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|
| ageta | fried           |
| nita  | cooked in broth |
| yaita | grilled         |

**Kore wa (ageta) sakana/niku/pooku, etc., desu ka?**

*Is this (fried) fish/meat/pork, etc.?*

other words

tastes I don't like

Using the above words and expressions and the preceding menu, find a dish you want to order. You may want to use the expression **Dore ga oishii desu ka?** 'What is good?' (lit., 'Which is delicious?').

## H. Menu Reading

Look at the menu from a Tokyo sushi shop on the following pages. Find out the following (with the help of your instructor where necessary):

1. What is the telephone number?
2. Where in Tokyo is the sushi-shop located?
3. What beverages do they serve?
4. Which is the word for *sushi*?
5. How many special dishes do they serve for lunch? What are the prices?
6. The Japanese word for 'tuna' is **maguro** and the fatty part of the tuna is called **toro** ( トロ ). Locate it. Which is more expensive, **maguro** or **toro**?

List below the seafoods you want to try in sushi. With the help of your instructor, find out the Japanese words for them, and locate them on the menu.

御 献 立 表

江戸前

神  
田

千 代 田 寿 司



[出前迅速]

本店 **268 - 4621**

東京都千代田区小川町6丁目17-5

|                   |                     |                  |                 |                    |                  |                 |                |                    |                   |                  |                  |        |
|-------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|--------|
| ト口鉄火巻 …………… 一五〇〇円 | 赤身鉄火巻 …………… 一〇〇〇円   | のり巻 …………… 六〇〇円   | ■ 巻もの           | 特上ちらし …………… 一七〇〇円  | 上ちらし …………… 一三〇〇円 | 並ちらし …………… 九〇〇円 | ■ ちらし          | 中トロにぎり …………… 一七〇〇円 | 赤身にぎり …………… 一〇〇〇円 | 上にぎり …………… 一三〇〇円 | 並にぎり …………… 一〇〇〇円 | ■ にぎり  |
| その他お好みにより御注文下さい。  | 赤身まぐろ刺身 …………… 一三〇〇円 | ト口刺身 …………… 一八〇〇円 | イカ刺し …………… 九〇〇円 | 御刺身盛合せ …………… 一五〇〇円 | ■ 御刺身            | 吸物 …………… 二〇〇円   | お新香 …………… 五〇〇円 | 下足生姜焼 …………… 八〇〇円   | 魚荒煮 …………… 八〇〇円    | 数の子 …………… 一二〇〇円  | 玉子焼き …………… 五〇〇円  | ■ 一品料理 |

|              |         |
|--------------|---------|
| ランチタイム・スペシャル |         |
| 十一時から二時まで    |         |
| 寿し           | 大盛 八〇〇円 |
| ちらし          | 並 六〇〇円  |
| ●味噌汁 お吸物付    |         |

● 飲み物

|      |       |      |
|------|-------|------|
| ビール  | ..... | 五〇〇円 |
| お酒   | ..... | 四五〇円 |
| ジュース | ..... | 二五〇円 |
| コーラ  | ..... | 二五〇円 |

- サントリーオールド.....三五〇〇円

■ 大小宴会その他お好みに応じます

千代田寿司

---

---

**READING REVIEW**

---

---

---

---

**KANJI**

---

---

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. 駐車場    | 7. 四丁目   |
| 2. 休憩所(室) | 8. 地下鉄   |
| 3. お手洗い   | 9. 左側通行  |
| 4. 横浜方面   | 10. 右折禁止 |
| 5. 上野     | 11. 発売中  |
| 6. 化粧室    | 12. 発売中止 |



---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Finding out about the taste of a dish*

When you want to try a new dish whose name you don't know, you may want to ask about its taste. In this lesson, you will learn the following 'taste' words

|                  |            |
|------------------|------------|
| <b>shiokarai</b> | salty      |
| <b>karai</b>     | hot, spicy |
| <b>suppai</b>    | sour       |
| <b>amai</b>      | sweet      |
| <b>nigai</b>     | bitter     |

With the help of your instructor, add any additional words that you think you will need.

Suppose you want to try a beef dish. If you ask a waitress/waiter where the beef dishes are on the menu by saying **Biifu wa doko desu ka?**, s/he will probably point to them. Before you make a selection, you may want to know the way the dish is cooked. The following are some of the words you can use in such a situation. (Again, ask the instructor for more words if you think it necessary.)

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>ageta</b>   | fried           |
| <b>nita</b>    | cooked in broth |
| <b>yaita</b>   | grilled         |
| <b>yudeta</b>  | boiled          |
| <b>nama no</b> | raw             |

The above words can be used in the following way:

**Kore wa yaita sakana desu ka?**      *Is this grilled fish?*

When you want to make sure of the taste of the dish you have chosen, you can use the above 'taste words' in the following way.

**Kore wa (taste word) desu ka?**      *Is this one (taste word)?*

For example, if you want to ask whether the dish is salty or not, you can say:

**Kore wa shiokarai desu ka?**      *Is this one salty?*

If the dish isn't salty, the waiter/waitress will often use the word **shiokaraku**, as in **Shiokaraku arimasen** OR **Shiokaraku gozaimasen**. The change from **shiokarai** to **shiokaraku** is exactly the same as that from **tooi** 'far' to **tooku (arimasen)** 'not far' (Lesson 10).

The following is a summary of the negative forms of the taste words:

| <u>affirmative form</u> | <u>negative form</u> |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| shiokarai (desu)        | shiokaraku arimasen  |
| karai (desu)            | karaku arimasen      |
| amai (desu)             | amaku arimasen       |
| suppai (desu)           | suppaku arimasen     |
| nigai (desu)            | nigaku arimasen      |

## 2. Hai as 'No' and lie as 'Yes'

In English, when you want to find out if a dish has a taste you don't like, you will often say something like 'Is this salty?' In Japanese, however, you usually ask a negative question as in the following example:

**Kore wa karaku arimasen ka?**      *Isn't this salty?*

This is softer and politer to the Japanese ear than the more direct English question, though you will be understood if you ask 'Is it salty?'

The English and Japanese answers to the above question are also quite different. In English, when the dish isn't salty you say 'No' while when it is you say 'Yes'. But in Japanese, when it isn't salty you say Hai and when it is you say lie. In Japanese, you respond to the whole content of the question rather than to a part of the content as in English. To the Japanese, the question means. 'Is it the case that the dish isn't salty?' If it is so (that the dish isn't salty), you reply Hai 'yes', and if it's not the case (the dish is salty), you reply lie 'no'. Thus, if you ask a waitress the above question and the waitress answers Hai, it means that she thinks it's the case that the dish isn't salty. Likewise, if she says lie, she means that it isn't the case that the dish isn't salty (i.e., it's salty).

Of course, you can avoid problems that may be caused by this type of question if you use a simple question like **Kore wa shiokarai desu ka?** However, without the knowledge of this difference, you may not always be able to react correctly to what is said to you by Japanese.

Another important thing to keep in mind is that Japanese whose English is imperfect may answer negative questions in English in the same way as they would in Japanese. For example, if you ask such a person 'Don't you want to come?' s/he may answer something like 'No, I want to come' or simply 'No' meaning 'Yes, I do.'

## 3. **Which dish do you recommend?**

In some cases, you may want to ask a waiter/waitress what dish s/he recommends. For example, after finding the type of dish you want, you may still not be sure which one to order.

In such a case, you can ask:

**Dore ga oishii desu ka?**      *Which one is good?*  
*Which one would you recommend?*

## Lesson 23 Placing an order and paying

Of course, if the waiter/waitress points to a dish, then that is the one s/he recommends. (You don't really need to understand accurately what s/he is saying.) If s/he doesn't point to anything and says something you don't understand, you can ask:

**Dore desu ka?**

*Which one is it?*

If you want what s/he points to, you can say:

**Sore kudasai.  
Sore onegai shimasu.**

*Please give me that.*

### 4. *Paying the check and leaving the restaurant*

If a waiter/waitress doesn't leave your check on the table, you can ask for it by saying:

**Okanjoo onegai shimasu.**

*Check, please.*

The word (o)kanjoo literally means 'calculation.' Thus, the above sentence literally means 'Please calculate (how much I owe you OR how much I should pay).'

Depending on the restaurant, you can pay the check either to a waiter/waitress or to the cashier. If you are not sure, ask a waiter/waitress by saying:

**Okanjoo wa doko desu ka?**

*Where do I pay?*

If you can pay the waiter/waitress directly, s/he will say something like the following:

**Koko/kochira de onegai shimasu.**

*Here, please.*

S/he then will take the money to the cashier and bring back your change, if any. If you are supposed to pay the cashier, s/he will say something like:

**Achira desu.  
Achira de onegai shimasu.**

*Over there.  
(Pay) over there, please.*

She may use the word reji 'cashier' (from 'register') instead of achira as in the following:

**Reji de onegai shimasu.**

*(Pay at) the cashier, please.*

When you leave, the cashier or the waiter/waitress will probably say:

**Maido/doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.  
Mata doozo.**

*Thank you very much.  
Please come again.*

Although it isn't necessary for you to say anything (just as in a shopping situation), Japanese people often say that they enjoyed the meal. If you want to do the same, you can use the following expression:

**Gochisoosama (deshita).**

*I've enjoyed the meal.*

---



---

会話

---



---

**Situation 1**

ヌヨー ヒーフはどこですか。  
 ウエイトレス こちらでございます。  
 ヌヨー これは辛いですか。  
 ウエイトレス いいえ、辛くありませんよ。  
 ヌヨー シャ、これ、お願いします。  
  
 ヌヨー すみません。お勘定、お願いします。  
 ウエイトレス はい、毎度ありがとうございます。

**Situation 2**

ヘンターノン 魚はどこですか。  
 ウエイトレス こちらです。  
 ヘンターノン これは塩辛くありませんか。  
 ウエイトレス ええ、少し塩辛いですね。  
 ヘンターノン これは？  
 ウエイトレス それは塩辛くございません。  
 ヘンターノン シャ、これ、お願いします。  
  
 ウエイトレス おすみですか。  
 ヘンターノン ええ。お勘定はどこですか。  
 ウエイトレス あちらでございます。  
 ヘンターノン とうも。

**Situation 3**

ヌヨノンン てんぷらはどこですか。  
 ウエイトレス こちらでございます。  
 ヌヨノンン とれかおいしいですか。  
 ウエイトレス そうですね。これは大変おいしいですよ。  
 ヌヨノンン シャ、それ、ください。  
  
 ヌヨノンン いくらですか。  
 レノの人 850円になります。  
 ヌヨノンン はい。  
 レノの人 150円のお返してす。毎度有り難うございます。又とうそ。  
 ヌヨノンン ちちそうさま。

## Lesson 23 Placing an order and paying

Lesson 24

OPENING A TELEPHONE  
CONVERSATION

もしもし、田中さんのお宅ですか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- open a telephone conversation
- find out if you are calling the place you have in mind
- find out if the person you have in mind is in
- say 'speaking' in Japanese
- apologize when you have a wrong number
- respond to the apology for a wrong number
- ask the caller to hold on
- ask the caller who s/he is

---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mrs. White receives a call at home.*

|                  |   |                                       |
|------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Moshi moshi.</b>                       | <i>Hello.</i>                         |
| <i>Howaito:</i>  | <b>Moshi moshi.</b>                       | <i>Hello.</i>                         |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Howaito-san no otaku desu ka?</b>      | <i>Is this Mr. White's residence?</i> |
| <i>Howaito:</i>  | <b>Hai, soo desu.</b>                     | <i>Yes, it is.</i>                    |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Goshujin irasshaimasu ka?</b>          | <i>Is Mr. White at home?</i>          |
| <i>Howaito:</i>  | <b>Shitsurei desu ga, donata desu ka?</b> | <i>May I ask who is calling?</i>      |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>NHK no Yamamoto desu ga . . .</b>      | <i>This is Mr. Yamamoto from NHK.</i> |
| <i>Howaito:</i>  | <b>Shooshoo omachi kudasai.</b>           | <i>Please hold on a moment.</i>       |

### Situation 2

*Mr. Turner calls Mr. Koyama's house.*

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Taanaa:</i>   | <b>Moshi moshi. Koyama-san no otaku desu ka?</b> | <i>Hello. Is this the Koyama residence?</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, chigaimasu.</b>                          | <i>No, it isn't.</i>                        |
| <i>Taanaa:</i>   | <b>Doomo sumimasen.</b>                          | <i>Oh, I'm sorry.</i>                       |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, doo itashimashite.</b>                   | <i>That's O.K.</i>                          |

### Situation 3

*Mrs. Greenberg receives a call from a Japanese woman.*

|                     |   |  |
|---------------------|---|--|
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>    | <b>Moshi moshi. Guriinbaagu-san no otaku desu ka?</b> | <i>Hello. Is this the Greenberg residence?</i> |
| <i>Guriinbaagu:</i> | <b>Hai, soo desu.</b>                                 | <i>Yes, it is.</i>                             |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i>    | <b>Erizabesu-san irasshaimasu ka?</b>                 | <i>Is Elizabeth in?</i>                        |
| <i>Guriinbaagu:</i> | <b>Watakushi desu ga . . .</b>                        | <i>Speaking.</i>                               |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                        |                                   |          |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| <b>moshi moshi</b>     | hello (on the phone)              | もしもし     |
| <b>otaku</b>           | house (another's), residence      | おたく      |
| <b>irasshaimasu</b>    | is/are (polite)                   | いらっしゃいます |
| <b>shitsuree</b>       | rudeness                          | しつれい     |
| <b>donata</b>          | who? (polite)                     | どなた      |
| <b>NHK</b>             | Japan Broadcasting<br>Cooperation |          |
| <b>doomo sumimasen</b> | I'm sorry, pardon me              | どうもすみません |

Notes

|                           |                               |           |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>sayoo de gozaimasu</b> | that is correct (very polite) | さようでございます |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|

Personalized list



---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

Directions:

The student makes a telephone call and asks for the person named on the list below. The Japanese says *Hai, soo desu* or *lie, chigaimasu*. The student apologizes if s/he got a wrong number.

Example:

*Student:* **Moshi moshi. Yamada- san no otaku desu ka?**  
*Instructor:* **lie, chigaimasu.**  
*Student:* **Doomo sumimasen.**  
*Instructor:* **lie.**

Student's list

Mr. Hara  
Mr. Ono  
Miss Takeda  
Mrs. Ogata  
Mrs. Yamada

**B. Production Exercise**

Directions:

The student makes a phone call to a close Japanese friend (= instructor) and asks for him/her using the friend's first name. The friend replies. Student and friend then reverse their roles.

Example:

*Student :* **Moshi moshi, (Friend's family name)- san no otaku desu ka?**  
*Friend:* **Hai, soo desu.**  
*Student :* **(Friend's first name)-san irasshaimasu ka?**  
*Friend:* **Watakushi desu ga...**

### C. Production Exercise

Directions:

The student makes a telephone call to the instructor. The instructor answers. The student identifies himself/herself by stating his/her work place and name and asks for the instructor's wife/husband. The instructor asks the student to wait a moment. Then the roles are reversed and the practice continues in similar fashion.

Example:

*Student:* Moshi moshi, (Instructor's name)- san no otaku desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu.  
*Student:* (Student's work place) no (student's family name) desu ga, goshujin/okusan irasshaimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

### D. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student calls the instructor and asks for a person whose name is selected from the list below. The instructor answers. The student checks the English statement on the answer sheet below that describes what has happened.

Example:

*Student:* Moshi moshi, Yamashita-san no otaku desu ka?  
*Instructor:* Hai, soo desu.  
*Student:* Goshujin (or Okusan) irasshaimasu ka?  
*Instructor:* Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?  
*Student:* (checks the correct statement)

Student's List

1. Yamanaka's residence. Ask for Yasuko.
2. Takenaka's residence. Ask for Mr. Takenaka.
3. Ueda's residence. Ask for Mrs. Ueda.
4. Okada's residence. Ask for Kazuo.
5. Suzuki's residence. Ask for Mr. Suzuki.

Answer Sheet

1. (     ) Instructor wants to know who you are.  
    (     ) Instructor didn't understand what you said.
2. (     ) Instructor wants to know who you are.  
    (     ) Instructor asked you to wait.

## Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

3. ( ) Instructor didn't understand what you said.  
( ) Instructor is Ms. Ueda
4. ( ) You can't talk to Kazuo  
( ) Instructor wants you to repeat
5. ( ) Mr Suzuki is not available at the moment.  
( ) The person on the line asked you to wait

### 教師用スクリプト

- 1 失礼ですか、となた様ですか。
- 2 少々お待ち下さいませ。
- 3 私てございますか
- 4 は? もう一度おしゃって下さいませんか。
- 5 はい、ちょっと待って下さい。



---

---

**READING REVIEW****KANJI**

---

---

1. 出口

7. 改札口

2. 入口

8. 空車

3. 東口

9. 回送

4. 北口

10. 三番線

5. 南口

11. 急行

6. 西口

12. 案内所

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. How to get the person you want to talk to

In this lesson, you will learn expressions to use when you place or answer a telephone call at home.

**Moshi moshi** is used exactly like 'hello' in an English telephone conversation--you can use it when you begin a conversation or you can use it when you have a bad connection. Thus, in most cases the person who answers will first say **moshi moshi**. However, in some homes, the person may say the name first without **moshi moshi**. In that case, the person will say:

**(name) de gozaimasu.**                      *This is (name)'s residence.*

After getting an answer, you usually make sure that you are calling the right place (except when the person says his/her name first). You can do this by asking:

**(name)-san no otaku desu ka?**                      *Is this (name)'s residence?*

If it's the right place, the person who answers will probably say the following:

**Hai, soo desu.**  
or  
**Hai, sayoo de gozaimasu.**                      *Yes, it is.*

**Sayoo de gozaimasu** is a more polite equivalent of **Soo desu**. Ordinarily, people tend to use especially polite and humble expressions in telephone conversation. One reason for this is that in a conversation that is not face-to-face, there is no way to show politeness except through very polite language. Bowing, for example, will not do any good.

If you reach a wrong number, the person who answers will probably say:

**(lie), chigaimasu (yo).**                      *No, it isn't.*

Then apologize for the wrong number. You can use the following familiar expression:

**Doomo sumimasen.**                      *I'm sorry.*

Then the person will probably reply by saying the following:

**lie (doo itashimashite).**                      *No, (not at all).*

After confirming that the place you are calling is the right one, you ask for the person you want to talk to. For this purpose, you can use the following expression:

**(name)-san irasshaimasu ka?**                      *Is (name) in/at home?*

If you want to talk to Mr. Tanaka, for example, you can say either:

**Tanaka-san irasshaimasu ka?**

OR

**Goshujin irasshaimasu ka?**

As you learned in Lesson 5, *goshujin* refers to someone else's husband. However, the word literally means 'master/head (of the house)'.

Thus, even if the person who answers is not the wife, you can still use the word *goshujin* in the above situation. The same thing applies when you are calling Mrs. Tanaka. You can use the word *okusan* no matter who answers the telephone.

If the person who answers the telephone is the one you want, s/he will probably say:

**Wata(ku)shi desu (ga).**

*Speaking. (literally, 'It's me, but...  
[what do you want?]' )*

When the person who answers leaves the phone to get the person you want, s/he will probably say the following:

**Chotto matte kudasai.**

OR

**Shooshoo omachi kudasai.**

*Please wait a moment.*

*Shooshoo* is politer than *chotto* (both mean 'a little bit'), and *omachi kudasai* is politer than *matte kudasai*.

When you ask for the person you want, it is appropriate to identify yourself both by name and company affiliation. (This way you also avoid being asked who you are.) You can use the following expression for this purpose:

**(work place) no (name) desu.**

*I'm (name) of (work place).*

Thus, if you want to talk to Mr. Tanaka, you will say something like the following:

**Amerika Taishikan no (your name) desu ga, goshujin irasshaimasu ka?**  
*I'm (your name) from the American Embassy May I talk to Mr. Tanaka/your husband, etc.?*

## 2. How to answer a call

What has been discussed above also applies when you answer a call.

When you want to know who the caller is, you can use the following expression, which is comparable to 'May I ask who is calling?' in English:

**Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?** *Excuse me, but who is calling?*

If the caller is a friend of yours or your husband/wife's, s/he may skip a step or use less formal expressions.

## Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

For example, the person may not ask ... *san no otaku desu ka?* but instead ask immediately for the person s/he wants. S/he may also say ... *-san onegai shimasu* 'Mr./Mrs..., please' rather than ...*-san irasshaimasu ka?*

At any rate, although the general procedure is relatively routine, you can't accurately predict what the caller will say. Therefore, whenever you have difficulty, you can use the following familiar expressions:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.</b>              | <i>I don't understand Japanese well.</i> |
| <b>Moo sukoshi yukkuri itte kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Please say it more slowly.</i>        |
| <b>Moo ichi-do yukkuri itte kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Please repeat slowly.</i>             |
| <b>...san desu ne?</b>                           | <i>It's... isn't it?</i>                 |

### 3. How to use public telephones

Different types of telephones are distinguished by their color. Public pay telephones in street booths are blue; semi-public pay phones in front of stores, in shops, and in certain public places are pink and red.

All coin-operated public phones can be used for local and short-distance calls taking up to six 10-yen coins. All pay phones, except yellow and green ones, are operated with 10-yen coins.

The yellow and green phones, used for long-distance calls, take both 10-yen and 100-yen coins. Only green telephones accept special 'telephone cards' which may be purchased in amounts of 500-yen or more at many small shops. The current value of the card is displayed on the telephone and the cost of the call is automatically deducted.

Phone numbers are composed of three groups of numbers. When making calls within Tokyo, dial just the last two groups, or seven digits in all.

The first group of digits is for connection with the long-distance exchange when making domestic inter-city calls. In this case, dial all the numbers in sequence.

How to use a pay phone:

1. pick up the receiver
2. insert a 10-yen coin
3. dial the number

A call is limited to three minutes, but on some phones it can be continued if you insert another 10-yen coin before the three minutes are up. If you put in more coins than necessary, they will be returned after the call is finished.

On some phones, the call will be automatically disconnected after three minutes.

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

日本人: もしもし。  
ホワイト: もしもし。  
日本人: ホワイトさんのお宅ですか。  
ホワイト: はい、そうです。  
日本人: ご主人いらっしゃいますか。  
ホワイト: 失礼ですが、どなたですか。  
日本人: NHKの山本ですが.....  
ホワイト: 少々お待ち下さい。

**Situation 2**

ターナー: もしもし、小山さんのお宅ですか。  
日本人: いいえ、違います。  
ターナー: どうもすみません。  
日本人: いいえ、どういたしまして。

**Situation 3**

日本人: もしもし、グリーンバーグさんのお宅ですか。  
グリーンバーグ: はい、そうです。  
日本人: エリザベスさんいらっしゃいますか。  
グリーンバーグ: 私ですが.....



## Lesson 24 Opening a telephone conversation

Lesson 25

MAKING AND RECEIVING  
A BUSINESS CALL

スミスですが、田中さん、  
お願いします。

**In this lesson, you will learn how to**

- **answer the phone in your office by identifying the name of the office**
- **call an office and give the extension number or the name of the department or section you want**
- **deal with polite expressions used in business phone calls**

---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Lawrence is a secretary in the visa section of the American Embassy. She answers a phone call.*

|           |                                       |                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Roorensu: | Sashoo-ka de gozaimasu.               | Visa Section.                         |
| Watanabe: | Horuto-san onegai shimasu.            | May I speak to Mr. Holt?              |
| Roorensu: | Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?    | May I ask who is calling?             |
| Watanabe: | Nihon Ryokoo no Watanabe desu ga. . . | This is Mr. Watanabe of Japan Travel. |
| Roorensu: | Shooshoo omachi kudasai.              | Please wait a moment.                 |

### Situation 2

*Ms. Carroll calls her friend Ms. Suzuki at Nihon camera.*

|            |  |  |
|------------|--|--|
| Kookanshu: | Nihon Kamera de gozaimasu.                                       | This is Nihon Camera.  |
| Kyaroru:   | Naisen 521, onegai shimasu.                                      | Extension 521, please.   |
| Kookanshu: | Shooshoo omachi kudasai.   | Hold on a moment, please.  |
|            | . . .  | . . .  |
| Nihonjin:  | Jinji-ka desu.   | Personnel.   |
| Kyaroru:   | Amerika Taishikan no Kyaroru desu ga, Suzuki-san onegai shimasu. | I'm Carroll of the American Embassy.<br>May I speak to Ms. Suzuki? |
| Nihonjin:  | Shooshoo omachi kudasai.   | Please wait a moment.  |

### Situation 3

*Mr. Simmons of the American Consulate is calling Mr Sato, who is in the sales department of Yamada Industries.*

|            |  |   |
|------------|--|---|
| Kookanshu: | Ohayoo gozaimasu. Yamada Koogyoo de gozaimasu.                               | Good morning.<br>This is Yamada Industries.   |
| Shimonzu:  | Amerika Ryoojikan no Shimonzu desu ga, eegyoo-ka no Sato-san onegai shimasu. | I'm Simmons of the American Consulate. May I speak to Mr. Sato of the sales department? |
| Kookanshu: | Otsunagi shimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.                                   | I'll connect you.<br>Please wait a moment.  |

## VOCABULARY

## KOTOBA

Dialogs

|                  |                                   |         |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|---------|
| sashoo-ka        | visa section                      | さしょうか   |
| sashoo           | visa                              | さしょう    |
| ka               | section                           | か       |
| Nihon Ryokoo     | Japan Travel                      | にほんりょこう |
| ryokoo           | travel, trip                      | りょこう    |
| naisen           | extension (telephone)             | ないせん    |
| jinji-ka         | personnel section/<br>department  | じんじか    |
| jinji            | personnel (affairs)               | じんじ     |
| eegyoo-ka        | sales department                  | えいぎょうか  |
| eegyoo           | sales                             | えいぎょう   |
| otsunagi shimasu | I'll connect you<br>(deferential) | おつなぎします |

Practice

|            |                                   |        |
|------------|-----------------------------------|--------|
| shachoo    | president<br>(lit., company head) | しゃちょう  |
| buchoo     | department head                   | ぶちょう   |
| kakarichoo | section chief                     | かかりちょう |
| seeji-bu   | political section                 | せいじぶ   |
| seeji      | politics                          | せいじ    |
| keezai-bu  | economic section                  | けいざいぶ  |
| keezai     | economics                         | けいざい   |
| gyoosee-bu | administrative section            | ぎょうせいぶ |
| gyoosee    | administration                    | ぎょうせい  |

## Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

|           |                               |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------|
| ryooji-bu | consular section              | りょうじぶ |
| ryooji    | consul                        | りょうじ  |
| keeri-ka  | accounting section            | けいりか  |
| soomu-bu  | department of general affairs | そうむぶ  |

### Notes

|        |                |      |
|--------|----------------|------|
| bu     | department     | ぶ    |
| kachoo | division chief | かちょう |
| biza   | visa           | ビザ   |

### Personalized list



---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Word Study**

The following are some typical business titles in Japanese:

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| shachoo    | president (lit., 'company head') |
| buchoo     | department head                  |
| kachoo     | division head                    |
| kakarichoo | section chief                    |

Notes: Choo in the above titles is written as 長 and means 'head.'  
A bu is larger than a ka, which is larger than a kakari.

**a. Substitution Drill**

(cue) Department head **Yamada**  
(response) **Yamada-buchoo onegai shimasu.**

Division head **Tanaka**  
President **Ueda**  
Section head **Yoshida**  
Department head **Inoue**

**b. Matching Drill**

Without referring to the above, can you match the following?

|            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| shachoo    | section head    |
| kachoo     | president       |
| kakarichoo | department head |
| buchoo     | division head   |

**B. Production Exercise**

Directions:

The student makes a phone call and asks for a person on the list below. Then the instructor asks the student to wait a moment. Alternatively, the student makes a phone call without giving his/her name. The instructor asks who is calling and the student identifies him/herself. Then the instructor asks the student to wait a moment.

## Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

Example 1:

*Student:* Amerika Taishikan no (his/her name) desu ga,  
Nakamura-san onegai shimasu.

*Instructor:* Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Example 2:

*Student:* Nakamura-san onegai shimasu.

*Instructor:* Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?

*Student:* Amerika Taishikan no (his/her name) desu.

*Instructor:* Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

Student's list

1. Identify your work place (American Consulate) and give your name. Ask for Yamashita-buchoo.
2. Ask for Okazaki-san. You work for the American Center.
3. Ask for Miyama-kachoo. You work for the American Embassy.
4. Identify your work place (American Center) and give your name. Ask for Nakajima-buchoo.
5. Ask for Nakajima-buchoo. You work for the American Consulate.
6. Ask for Yamada-kakarichoo. You work for the American Embassy.

### C. Word Study and Substitution Drill

The following are some of the section names in the American Embassy:

|            |                        |
|------------|------------------------|
| seeji-bu   | political section      |
| keezai-bu  | economic section       |
| gyoosee-bu | administrative section |
| ryooji-bu  | consular section       |
| sashoo-ka  | visa section           |

Substitution Drill

(cue) political section  
(response) Seeji-bu de gozaimasu.

administrative section  
visa section  
political section  
economic section  
consular section

**D. Word Study and Production Exercise**

教師用スクリプト下記参照

The following are some of the sections in a Japanese company:

|                  |                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>eegyoo-bu</b> | <i>sales department</i>              |
| <b>keeri-ka</b>  | <i>accounting division</i>           |
| <b>jinji-ka</b>  | <i>personnel division</i>            |
| <b>soomu-bu</b>  | <i>department of general affairs</i> |

Directions:

The instructor answers the phone, giving the name of an institution. The student asks for a person, identifying the person's name and the department/section, etc. that the person belongs to, referring to the list below. The instructor asks the student to wait.

Example:

*Instructor:* **Pan Amerikan Kookuu de gozaimasu.**  
*Student:* **Jinji-ka no Matsumoto-kachoo onegai shimasu.**  
*Instructor:* **Shooshoo omachi kudasai.**

Student's list

**Ogawa, department head, sales department**  
**Nakanishi, division head, accounting division**  
**Nakada, personnel division**  
**Urata, department head, department of general affairs**  
**Ooshita, sales department**

教師用スクリプト

1. お早うございます。日本保険でございます。
2. 講談社でございます。
3. お待たせ致しました。東京工業です。
4. 富士コンピューターでございます。お待たせ致しました。
5. 交通公社でございます。



## Lesson 25 Making and receiving a business call

### E. Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

#### Directions

The instructor (= operator) answers the phone. The student asks for an extension number, referring to the list below. The instructor (= secretary) answers the phone and identifies the section, department, etc. The student asks for the person on the list.

#### Example

*Instructor:* **Pan Amerikan Kookuu de gozaimasu.**

*Student:* **Naisen 143 onegai shimasu.**

. . .

*Instructor:* **Jinji-ka desu.**

*Student:* **Yamada-san onegai shimasu.**

#### Student's list

| Extension number | Person you ask for |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 592              | Yamamoto-san       |
| 671              | Oki-kachoo         |
| 480              | Ogawa-san          |
| 395              | Koyama-kakarichoo  |
| 702              | Tanaka-buchoo      |

#### 教師用スクリプト

- 1 三菱商事でございます。営業部でございます。
- 2 富士テレビでございます。おはようございます。人事課でございます。
- 3 おはようございます。住友銀行でございます。総務部でございます。
- 4 おはようございます。毎日新聞です。人事課です。
- 5 日本航空でございます。営業部です。

## F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The instructor makes a call and asks for a person. The student asks who is calling. The instructor identifies her/himself by giving her/his work place and name. The student asks the instructor to wait. Then the student checks the correct item on the answer sheet below.

Example:

*Instructor:* Howaito-san onegai shimasu.

*Student:* Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?

*Instructor:* Asahi shinbun no Okada desu ga. . .

*Student:* Shooshoo omachi kudasai.

(student checks the correct item)

Answer sheet

1. ( ) Nihon Biiru, Yamanaka  
( ) Nihon Biiru, Yamada
2. ( ) Mitsubishi Ginkoo, Sasaki  
( ) Mitsui Ginkoo, Sasaki
3. ( ) Gaimushoo, Saito  
( ) Tsuusanshoo, Shimizu
4. ( ) Toyota, Saito  
( ) Nissan, Takahashi
5. ( ) Asahi Shinbun, Okawa  
( ) Yomiuri Shinbun, Ogawa

教師用スクリプト

- 1 フラウンさんお願いします。日本ヒールの山田です。
- 2 クリーンさんいらっしゃいますか。三井銀行の佐々木と申します。
- 3 ケリーさんお願いします。外務省の斉藤ですか
- 4 テーラーさんお願い致します。日産の高橋と申します。
- 5 ハーパーさんお願いします。読売新聞の小川と申します。

**G. Translation Exercise**

- a. Student A: Extension 397, please.  
Student B: Please wait a moment.  
...  
Student B: Personnel Division.  
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.  
May I speak to Mr. Murakami?  
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- b. Student A: Hello. Is this the accounting section?  
Student B: Yes, it is.  
Student A: May I speak to (B's name)?  
Student B: Speaking.
- c. Student A: May I speak to Mr. Kitamura?  
Student B: Who is calling, please?  
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.  
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- d. Student A: Hello. Is this the sales department?  
Student B: Yes, it is.  
Student A: May I speak to Mr. Kato, the department head?  
Student B: May I ask who is calling?  
Student A: I'm (name) from the American Embassy.  
Student B: Please wait a moment.
- e. Student A: American Embassy.  
Student B: The visa section, please.  
Student A: Please wait a moment.  
...  
Student A: Visa Section.  
Student B: May I speak to Mr. White, the section head?  
Student A: May I ask who is calling?

## Supplementary Materials

### A. Substitution Drill

Example 1:

*cue:* Yoshida-san  
*response:* Yoshida-san no otaku desu ka?

Example 2:

*cue:* Mitsubishi Ginkoo  
*response:* Mitsubishi Ginkoo desu ka?

Cue word  
 Suzuki-san  
 NHK  
 Kodama-san  
 Tokyo Eki  
 Nihon Ginkoo  
 Yamaguchi-san

### B. Scrambled Sentence Exercise

Instructions: Arrange the words in 'your' part in the proper order.

1. *Caller:* Moshi moshi.  
*You:* (Taishikan, moshi moshi, gozaimasu, Amerika, de)

---

2. *Caller:* Buraun-san onegai shimasu.  
*You:* (omachi, shooshoo, kudasai)

---

3. *Caller:* Uiruson-san onegai shimasu.  
*You:* (donata, shitsuree, ga, desu, ka, desu)

---

4. *Caller:* Sumisu-san onegai shimasu.  
*You:* (desu, watakushi, ga)

---

5. *You:* (moo ichi-do, sumimasen, kudasai, itte)

---

**C. Give the Japanese equivalents.**

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: Hello.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Hello.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: Is this the American Embassy?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Yes, it is.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: May I speak to Mr. King?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Please wait a moment.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: Hello.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Hello. This is the visa section.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: May I speak to Mr. Johnson?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Hold on a moment, please.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: Hello. Is this Japan Travel?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Yes, it is.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: May I speak to Ms. Suzuki?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Who is calling, please?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ A: This is Ms. Smith from the U.S. Consulate.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ B: Hold on a moment, please.

---

---

**READING**

**KANJI**

---

---

1. 料亭                      ryootee                      (Japanese) restaurant
  
2. 料理                      ryoori                      cooking, cuisine

---

---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---

---

### 1. How to call a person at his/her office

When you call a person at his/her office, the operator will probably say the name of the company after using a greeting expression (without *moshi moshi*). For example, if you are calling Mitsubishi Shooji 'Mitsubishi Trading Company' in the morning, the operator will probably say:

**Ohayoo gozaimasu. Mitsubishi Shooji de gozaimasu.**

*Good Morning This is Mitsubishi Trading Company*

If you know the extension number, you can say the following to the operator:

**Naisen xxx onegai shimasu.**

*Extension xxx, please*

As you learned in Lesson 10, phone numbers in Japanese are simply read out as in English. Thus, extension number 123 is read *Naisen ichi ni san*. It should be noted that you can't use *kudasai* for *onegai shimasu* in the above sentence. You learned that *kudasai* and *onegai shimasu* can be used interchangeably in buying merchandise or placing an order at a restaurant. However, the word *kudasai* (without a verb in front of it) is normally used when you ask someone to give you some concrete objects. Thus, when you ask for an extension number, person, section, or department on the phone, only *onegai shimasu* is possible.

If you don't have the extension number, you can give the name of the section or department to the operator:

**... ka/bu onegai shimasu.**

*section/department, please.*

For example, if you are calling the *jinji-ka* 'personnel section,' you can say:

**Jinji-ka onegai shimasu.**

*Personnel Office, please*

The operator will probably reply by saying one or both of the following:

**Shooshoo omachi kudasai.**

*Please wait a moment*

**Otsunagi shimasu/itashimasu.**

*I'll connect you*

The person who answers in the section/department will give the name of the department first, as illustrated below

**Jinji-ka desu/de gozaimasu.**

*This is the Personnel office*

When you ask for the person you want, you can say

**... san onegai shimasu.**

*Mr. . . , please*

When a Japanese person calls someone at their office, s/he usually uses the title of the person after their name. Thus, if you are calling Mr. Tanaka, who is a section chief, you will say:

**Tanaka-kachoo onegai shimasu.**      *Section Chief Tanaka, please.*

Occasionally, the office you are calling has more than one person with the same name. This is especially true when you are calling someone whose name is Tanaka, Yamada, or some other very common name. In this case, if you give the title of the person, the person who answers the phone will be able to more easily identify who you want. Another advantage to using a title is that even if you don't know the name of the person, you still have a good chance of getting through without extended explanations.

**Kachoo-san onegai shimasu.**      *The section chief, please.*

In the above example, the address term . . . san is used after the title. The use of the address term makes the sentence softer and more polite. If you don't use this word, the implication is that your position is higher than that of person you are calling.

It is best, whenever you can, to make sure that you know the name of the person before calling and to use the neutral expression (name)-san . This will avoid problems that may be caused by misuse of the title. However, it is worth knowing that the title is used in the above manner by the Japanese, especially when you are answering a call in your office.

## 2. How to answer a call in your office

What has been discussed above also applies when you answer a call in your office. For example, if you answer the phone for the American Embassy, the first thing you will say is:

(Greeting) **Amerika Taishikan de gozaimasu.**

(Greeting) *This is the American Embassy.*

If you are answering in the visa section, your first utterance will be:

**Sashoo-ka de gozaimasu.**      *The visa section.*

(Sashoo is the Japanese word for 'visa')

The caller may ask for your boss by saying . . .san onegai shimasu. Alternatively, s/he may ask for your boss by giving only his/her title (and . . .san). What is important is that you are supposed to use more polite (or more humble) expressions when you answer the phone. This is because the Japanese think you are answering the phone on behalf of your office.

Thus, de gozaimasu is more appropriate than desu. Likewise, Shooshoo omachi kudasai 'Please wait a moment' is more appropriate than Chotto matte kudasai. We will continue our discussion of more polite (and more humble) expressions used in telephone conversations in the next lesson.



---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

ローレンス 査証課でございます。  
渡辺 ナルトさんお願いします。  
ローレンス 失礼ですか、となたてですか。  
渡辺 日本旅行の渡辺ですか  
ローレンス 少々お待ち下さい。

**Situation 2**

交換手 日本カメラでございます。  
キャロル 内線521お願いします。  
交換手 少々お待ちください。

人事課の人 人事課です。  
キャロル アメリカ大使館のキャロルですか、鈴木さんお願いします。  
人事課の人 少々お待ちください。

**Situation 3**

交換手 お早うございます。山田工業でございます。  
ンモンズ アメリカ領事館のンモンズですか、営業課の  
佐藤さんお願いします。  
交換手 おつなぎします。少々お待ちください。

Lesson 26

MORE TELEPHONE CALLS

英語のわかる人はいませんか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- say that you will give the phone to a person who can understand Japanese
- ask if you can talk to a person who understands English
- say that the person the caller wants is not in
- say that you will call again



---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*A Japanese man calls Mr. Wright's residence. Mrs. Wright answers the phone.*

|                   |  |  |
|-------------------|--|--|
| <i>Yamashita:</i> | <b>A, moshi moshi. Raito-san no otaku desu ka?</b>                   | <i>Hello. Is this Mr. Wright's residence?</i>                      |
| <i>Raito:</i>     | <b>Hai, soo desu.</b>  | <i>Yes, it is.</i>   |
| <i>Yamashita:</i> | <b>Asahi Shinbun no Yamashita desu ga, goshujin irasshaimasu ka?</b> | <i>I'm Yamashita of the Asahi Newspaper. Is your husband home?</i> |
| <i>Raito:</i>     | <b>Ima orimasen ga. . .</b>  | <i>No, he is not.</i>  |
| <i>Yamashita:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Jaa, mata odenwa itashimasu.</b>                     | <i>Oh. Well then, I'll call again.</i>                             |
| <i>Raito:</i>     | <b>Soo desu ka. Sayoonara.</b>                                       | <i>I see. Good-bye.</i>  |

### Situation 2

*A Japanese man calls the American Embassy and asks for Mr. Holt.*

|                  |  |   |
|------------------|--|---|
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Horuto-san onegai shimasu.</b>  | <i>May I speak to Mr. Holt?</i>   |
| <i>Denisu:</i>   | <b>Ima orimasen ga. . .</b>  | <i>He is not in now.</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Soo desu ka. Nan-ji goro omodori ni narimasu ka?</b>                            | <i>Oh. What time will he come back?</i>                                       |
| <i>Denisu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Nihongo ga wakaruru mono to kowarimasu. Shooshoo omachi kudasai.</b> | <i>I'm sorry. I'll get someone who speaks Japanese. Please wait a moment.</i> |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>lie, kekkoo desu. Mata denwa shimasu.</b>                                       | <i>No, that's O.K. I'll call again.</i>                                       |
| <i>Denisu:</i>   | <b>Soo desu ka.</b>  | <i>Is that so?</i>  |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Jaa, shitsuree shimasu.</b>   | <i>Well then, good-bye.</i>   |
| <i>Denisu:</i>   | <b>Sayoonara.</b>  | <i>Good-bye.</i>  |

**Situation 3**

*After talking to an operator, Mr. Jones is connected to the section where Mr. Koyama works.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Koyama-san onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>May I speak to Mr. Koyama?</i>   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Chotto omachi kudasai.</b>   | <i>Hold on a second, please.</i>  |
|                  | . . .   | . . .   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Omatase shimashita. Koyama wa kyoo wa oyasumi desu. Ashita wa kuru to omoimasu ga, nanika okotozuke ga gozaimasu ka?</b> | <i>I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. Koyama is on leave today. I think he'll come tomorrow, but is there a message?</i> |
| <i>Joonzu:</i>   | <b>Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasu ka?</b>   | <i>I'm sorry. I don't know Japanese very well. Is there anyone who speaks English?</i>                                    |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Jaa, chotto omachi kudasai.</b>  | <i>Well then, please wait a moment.</i>   |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                            |  |             |
|----------------------------|--|-------------|
| <b>orimasen</b>            | is not (here)<br>(deferential form of imasen)          | おりません       |
| <b>odenwa itashimasu</b>   | make a telephone call<br>(very deferential)            | おでんわいたします   |
| <b>goro</b>                | approximately  | ごろ          |
| <b>omodori ni narimasu</b> | return (deferential)                                   | おもどりになります   |
| <b>mono</b>                | person (humble)  | もの          |
| <b>to</b>                  | to, toward   | と           |
| <b>kawarimasu</b>          | change   | かわります       |
| <b>denwa shimasu</b>       | make a phone call                                      | でんわします      |
| <b>omatase shimashita</b>  | I'm sorry to have<br>kept you waiting<br>(deferential) | おまたせしました    |
| <b>oyasumi desu</b>        | rest, take a vacation<br>(polite)                      | おやすみです      |
| <b>ashita</b>              | tomorrow   | あした         |
| <b>kuru</b>                | come (dictionary<br>form of kimasu)                    | くる          |
| <b>...to omoimasu</b>      | think that ...   | .....とおもいます |
| <b>nanika</b>              | some kind of, something                                | なにか         |
| <b>okotozuke</b>           | message  | おことづけ       |

Notes

|                               |   |            |
|-------------------------------|---|------------|
| <b>yasunde imasu</b>          | be resting, taking leave<br>(TE form of yasumimasu) | やすんでいます    |
| <b>seki o hazushite imasu</b> | be away from one's desk                             | せきをはずしています |

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Production Exercise**

## Directions

Student A makes a phone call to student B and asks for B's husband or wife. Student B says either that s/he is not in now or asks the caller to wait for a moment and identify him/herself. Student A responds in the first case by saying s/he will call again and in the second by identifying himself/herself, giving a work place and name.

## Example 1

*Student A*      **Moshi moshi. Goshujin/okusan onegai shimasu.**  
*Student B*      **Ima orimasen ga. . .**  
*Student A*      **Jaa, kekkoo desu. Mata odenwa shimasu.**

## Example 2

*Student A*      **Moshi moshi. Goshujin/okusan onegai shimasu.**  
*Student B*      **Shooshoo omachi kudasai.**  
                      **Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?**  
*Student A.*      **Amerika Taishikan no (A's name) desu.**

**B. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

教師用スクリプト下記参照

## Directions.

The student asks for a person on the phone, referring to the list below. The instructor answers. The student checks the instructor's response on the answer sheet below. If the person the student asked for is not in, s/he says that s/he will call again.

## Example

*Student*          **Moshi moshi. Yamada-kachoo onegai shimasu.**  
*Instructor*      **Ima seki o hazushite orimasu ga. . .**  
*Student*          (check the correct response)  
                      **Soo desu ka. Jaa, mata odenwa shimasu.**

## 教師用スクリプト

- 1 部長は今席をはずしておりますか
- 2 今日はお休みですか
- 3 今ちょっと席をはずしておりますか
- 4 はい、少々お待ちください。
- 5 伊藤は今日は休みですか

## Lesson 26 More telephone calls

| Student's list       | Answer  |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Watanabe-buchoo   | ( ) He is off today.<br>( ) He is not at his desk now.  |
| 2. Matsushita-kachoo | ( ) He is not in today.<br>( ) He is off today.<br>( ) He is away on a business trip.         |
| 3. Katoo-kachoo      | ( ) He is in today.<br>( ) He isn't at his desk now.<br>( ) He is at a meeting now.           |
| 4. Nishida-buchoo    | ( ) He is at a meeting.<br>( ) He is not at his desk.<br>( ) He will be with you in a moment. |
| 5. Itoo-kachoo       | ( ) He is off today.<br>( ) He is away on a business trip.<br>( ) He will come to the phone.  |

### C. Production Exercise

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The instructor asks whether a person that s/he wants to talk to is in or not. The student answers that s/he is not in now. The instructor asks further questions or makes a request, based on the script below. If the student understands, s/he responds appropriately. If not, s/he says that s/he does not understand Japanese well and will get someone who speaks Japanese.

Example:

- Instructor:* Nakamura-buchoo irasshaimasu ka?  
*Student:* Ima orimasen ga...  
*Instructor:* Aa, soo desu ka. Itsu goro omodori ni narimasu ka?  
*Student:* Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.  
Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.

教師用スクリプト

1. ブラウン課長お願いします。  
ああ、そうですか。でも、今日はいらしていますね。
2. ホールさんお願いします。外出中ですか。
3. ホワイトさんいらっしゃいますか。  
今日はお戻りになりますか。
4. テーラー部長いらっしゃいますか。  
おことづけをお願いしたいんですが、よろしいですか。
5. スペンサーさんいらっしゃいますか。  
ちょっと急用なんですけど.....

**D. Production Exercise**

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student calls a person on the phone, referring to the list below. The instructor answers, reading the script below. If the student understands, s/he answers appropriately. If not, s/he says that s/he doesn't understand Japanese well and asks for someone who speaks English.

Example:

- Student:** Satoo-san onegai shimasu.  
**Instructor:** Ainiku desu ga, tadaima chotto seki o hazushite orimasu.  
**Student:** Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen. Eego ga wakaruru hito wa imasu ka?

**Student's list**

教師用スクリプト

- |                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. <b>Oota-buchoo</b>   | 只今ちょっと席を外している様ですが.....何かおことづけ致しましょうか。  |
| 2. <b>Sasaki-san</b>    | 佐々木は京都へ出張でございます。来週帰る予定でございますが.....     |
| 3. <b>Imai-kachoo</b>   | 今井は今外出しております。何かおことづけがございますか。           |
| 4. <b>Koyama-kachoo</b> | あいにく小山は休みです。明日はまいります.....おことづけがございますか。 |
| 5. <b>Kaneko-buchoo</b> | 申し訳ありませんが只今会議中でございます。お急ぎの用でございますか。     |

**E. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student asks if there's someone who speaks English. The instructor responds by reading from the script. The student checks the appropriate response.

Example:

- Student:** Eego ga wakaruru hito wa imasu ka?  
**Instructor:** Ee, chotto omachi kudasai.  
**Student:** (checks the correct response)



## Lesson 26 More telephone calls

| Response  | 教師用スクリプト                   |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. ( ) No, there isn't.<br>( ) Yes, please wait a moment. | あいにくですか、今はちょっと             |
| 2. ( ) No, there isn't.<br>( ) Yes, please wait a moment. | はい、ちょっとお待ちください。            |
| 3. ( ) No, there isn't.<br>( ) Yes, please wait a moment. | 今ちょっと .                    |
| 4. ( ) No, there isn't.<br>( ) Yes, there is.             | そうですね。じゃあ、ちょっと<br>お待ちください。 |

### F. Production and Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

The student says that s/he will get someone who speaks Japanese. The instructor responds, reading from the script. The student checks the appropriate response.

Example:

*Student:* **Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.**

*Instructor:* **Soo desu ka. Jaa, onegai shimasu.**

*Student:* (checks the right response)

| Response                                   | 教師用スクリプト                |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. ( ) No, that's O.K.<br>( ) Yes, please. | いいえ、結構です。またお電話致します。     |
| 2. ( ) No, that's O.K.<br>( ) Yes, please. | そうですね。じゃあ、お願いします。       |
| 3. ( ) No, that's O.K.<br>( ) Yes, please. | いいえ、また電話致しますから<br>結構です。 |
| 4. ( ) No, that's O.K.<br>( ) Yes, please. | すみませんね。お願いします。          |

### G. Comprehension Exercise 教師用スクリプト下記参照

Directions:

You answer the phone. The caller is your instructor. Choose the statement which best describes the subsequent conversation.

教師用スクリプト

1. The caller  
 (     ) says that s/he is Clark.                  もしもし。クラークさんですか。  
 (     ) wishes to talk to Clark.
2. The caller says that  
 (     ) s/he will call again later.              じゃあ、また後てお電話します。  
 (     ) s/he wants you to call him/  
    her later.
3. The caller  
 (     ) asked you to repeat what              もう一度おっしゃって下さいま  
    you said.    せんか。  
 (     ) told you that s/he will call again.
4. The caller  
 (     ) wants to know your name.              恐れ入りますか、とちら様です  
 (     ) is going to tell you his/her              か。  
    name.

**H. Comprehension Exercise**

テープ用スクリプト次ページ参照

Listen to the taped conversation and answer the following with **Yes** or **No**:

| Conversation No / Questions              | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Did the caller get the right number?     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Was the person the caller wanted in?     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Did the caller identify himself/herself? |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

## Lesson 26 More telephone calls

### テープ用スクリプト

1. **A:** もしもし。コナリーさんのお宅ですか。  
**B:** はい、そうです。  
**A:** 私、NHKの山下ですか、ご主人いらっしゃいますか。  
**B:** はい、少々おまちください。
2. **A:** もしもし。鈴木さんのお宅ですか。  
**B:** いいえ、違います。  
**A:** あ、どうも、すみません。  
**B:** いいえ。
3. **A:** もしもし。  
**B:** 日本カメラでございます。  
**A:** 私、アメリカ大使館のフラウンですが、営業部の山田さんお願いします。  
**B:** あ、フラウンですか。私、山田です。
4. **A:** もしもし。鈴木さんお願いします。  
**B:** あ、鈴木はちょっと席をはすしていますが.....  
**A:** じゃあ、また電話します。  
**B:** そうですか。失礼しました。  
**A:** さよなら。
5. **A:** もしもし。佐藤課長いらっしゃいますか。  
**B:** 課長は、きょうお休みですが、明日来ると思いますが、何かおことづけがございますか。  
**A:** いいえ、結構です。また明日電話します。  
**B:** そうですか。じゃあ、ごめんください。  
**A:** さよなら。
6. **A:** もしもし。太田さんお願いします。  
**B:** 私ですか .... 失礼ですか、どなたですか。  
**A:** アメリカンセンターのトンプソンです。  
**B:** ああ、トンプソンさんですか。
7. **A:** もしもし。青木さんのお宅ですか。  
**B:** はい、さようでございます。  
**A:** 私、アメリカ大使館のケリーですか、ご主人お願いします。  
**B:** すみません。主人はまたもとりませんか.....  
**A:** じゃあ、またお電話致します。  
**B:** そうですか。失礼しました。ごめんください。  
**A:** ごめんください。

---

---

**READING REVIEW****KANJI**

---

---

- |        |         |
|--------|---------|
| 1. 東口  | 8. 東京方面 |
| 2. 出口  | 9. 山手線  |
| 3. 運賃表 | 10. 改札口 |
| 4. 地下鉄 | 11. 西口  |
| 5. 入口  | 12. 五番線 |
| 6. 南口  | 13. 北口  |
| 7. 連絡口 | 14. 急行  |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. How to say '(name) isn't in now'

When you are answering a call, you may need to say that the person the caller wants is not in. Look at the following

*Caller:* **Howaito-san onegai shimasu.**      *Mr White, please*  
*Answerer:* **Howaito wa ima orimasen ga. . .**      *White isn't in now*

As you may have noticed, the person who answered didn't use *-san* after the name in the above conversation. This is because the person is answering the phone on behalf of the institution s/he belongs to. (Cf. Lesson 5 for the in-group/out-group distinction.) Thus, when the person mentions an in-group member, s/he is expected to treat the person as s/he would herself/himself (cf. Lesson 5). When you greet a Japanese colleague by the name of Yamamoto in the morning, you will say

**Yamamoto-san, ohayoo gozaimasu.**      *Good morning, Mr Yamamoto*

However, when you mention him to an out-group member on the phone (i.e., when you are acting on behalf of your institution), you will say:

**Yamamoto wa ima orimasen ga. . .**      *Yamamoto isn't in now*

In Lesson 24, you learned that when you ask for a person on the phone, you can say:

**(name)-san irasshaimasu ka?**      *Is (name) in?*

The word *irasshaimasu* is the more polite form of *imasu*. Thus, the above sentence indicates that the speaker is showing respect to the person s/he is referring to. However, when you refer to an in-group member, you use a deferential or humble expression so that your speech sounds polite to the hearer. The word *orimasu* is the humble form of *imasu*. This is why the person who answered in the conversation above said **Orimasen ga** rather than **Irasshaimasen ga** or **Imasen ga**.

The following is a summary of the above:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>(when you ask if an out-group person is in)</p> <p><b>X-san irasshaimasu ka?</b><br/><i>Is Mr X in?</i></p> | <p>(when you say an in-group person isn't in)</p> <p><b>X wa ima orimasen ga. . .</b><br/><i>X isn't in now</i></p> |
|--|---|

Although respectful or humble words are more appropriate in the above situations, the neutral word *imasu* can be used without being offensive, as in the following:

|                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>X-san wa imasu ka?</b> | <b>X wa ima imasen ga. . .</b> |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|

## 2. *How to say 'I'll call again'*

When the person you want is not in, you may wish to leave a message. However, the contents of the message may be too complex to express in Japanese. In such a case, you may wish to say *'I'll call again'* in Japanese, so that you can call at another time (or avoid possible difficulties in comprehending what the person on the line says). You can use the following expression for this purpose:

**Mata odenwa shimasu.** *I'll call again.*

## 3. *'Is there someone (there) who understands English?'*

You may wonder what the person on the line will say when the person you want is absent. The following are some key words and expressions you will need to know to understand what you hear:

**(X wa) kyoo wa yasunde imasu.** *X is absent today.*

OR

**(X wa) ima seki o hazushite imasu.** *X isn't at his/her desk at the moment.*

Although you can say *Mata odenwa shimasu 'I'll call again,'* if you have urgent business you may want to talk to a person who understands English.

The following is the expression to use in such a case:

**Eego ga wakaru hito wa imasu/imasen ka?**  
*Is there someone who understands English?*

Likewise, when you are answering a call and have difficulty understanding what the caller is saying, you may want to say something like *'I'll switch with a person who understands Japanese.'* You can use the following expression for this purpose:

**Nihongo ga wakaru mono to kawarimasu.**  
*I'll switch with a person who understands Japanese.*

Compare the expressions *eego ga wakaru hito 'person who understands English'* and *nihongo ga wakaru mono 'person who understands Japanese.'* You may have noticed that the word *hito* is used in the first expression and *mono* in the second, although both mean *'person.'* This is another example of the in-group/out-group distinction. The word *mono* is used when you refer to an in-group person while *hito* is used when you refer to an out-group person. *Mono* is humble while *hito* is neutral.

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

山下: あ、もしもし。ライトさんのお宅ですか。  
ライト: はい、そうです。  
山下: 朝日新聞の山下ですが、ご主人いらっしゃいますか。  
ライト: 今、おりませんが.....  
山下: そうですか、じゃ、又お電話いたします。  
ライト: そうですか。さようなら。

**Situation 2**

日本人: ホルトさん、お願いします。  
テニス: 今、おりませんが.....  
日本人: そうですか、何時ごろおもどりになりますか。  
テニス: すみません。日本語がわかる者とかわります。  
少々、お待ちください。  
日本人: いいえ、けっこうです。又、電話します。  
テニス: そうですか。  
日本人: じゃ、失礼します。  
テニス: さようなら。

**Situation 3**

ジョーンズ: 小山さん、お願いします。  
日本人: ちょっとお待ちください。  
...  
日本人: お待たせしました。小山は今日はお休みです。  
明日は来るとは思いますが、何かおことづけがございますか。  
ジョーンズ: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。  
英語がわかる人はいますか。  
日本人: じゃあ、ちょっとお待ちください。

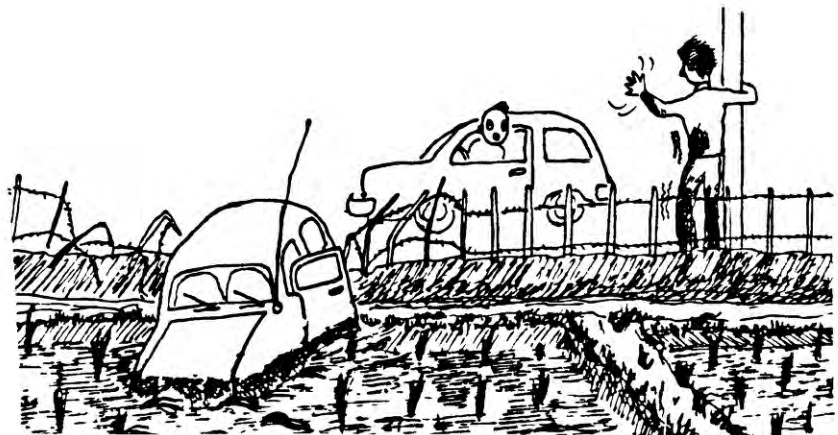
Lesson 27

EMERGENCIES

警察を呼んでください。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- tell someone that you've had a car accident
- ask someone to call an ambulance, the police, a doctor, and /or another place you want to reach
- describe simple symptoms to a doctor





## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

## Situation 1

*While driving on a country road, Mr Nelson has a car accident which does not involve another party.*

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| <b>Neruson:</b>  | <b>Chotto. Kuruma no jiko desu. Sumimasen ga, keesatsu o yonde kudasai.</b> | <i>Excuse me. I had a car accident. Could you please call the police?</i> |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Keganin wa imasu ka?</b>   | <i>Is there anyone injured?</i>   |
| <b>Neruson:</b>  | <b>Imasen.</b>  | <i>No, there isn't.</i>   |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Jaa, sugu keesatsu ni denwa shimasu. Chotto matte ite kudasai.</b>       | <i>Well then, I'll call the police right away. Please wait.</i>           |
| <b>Neruson:</b>  | <b>Anoo, Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shitain desu ga. . .</b>                | <i>Ah, I'd like to call the American Embassy.</i>                         |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b> | <b>Jaa, issho ni ikimashoo.</b>   | <i>Well then, let's go together.</i>                                      |

## Situation 2

*Mrs. Cunningham has a car accident while driving alone on the street. The other party seems to be injured badly.*

|                     |  |   |
|---------------------|--|---|
| <b>Kaninguhamu:</b> | <b>Chotto, sumimasen. Kuruma no jiko desu. Keganin ga imasu. Keesatsu to kyuukyuuusha o yonde kudasai.</b> | <i>Excuse me. I had a car accident. There's someone injured. Please call the police and an ambulance.</i> |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b>    | <b>Kuruma no jiko? Jaa, sugu denwa shimasu.</b>  | <i>A car accident? Then I'll call right away.</i>   |
| <b>Kaninguhamu:</b> | <b>Sumimasen ga, Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shite kudasaimasen ka? Shujin ga imasu kara. . .</b>           | <i>Would you please call the American Embassy? My husband works there.</i>                                |
| <b>Nihonjin:</b>    | <b>Ii desu yo.</b>   | <i>All right.</i>   |
| <b>Kaninguhamu:</b> | <b>Kore wa watakushi no meeshi desu. Onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>This is my calling card. I'm much obliged to you.</i>  |

## Situation 3

While on a business trip to a small town, Mrs. Bennett is staying at a Japanese-style inn. She has a severe pain in her abdomen and wants to see a doctor.

|                 |  |  |
|-----------------|--|--|
| <b>Benetto:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Sugu oisha-san o yonde kudasai.</b>  | <i>Excuse me. Please call a doctor immediately.</i>  |
|                 | ...  | ...  |
| <i>Isha:</i>    | <b>Doo shimashita ka?</b>  | <i>What happened?</i>  |
| <b>Benetto:</b> | <b>Koko ga itain desu.</b>   | <i>I have a pain here. (pointing)</i>  |
|                 | ...  | ...  |
| <i>Isha:</i>    | <b>Netsu wa arimasen kara daijoubu deshoo. Kore o nonde sukoshi yasunde ite kudasai.</b> | <i>You don't have a fever, so it should be all right. Take this and rest up for a while.</i> |
| <b>Benetto:</b> | <b>Sumimasen. Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasen.</b>   | <i>I'm sorry. I don't understand Japanese very well.</i>                                     |
| <i>Isha:</i>    | <b>Soo desu ka. No fever. Take this three times a day, before meals.</b>                 | <i>I see. No fever. Take this three times a day before meals.</i>                            |
| <b>Benetto:</b> | <b>Wakarimasu. Doomo arigatoo.</b>   | <i>I understand. Thank you.</i>  |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                           |   |           |
|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| <b>chotto</b>             | Excuse me (may I have your attention?)      | ちょっと      |
| <b>jiko</b>               | accident                                    | じこ        |
| <b>keesatsu</b>           | police                                      | けいさつ      |
| <b>keganin</b>            | injured person                              | けがにん      |
| <b>matte ite kudasai</b>  | please (remain) waiting                     | まっていてください |
| <b>ikimashoo</b>          | let's go                                    | いきましょう    |
| <b>kyuukyusha</b>         | ambulance                                   | きゅうきゅうしゃ  |
| <b>oisha-san</b>          | doctor                                      | おいしゃさん    |
| <b>doo shimashita ka?</b> | what's the matter?                          | どうしましたか   |
| <b>itai</b>               | painful, hurts                              | いたい       |
| <b>netsu</b>              | fever                                       | ねつ        |
| <b>daijobu</b>            | all right, no problem                       | だいじょうぶ    |
| <b>deshoo</b>             | probably be                                 | でしょう      |
| <b>nonde</b>              | drink<br>(TE form of nomimasu)              | のんで       |
| <b>yasunde ite</b>        | (remain) resting<br>(TE form of yasumimasu) | やすんでいて    |

Practice

|              |          |     |
|--------------|----------|-----|
| <b>atama</b> | head     | あたま |
| <b>me</b>    | eye      | め   |
| <b>ha</b>    | tooth    | は   |
| <b>hana</b>  | nose     | はな  |
| <b>kuchi</b> | mouth    | くち  |
| <b>nodo</b>  | throat   | のど  |
| <b>kubi</b>  | neck     | くび  |
| <b>kata</b>  | shoulder | かた  |
| <b>ude</b>   | arm      | うで  |
| <b>te</b>    | hand     | て   |

|           |             |       |
|-----------|-------------|-------|
| yubi      | finger, toe | ゆび    |
| mune      | chest       | むね    |
| onaka     | abdomen     | おなか   |
| ashi      | foot, leg   | あし    |
| tasukete! | help!       | たすけて! |

### Notes

|                       |                                  |           |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| isha                  | doctor                           | いしゃ       |
| hakike ga shimasu     | feel nauseous                    | はきけがします   |
| kimochi ga warui desu | feel sick, sick in one's stomach | きもちがわるいです |
| memai ga shimasu      | I feel dizzy                     | めまいがします   |

### Reference

|               |                     |         |
|---------------|---------------------|---------|
| hai           | lung                | はい      |
| choo          | intestine           | ちょう     |
| senaka        | back                | せなか     |
| hiza          | knee                | ひざ      |
| hiji          | elbow               | ひじ      |
| shita         | tongue              | した      |
| koshi         | lower back          | こし      |
| ketsuatsu     | blood pressure      | けつあつ    |
| koo-ketsuatsu | high blood pressure | こうけつあつ  |
| tee-ketsuatsu | low blood pressure  | ていけつあつ  |
| taion         | body temperature    | たいおん    |
| shujutsu      | operation           | しゅじゅつ   |
| myaku (haku)  | pulse               | みやく     |
| rentogen      | X-ray               | レントゲン   |
| shinzoobyoo   | heart disease       | しんぞうびょう |
| shinzoomahi   | heart attack        | しんぞうまひ  |
| ikaiyoo       | stomach ulcer       | いかいよう   |
| haien         | pneumonia           | はいえん    |
| seebyoo       | VD                  | せいびょう   |
| benpi         | constipation        | べんぴ     |

## Lesson 27 Emergencies

arerugii  
geri

allergy  
diarrhea

アレルギー  
げり

**Personalized list**

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Word Study**

The following are some of the parts of the body in Japanese. Repeat them after the instructor to practice pronunciation.

|        |         |       |            |
|--------|---------|-------|------------|
| atama  | head    | ude   | arm        |
| me     | eye     | te    | hand       |
| ha     | tooth   | yubi  | finger     |
| hana   | nose    | mune  | chest      |
| kuchi  | mouth   | onaka | abdomen    |
| nodo   | throat  | ashi  | leg, foot  |
| kubi   | neck    | kata  | shoulder   |
| i      | stomach | koshi | lower back |
| senaka | back    | hiza  | knee       |
| mimi   | ear     |       |            |

Using the above words, practice saying the following:

... ga itain desu.      *I have a pain in my...*

**B. Production Exercise**

Directions:

The instructor draws a picture of the human body on the blackboard and asks what each part is called, pointing to various parts of the body. The student gives a name in Japanese.

Example:

**Instructor:** Kore wa nan desu ka?

**Student:** Atama desu.

注: 教師は頭、手、足、お腹、歯、目等の体の部分名をも用いる

**C. Match the following**

|        |             |
|--------|-------------|
| atama  | neck        |
| ha     | hand        |
| senaka | leg/foot    |
| ashi   | chest       |
| te     | head        |
| onaka  | tooth/teeth |
| mune   | eye/eyes    |
| kubi   | abdomen     |
| me     | back        |

**D. Substitution Drill**

Keesatsu o yonde kudasai.

Kyuukyuusha  
Shujin  
Takushii  
Isha  
Keesatsu

**E. Substitution Drill**

Keesatsu ni denwa shite kudasai.

Amerika Taishikan  
Kanai  
Koko  
Amerika Ryoojikan  
Shujin  
Keesatsu

**F. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

Directions :

The instructor asks what is wrong. The student gives a symptom, referring to the list below.

Example:

*Instructor:* Doo shimashita ka?  
*Student:* Atama ga itain desu.

Student's list

1. You have a pain in your chest.
2. You feel dizzy.
3. You feel nauseous.
4. You have a pain in your foot.
5. You feel sick to your stomach.
6. You have a headache.

注: 教師は適当に下記の質問を用いる

どうなさいましたか。  
どうしましたか。  
どこが痛いんですか。

**G. Production Exercise**

教師へ: 1 は「助けて!」でも「Help!」でもよい。実際に緊急の場合、何語でもかまわない。

Answer the following in Japanese:

1. What do you shout when you want help?
2. What do you say when you want to ask a person to call a telephone number you have written on a piece of paper?
3. What do you say when you report that a person has been injured?
4. What do you say when you want someone to call an ambulance?
5. What do you say when you report that there has been a car accident?
6. What do you say when you want to find someone who speaks English?
7. What do you say when you feel nauseous?
8. What do you say when you feel dizzy?
9. What do you say when you want to ask someone to call a doctor?
10. What do you say when you want to tell a person that you don't speak much Japanese?



---

---

READING REVIEW

---

---

KANJI

- |        |          |         |
|--------|----------|---------|
| 1. 劇場  | 8. 自由席   | 15. 浅草  |
| 2. 喫茶店 | 9. 発売中   | 16. 渋谷  |
| 3. 薬局  | 10. 駐車禁止 | 17. 大阪  |
| 4. 営業中 | 11. 禁煙   | 18. 日本橋 |
| 5. 大人  | 12. 丸の内  | 19. 六本木 |
| 6. 小人  | 13. 新橋   | 20. 新宿  |
| 7. 指定席 | 14. 赤坂   | 21. 銀座  |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *What to do when you are involved in a car accident*

When you are involved in a car accident, ask anyone around for help. When you want to say that there has been a car accident, you can say the following:

**Kuruma no jiko desu.**                      *There has been (literally, 'it is') a car accident*

If there are any injured persons, say:

**Keganin ga imasu.**                      *There are injured persons*

If you want to ask someone to call an ambulance, the police, and/or a doctor, you can use the following words and expressions:

**kyuukyusha**                              *ambulance*

**keesatsu**                                      *police*

**isha**    *doctor*

**Kyuukyusha/keesatsu/isha  
o yonde kudasai.**                      *Please call an ambulance/the police/  
a doctor*

It is a good idea always to carry with you a card with the telephone numbers of the U.S. Embassy and other places you might wish to call in an emergency. Your *meeshi* can also be quite useful. If you wish to have someone make a call to a number you have written down, you can say:

**Koko ni denwa shite kudasai.**      *Please telephone this place*

*Denwa* means `telephone' and the phrase *denwa site (kudasai)* means `please phone'. The particle *ni* is used after the name of the place you want to contact. When you want to make a phone call, you can say:

**Denwa sitain desu.**                      *I want to make a call*

Likewise, if you want to call the American Embassy, you can say:

**Amerika Taishikan ni denwa shitain desu.**

## Lesson 27 Emergencies

You should contact your office immediately if you are involved in an accident so that they can send help or give you suggestions as to what to do.

When you need to talk with the police, show them your *meeshi* first. It will give them much of the information they need.

When you call the police or an ambulance yourself, dial the following numbers:

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| police         | 110 |
| fire/ambulance | 119 |

However, since the police or fire department will ask you about the details of the accident, it will be far easier to handle the situation if you can find a Japanese person to help you.

### 2. *Some basic expressions for describing symptoms*

Although describing medical symptoms in a foreign language can be extremely difficult, if you know the following basic expressions you can at least tell your doctor that you have nausea, that you feel dizzy, or where you have pain, etc.

|                                |                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Koko ga itain desu.</b>     | <i>I have a pain here.</i> |
| <b>Hakike ga shimasu.</b>      | <i>I feel nauseous.</i>    |
| <b>Kimochi ga waruin desu.</b> | <i>I feel sick.</i>        |

---



---

 会話
 

---



---

## Situation 1

- ネルソン: ちょっと、車の事故です。すみませんが、警察を呼んでください。
- 日本人: けが人はいますか。
- ネルソン: いません。
- 日本人: じゃ、すぐ警察に電話します。  
ちょっと待っていてください。
- ネルソン: あのう、アメリカ大使館に電話したいんですが.....
- 日本人: じゃあ、いっしょに行きましょう。

## Situation 2

- カニングハム: ちょっと、すみません、車の事故です。  
けが人がいます。警察と救急車をよんでください。
- 日本人: 車の事故? じゃあ、すぐ電話します。
- カニングハム: すみませんが、アメリカ大使館に電話してくださいませんか。主人がいますから。
- 日本人: いいですよ。
- カニングハム: これは私の名刺です。お願いします。

## Situation 3

- ベネット: すみません。すぐお医者さんを呼んでください。
- 日本人: どうしましたか。
- ベネット: ここが痛いんです。  
...
- 医者: 熱はありませんから大丈夫でしょう。  
これを飲んで少し休んでいてください。
- ベネット: すみません。日本語がよくわかりません。
- 医者: そうですか。 **No fever. Take this three times a day before meals.**
- ベネット: わかります。どうもありがとう。



Lesson 28

GETTING THINGS FIXED

電気がつきません。故障です。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- describe a maintenance problem in your apartment to your resident manager or to a repairman
- ask your resident manager to come up to your apartment to check on a problem
- ask your resident manager to call a repairman for you
- ask a repairman to fix something
- ask a repairman how long the repair will take
- comprehend the repairman's answer, including the number of days or weeks

---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Mr Peterson calls the resident manager to report that the electricity isn't working*

|                   |  |   |
|-------------------|--|---|
| <b>Piitaason:</b> | <b>Sumimasen.</b>  | <i>Excuse me</i>  |
| <b>Kanrinin:</b>  | <b>Hai. Nan desu ka?</b>                                   | <i>Yes What is it (what is the problem)?</i>                  |
| <b>Piitaason:</b> | <b>Denki ga tsukimasen.<br/>Shirabete kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>The electricity is not working<br/>Could you check it?</i> |
| <b>Kanrinin:</b>  | <b>Soo desu ka. Wakarimashita.</b>                         | <i>I see Sure</i>   |

### Situation 2

*Ms Adams tells her maintenance man that the drain in the sink is clogged*

|                   |   |  |
|-------------------|---|--|
| <b>Adamusu:</b>   | <b>Sumimasen. Nagashi no<br/>mizu ga nagaremasen.</b> | <i>Excuse me, but the drain in the sink is<br/>clogged</i> |
| <b>Shuurinin:</b> | <b>Soo desu ka.<br/>Otaku wa nan-ban desu ka?</b>     | <i>Oh What is your (apartment)<br/>number?</i>             |
| <b>Adamusu:</b>   | <b>San-gai no 307 desu.</b>                           | <i>It's 307, on the third floor</i>                        |
| <b>Shuurinin:</b> | <b>Jaa, sugu itte shirabemasu.</b>                    | <i>I'll be right up to check</i>                           |
| <b>Adamusu:</b>   | <b>Jaa, onegai shimasu.</b>                           | <i>I would appreciate it</i>                               |

## Situation 3

*At a shoe repair shop, Mr. Thomas asks to have the heels on a pair of shoes fixed.*

|                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | <b>Irasshai.</b>  | <i>Welcome.</i>   |
| <i>Toomasu:</i>   | <b>Konnichi wa. Kono kutsu no kakato o naoshite kudasai.</b>          | <i>Good day Would you fix the heels of these shoes?</i>   |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | <b>Kakato dake desu ne? Kashikomarimashita.</b>                       | <i>Just the heels? Certainly.</i>   |
| <i>Toomasu:</i>   | <b>Itsu dekimasu ka?</b>  | <i>When will they be ready?</i>   |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | <b>Soo desu ne. Ima chotto konde imasu kara asatte de ii desu ka?</b> | <i>Hmm. We're a little busy now, so how about the day after tomorrow?</i>                       |
| <i>Toomasu:</i>   | <b>Asatte desu ne? Nan-ji goro desu ka?</b>                           | <i>Day after tomorrow? About what time?</i>   |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | <b>Gogo dekimasu. Onamae wa?</b>                                      | <i>They will be ready in the afternoon. Your name?</i>  |
| <i>Toomasu:</i>   | <b>Toomasu desu. Jaa, asatte gogo kimasu. Ikura gurai desu ka?</b>    | <i>Thomas. Then I'll come back the day after tomorrow in the afternoon How much will it be?</i> |
| <i>Shuuri-ya:</i> | <b>Sen-en desu.</b>   | <i>1,000 yen.</i>   |
| <i>Toomasu:</i>   | <b>Jaa, onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>O K Thank you. (lit., Please do it )</i>   |



---



---

**VOCABULARY**
**KOTOBA**Dialogs

|                    |  |        |
|--------------------|--|--------|
| <b>sumimasen</b>   | excuse me  | すみません  |
| <b>denki</b>       | electricity  | でんき    |
| <b>tsukimasen</b>  | does not light up, does not turn on (negative form of tsukimasu) | つきません  |
| <b>shirabete</b>   | check up<br>(TE form of shirabemasu)                             | しらべて   |
| <b>nagashi</b>     | kitchen sink   | なかし    |
| <b>mizu</b>        | water  | みず     |
| <b>nagaremasen</b> | does not flow (negative form of nagaremasu)                      | なかれません |
| <b>nan-ban</b>     | what number  | なんはん   |
| <b>shirabemasu</b> | check up   | しらへます  |
| <b>irasshai</b>    | welcome  | いらっしゃい |
| <b>kakato</b>      | heel(s)  | かかと    |
| <b>naoshite</b>    | fix, repair<br>(TE form of naoshimasu)                           | なおして   |
| <b>itsu</b>        | when   | いつ     |
| <b>dekimasu</b>    | be ready   | できます   |
| <b>konde imasu</b> | be crowded   | こんています |
| <b>asatte</b>      | the day after tomorrow   | あさって   |
| <b>gogo</b>        | p.m.   | ごご     |
| <b>onamae</b>      | name (polite)  | おなまえ   |

Practice

|                   |             |         |
|-------------------|-------------|---------|
| <b>ichi-nichi</b> | one day     | いちにち    |
| <b>kakarimasu</b> | take (time) | かかります   |
| <b>is-shuukan</b> | one week    | いっしゅうかん |
| <b>raishuu</b>    | next week   | らいしゅう   |
| <b>ik-kagetsu</b> | one month   | いっかげつ   |

|                |                     |         |
|----------------|---------------------|---------|
| denchi         | battery             | でんち     |
| denki kamisori | electric shaver     | でんきかみそり |
| dentaku        | electric calculator | でんたく    |
| sutereo        | stereo              | ステレオ    |
| toosutaa       | toaster             | トースター   |
| mikisaa        | mixer               | ミキサー    |
| airon          | iron                | アイロン    |

**Notes**

|                   |  |          |
|-------------------|--|----------|
| koshoo shimashita | be broken, be out of order                   | こしょうしました |
| kowaremashita     | be broken                                    | こわれました   |
| demasen           | not come out<br>(negative form of demasu)    | てません     |
| reezooko          | refrigerator                                 | れいぞうこ    |
| suidoo            | waterworks, plumbing                         | すいどう     |
| renji             | range, stove                                 | レンジ      |
| suidoo-ya         | plumber                                      | すいどうや    |
| denki-ya          | electrician, electric appliance<br>repairman | でんきや     |

**Supplement**

|              |                               |      |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------|
| hare         | sunny                         | はれ   |
| kumori       | cloudy                        | くもり  |
| ame          | rain                          | あめ   |
| yuki         | snow                          | ゆき   |
| deshita      | was/were (past tense of desu) | でした  |
| hi (. . .bi) | day                           | ひ(び) |

**Personalized list**

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Production and Comprehension Exercise**

When the repairman answers your question about when the item will be fixed, he may give the date by saying:

(date) **desu.**                      OR                      (date) **ni dekimasu.**

Directions:

The student asks the instructor when an appliance will be fixed. The instructor answers. The student writes down the date. The instructor checks the number that the student has written down.

Example:

*Student:*     **Itsu dekimasu ka?**  
*Instructor:*   **Hatsuka desu.** OR **Hatsuka ni dekimasu.**  
*Student:*     (writes down 20)  
*Instructor:*   (checks the answer)

**B. Production and Comprehension Exercise** 注: 教師は日付と日数を交ぜて使う

When the repairman gives an answer, he may mention the number of days it will take. The number of days is expressed in the same way as the name of the day, except for the first day of the month, which is:

|  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| <u>date</u>                                    | <u>period</u>                    |
| <b>tsuitachi</b> <i>first day of the month</i> | <b>ichi-nichi</b> <i>one day</i> |

The word *kakarimasu* 'take' can be used when you talk about how long it takes to get to a place (cf. Lesson 10) or how long it takes to do a job.

Directions:

The student asks the instructor when the appliance will be fixed. The instructor answers by giving either the date or the number of days. The student writes down the number specifying whether the number stands for the day of the month or the number of days it will take. The instructor checks the student's answer.

Example:

*Student:*     **Itsu dekimasu ka?**  
*Instructor:*   **Mikka kakarimasu.**  
*Student:*     (writes down 3 days)  
*Instructor:*   (checks the answer)

### C. Comprehension and Production Exercise

The repairman may answer your question by telling you how many weeks or months it will take. The following are expressions that indicate the number of weeks and months. Repeat after your instructor to practice pronunciation.

|              |                    |       |
|--------------|--------------------|-------|
| one week     | <b>is-shuukan</b>  | (一週間) |
| two weeks    | <b>ni-shuukan</b>  | (二週間) |
| three weeks  | <b>san-shuukan</b> | (三週間) |
| one month    | <b>ik-kagetsu</b>  | (一か月) |
| two months   | <b>ni-kagetsu</b>  | (二か月) |
| three months | <b>san-kagetsu</b> | (三か月) |

The repairman may also say the item to be repaired will be ready next week. The Japanese expressions for 'next week' and 'next month' are *rai-shuu* (来週) and *rai-getsu* (来月) respectively. Now do as in Practice B. The instructor will answer your question by giving either the day or the number of days or weeks or months.

### D. Word study

The following are some words for electrical appliances and accessories. Repeat them after your instructor to practice pronunciation. You may want to ask the instructor for other words that you think you may need.

|                       |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>sutereo</b>        | <i>stereo set</i>          |
| <b>toosutaa</b>       | <i>toaster</i>             |
| <b>mikisaa</b>        | <i>blender, food mixer</i> |
| <b>denchi</b>         | <i>battery</i>             |
| <b>tokee</b>          | <i>clock, watch</i>        |
| <b>denki kamisori</b> | <i>electric shaver</i>     |
| <b>dentaku</b>        | <i>electric calculator</i> |
| <b>airon</b>          | <i>iron</i>                |

### E. Role Play

Solve the following problems:

1. Your refrigerator is out of order. Go to the *kanri-nin* and ask him/her to check it.
2. Your tape recorder is out of order. Take it to a nearby *denki-ya* for repair.
3. You have a pair of shoes that need to get repaired. Take them to a shoe repair shop.

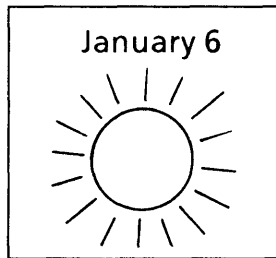
**Supplementary materials**

**A. Production Exercises**

Directions:

Practice describing the weather on the days depicted below as in the example.

Example:

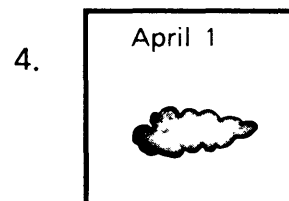
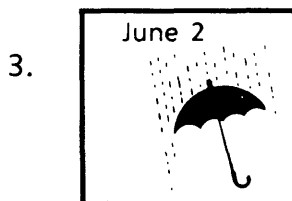
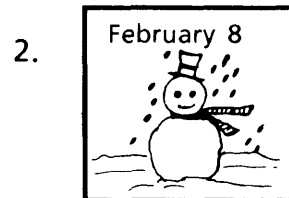
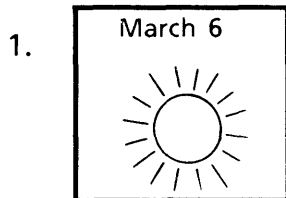
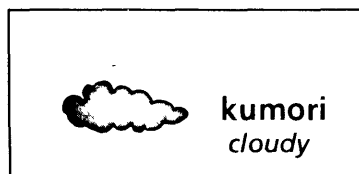
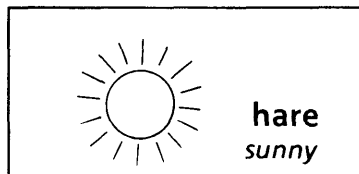


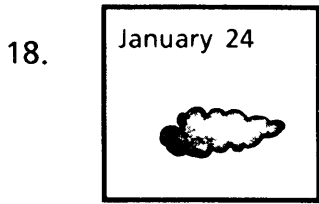
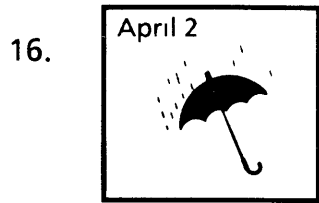
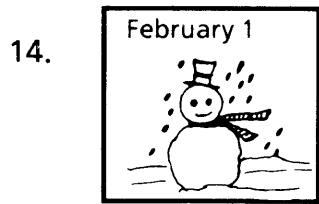
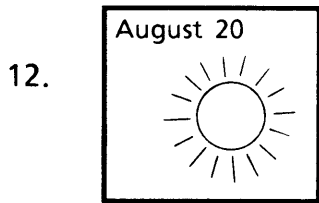
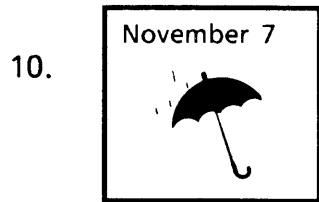
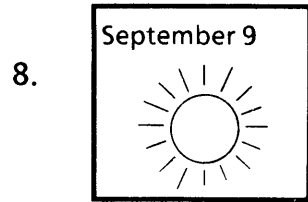
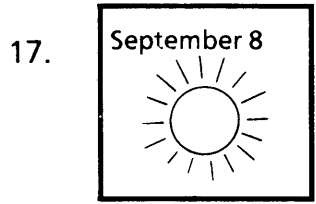
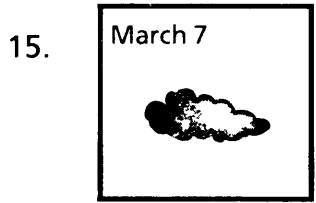
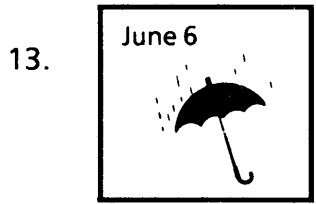
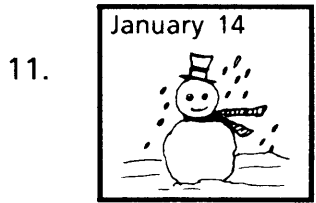
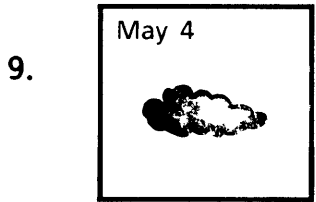
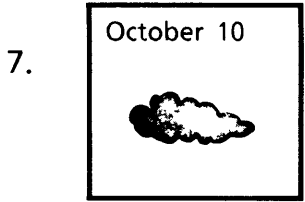
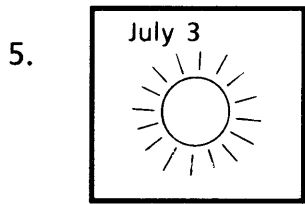
**Ichi-gatsu muika wa hare deshita.**

*It was sunny on January 6.*

Note: **deshita** is the past form of **desu**.

Signs:





## B. Production Exercise

This exercise makes use of the Japanese national holidays to review dates and months.

Directions:

Student A picks a day from list A and asks Student B the date of the holiday. Student B answers by referring to list B.

Example:

*Student A:* **Gantan wa itsu/nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka?**

*Student B:* **Ichi-gatsu tsuitachi desu.**

### List A

**Gantan (Oshoogatsu)**  
**Seejin no hi**  
**Kenkoku Kinen-bi**  
**Shunbun no hi**  
**Tennoo Tanjoo-bi**  
**Kenpoo Kinen-bi**  
**Kodomo no hi**  
**Keeroo no hi**  
**Shuubun no hi**  
**Taiiku no hi**  
**Bunka no hi**  
**Kinroo Kansha no hi**

*New Year's Day*  
*Adults' Day*  
*National Foundation Day*  
*Vernal Equinox Day*  
*Emperor's Birthday*  
*Constitution Memorial Day*  
*Children's Day*  
*Respect for the Aged Day*  
*Autumnal Equinox Day*  
*Health Sports Day*  
*Culture Day*  
*Labor Thanksgiving Day*

### List B

Jan. 1  
 Jan. 15  
 Feb. 11  
 Mar. 20 or 21  
 Apr. 29  
 May 3  
 May 5  
 Sept. 15  
 Sept. 23 or 24  
 Oct. 10  
 Nov. 3  
 Nov. 23

---

---

**READING REVIEW**

---

---

---

---

**KANJI**

---

---

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. 左側通行  | 9. 注意     |
| 2. 一方通行  | 10. 止まれ   |
| 3. 一時停止  | 11. 明治神宮  |
| 4. 制限速度  | 12. 上野公園  |
| 5. 駐車禁止  | 13. 日比谷公園 |
| 6. 有料駐車場 | 14. 新宿御苑  |
| 7. 右折禁止  | 15. 劇場    |
| 8. 横断歩道  | 16. 国立劇場  |



---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *When things break*

If you live in an apartment and there are electrical or plumbing problems, you should contact the *kanri-nin*(管理人) 'resident manager' for help. However, the *kanri-nin* may or may not speak English. If s/he doesn't, you may have to describe the problem in Japanese and ask him/her to come up to your apartment to check or to call a repairman for you. The following expressions can be used to describe some of the problems you may encounter:

**X ga koshoo shimashita.**      *X is out of order.*

**X ga kowaremashita.**      *X is broken.*

In place of X above, you can use the following words:

|                 |                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>suidoo</b>   | <i>waterworks, plumbing</i> |
| <b>reizooko</b> | <i>refrigerator</i>         |
| <b>nagashi</b>  | <i>sink</i>                 |
| <b>renji</b>    | <i>range, stove</i>         |

Note also the following useful expressions:

**Mizu ga demasen.**      *The water doesn't come out.*

**Denki ga tsukimasen.**      *The electricity isn't working.*

When you want to ask your resident manager to come and check, you can use the following expressions:

**Shirabete kudasaimasen ka?**      *Would you check it?*

**Mite kudasaimasen ka?**      *Could you look at it?*

If you want to ask the resident manager to call a repairman, you can use the following expression:

**X o yonde kudasaimasen ka?**      *Will you call X?*

In place of X above, you can use the following words:

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>suidoo-ya</b> | <i>plumber</i>                                       |
| <b>denki-ya</b>  | <i>electrician,<br/>electric appliance repairman</i> |

When you want to explain the problem in more detail to a kanri-nin or repairman, you can use the following expressions:

|                               |                                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>Koko ga kowaremashita.</b> | <i>This part (place) is broken.</i> |
| <b>Kore ga kowaremashita.</b> | <i>This is broken.</i>              |

Ask your instructor for other words and expressions you think you may need. When you want to take an appliance to a repair shop, you can, of course, use the expressions that describe the problems mentioned above. You may also say the following to the repairman:

|                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>Naoshite kudasaimasen ka?</b> | <i>Will you fix it?</i> |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|

You may also want to ask when the repaired item will be ready. You can use the following expression for this purpose:

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Itsu dekimasu ka?</b> | <i>When will it be ready?</i> |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|

In order to comprehend the repairman's answer, you have to know dates as well as days and weeks in Japanese (cf. Lesson 10 and 20 as well as chart on page 516).

## 2. *About electrical Equipment*

Electric current (voltage) in Japan is 100-110, which is about 9% lower than in the U.S., which is 110-120. In the western half of Japan (Kyoto, Osaka, Kobe, etc.), the cycles are the same as in the U.S.-- 60 cycles. However, 50 cycles is normal in the eastern half of the country, including Tokyo. Therefore, if you work in Tokyo and want to send or take electrical appliances with motors from the U.S., you will need to have them adjusted in Japan before using them. Electric clocks are often impractical to convert. Many appliances, such as toasters, are not affected by cycle level.

---

---

会話

---

---

Situation 1

ピーターソン: すみません。  
管理人: はい、何ですか。  
ピーターソン: 電気がつきません。調べてくださいますか。  
管理人: そうですね。わかりました。

Situation 2

アダムス: すみません。流しの水が流れません。  
修理人: そうですね。お宅は何番ですか。  
アダムス: 三階の307です。  
修理人: じゃあ、すぐ行って調べます。  
アダムス: じゃあ、お願いします。

Situation 3

修理屋: いらっしゃい。  
トーマス: こんにちは。この靴のかかとを直してください。  
修理屋: かかとだけですね。かしこまりました。  
トーマス: いつできますか。  
修理屋: そうですね。今ちょっとこんでいますから、あさってでいいですか。  
トーマス: あさってですね。何時ごろですか。  
修理屋: 午後できます。お名前は?  
トーマス: トーマスです。じゃあ、あさって、午後來ます。いくらぐらいですか。  
修理屋: 千円です。  
トーマス: じゃあ、お願いします。

Lesson 29

GOING OUT FOR  
ENTERTAINMENT

何時に会いましょうか。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- arrange a time and place to meet
- ask someone if s/he can go out for a drink or dinner with you
- accept or decline an invitation
- propose an alternative choice

---



---

## DIALOGS

## KAIWA

---



---

### Situation 1

*Ms. Marshall works at the American Center Ms. Nakajima is a friend of hers. One evening, Ms. Nakajima asks her to go out to dinner*

- |                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| <b>Nakajima:</b> | <b>Maasharu-san, konban issho ni shokuji ni ikimasen ka?</b>                            | <i>Ms. Marshall, how about having dinner with me this evening?</i>                 |
| <b>Maasharu:</b> | <b>Sore wa ii desu ne. Doko e ikimashoo ka?</b>   | <i>That sounds good. Where shall we go?</i>  |
| <b>Nakajima:</b> | <b>Chuugoku-ryoori wa doo desu ka?</b>  | <i>How about Chinese food?</i>   |
| <b>Maasharu:</b> | <b>Ii desu ne.</b>  | <i>Fine.</i>   |
| <b>Nakajima:</b> | <b>Jaa, ii resutoran o shitte imasu kara, soko e ikimashoo. Nan-ji ni shimashoo ka?</b> | <i>Well, I know a good restaurant; let's go there. What time shall we make it?</i> |
| <b>Maasharu:</b> | <b>Shichi-ji wa doo desu ka?</b>  | <i>How about seven o'clock?</i>  |
| <b>Nakajima:</b> | <b>Ee, ii desu yo. Jaa, watakushi ga Amerikan Sentaa e ikimasu.</b>                     | <i>Fine. Then, I'll come to the American Center.</i>                               |
| <b>Maasharu:</b> | <b>Soo desu ka. Jaa, onegai shimasu.</b>  | <i>All right. Thanks!</i>  |

### Situation 2

*Mr. Tanaka is a colleague of Mr. Burns. He asks Mr. Burns to go see sumoo together.*

- |                |   |  |
|----------------|---|--|
| <b>Tanaka:</b> | <b>Baanzu-san, sumoo o mi ni ikimasen ka?</b>   | <i>Mr. Burns, shall we go see a sumoo match?</i>   |
| <b>Baanzu:</b> | <b>Ii desu ne. Itsu desu ka?</b>  | <i>That sound great. When is it?</i>   |
| <b>Tanaka:</b> | <b>Do-yoobi desu.</b>   | <i>On Saturday.</i>  |
| <b>Baanzu:</b> | <b>Soo desu ka. Zannen desu ga, Do-yoobi wa chotto. . .</b>                               | <i>Oh. That's too bad. Saturday isn't so good for me. .</i>                                |
| <b>Tanaka:</b> | <b>Soo desu ka? Nichi-yoobi mo dame desu ka?</b>  | <i>Is that so? Is Sunday bad too?</i>  |
| <b>Baanzu:</b> | <b>Aa, Nichi-yoobi wa ii desu yo.</b>   | <i>Oh, Sunday is fine.</i>   |
| <b>Tanaka:</b> | <b>Jaa, Nichi-yoobi ni shimashoo. Akasaka Mitsuke no eki no mae de yo-ji ni aimashoo.</b> | <i>Then, let's make it Sunday. Let's meet at four in front of Akasaka Mitsuke station.</i> |
| <b>Baanzu:</b> | <b>Wakarimashita. Nichi-yoobi, yo-ji desu ne?</b>   | <i>O.K. At four, this Sunday, right?</i>   |

**Situation 3**

*Ms. Smith is at a ticket window at Kabukiza. She wants to buy three tickets for the evening performance on the 15th.*

|                  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|
| <i>Sumisu:</i>   | <b>Juu go-nichi no kippu, san-mai onegai shimasu.</b>                  | <i>Three tickets for the 15th, please.</i>                   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Hiru no bu desu ka, yoru no bu desu ka?</b>                         | <i>The afternoon performance or the evening performance?</i> |
| <i>Sumisu:</i>   | <b>Yoru no bu desu.</b>  | <i>The evening performance.</i>                              |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>De wa, koko to koko ga nokotte imasu. (showing a seating chart)</b> | <i>O.K. Here and here is still available.</i>                |
| <i>Sumisu:</i>   | <b>Koko, onegai shimasu.</b>   | <i>Here, please.</i>   |
| <i>Nihonjin:</i> | <b>Hai. 20,000-en de gozaimasu.</b>                                    | <i>All right. That'll be 20,000 yen.</i>                     |

---



---

**VOCABULARY**


---



---

**KOTOBA**
Dialogs

|                        |   |             |
|------------------------|---|-------------|
| shokuji                | meal  | しょくじ        |
| shokuji ni ikimasen ka | Would you like to go out for dinner? (neg. form of ikimasu) | しょくじにいきませんか |
| Chuugoku-ryoori        | Chinese cuisine   | ちゅうごくりょうり   |
| sumoo                  | sumoo wrestling   | すもう         |
| ...mi ni ikimasen ka   | Would you like to go see... ?                               | みにいきませんか    |
| zannen desu ga. . .    | it's too bad, it's unfortunate                              | ざんねんですが     |
| dame                   | no good, won't do, bad                                      | だめ          |
| aimashoo               | let's meet  | あいましょう      |
| hiru no bu             | afternoon performance                                       | ひるのぶ        |
| yoru no bu             | evening performance   | よるのぶ        |
| nokotte imasu          | remain, be left<br>(TE form of nokorimasu)                  | のこっています     |

Practice

|                     |                                       |           |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| nomi ni ikimasen ka | Would you like to go out for a drink? | のみにいきませんか |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|

Personalized list

---



---

**PRACTICE**


---



---

**RENSHUU**
**A. Production Exercise**

One situation in which you may need to use time expressions is when you buy a reserved seat on a long-distance train such as the Shinkansen. Long-distance train tickets and reserved-seat tickets for the JR can be bought at the **Midori no madoguchi** (みどりの窓口) 'Green Window' of a station. There's a green sign at the window. When you buy a reserved-seat ticket or shitee-ken (指定券) you need to specify the date, time, train name, destination, and number of tickets you want. You can use the following formula:

(Date) (time) no (train name) no shitee-seki,  
(destination) made (# of tickets)-mai onegai shimasu.

For example, if you want to take the Hikari at 3:00 on the 15th as far as Shin Osaka (新大阪), you can say:

**Juu go-nichi 3-ji no hikari, Shin Osaka (made) ichi-mai onegai shimasu.**

Now buy tickets for the following trains:

|    | <u>Date</u> | <u>Time</u> | <u>Train</u> | <u>Destination</u> | <u># of tickets</u> |
|----|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. | 2nd         | 11:00 a.m.  | Kodama       | Shizuoka           | 2                   |
| 2. | 8th         | 4:40 p.m.   | Hikari       | Hakata             | 3                   |
| 3. | 20th        | 7:28 a.m.   | Hikari       | Nagoya             | 1                   |
| 4. | 4th         | 8:30 a.m.   | Hikari       | Kyoto              | 2                   |
| 5. | 1st         | 9:16 a.m.   | Kodama       | Atami              | 3                   |
| 6. | 14th        | 5:00 p.m.   | Hikari       | Shin Osaka         | 1                   |

Note: p.m. = gogo (午後) e.g., 3:00 p.m. gogo san-ji  
a.m. = gozen (午前) e.g., 11:00 a.m. gozen juu ichi-ji



**B. Production Exercise**

注: 教師は同じ文型で適当に質問する

ROUND 1

Directions:

The instructor asks a student to go out for a drink or dinner. The student either accepts or declines the invitation, using *li desu ne* and/or *Ee, ikimashoo* or *Kyoo wa chotto...*

Example:

*Instructor:* **Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka?**

*Student:* **li desu ne. Ikimashoo. OR Kyoo wa chotto...**

ROUND 2

Directions:

The student asks the instructor to go out for a drink or dinner, referring to the list below. The instructor either accepts or declines the invitation using an appropriate expression.

Example:

*Student:* **Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka?**

*Instructor:* **li desu ne. Ikimashoo.**

List for student

1. How about going out for dinner tonight?
2. Shall we go to a restaurant?
3. Would you like to go see a show at the National Theater?
4. How about going to a beer garden tonight?
5. How about going out for a drink tonight?

### C. Comprehension and Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A proposes something/somewhere to student B, referring to the list for student A. Student B prefers something/somewhere else, referring to the list for student B.

Example:

*Student A:* **Resutoran ni shimashoo ka?**

*Student B:* **Shokudoo wa doo desu ka?**

#### List for Student A

1. Itaria-ryoori
2. ku-ji
3. bifuteki
4. Do-yoobi
5. wain
6. baa
7. Chuugoku-ryoori
8. hachi-ji
9. resutoran
10. mik-ka

#### List for Student B

1. Furansu-ryoori
2. hachi-ji
3. osushi
4. Nichi-yoobi
5. osake
6. bia gaaden
7. Itariya-ryoori
8. shichi-ji han
9. shokudoo
10. yok-ka

### D. Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks when s/he and Student B are to meet. Student B answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

*Student A:* **Itsu aimashoo ka?**

*Student B:* **Futsuka ni aimashoo.**

#### List for student B

1. 10 a.m. tomorrow
2. 8 p.m. at night
3. Sunday morning
4. Wednesday afternoon
5. 3 p.m. on the fifth
6. eighth

### E. Production Exercise

Directions:

Student A asks where and at what time s/he and student B are to meet. Student B answers, referring to the list below.

Example:

*Student A:* **Doko de nan-ji ni aimashoo ka?**

*Student B:* **Depaato no mae de san-ji ni aimashoo.**

List for student B

| place                       | time          |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| 1. coffee shop              | three o'clock |
| 2. in front of Mitsukoshi   | five thirty   |
| 3. American Consulate       | two o'clock   |
| 4. bookstore                | four thirty   |
| 5. in front of U.S. Embassy | six o'clock   |

### F. Production and Comprehension Exercise

Directions:

The student buys a ticket/tickets, referring to the list below. The instructor offers choices, reading from the script. The student makes a decision as to what date, time, etc. s/he prefers.

Example:

*Student:* **Mikka no kippu o ni-mai onegai shimasu.**

*Instructor:* **Sen gohyaku-en no to sen-en no ga gozaimasu.**

*Student:* **Sen-en no o kudasai.**

| Student's list                                   | 教師用スクリプト               |
|--|------------------------|
| 1. 4 tickets for the 10th                        | 二千円のと千百円のが<br>ございます。   |
| 2. 3 tickets at 1,500 yen each                   | 六日のと八日のが<br>ございます。     |
| 3. 1 ticket for the 6th                          | 五時のと八時のが<br>ございます。     |
| 4. 5 tickets for the evening<br>performance      | 七時のと九時のが<br>ございます。     |
| 5. 4 tickets for the eight-thirty<br>performance | 三千円のと二千五百円のが<br>ございます。 |

## G. Reading Practice

a. Below is a copy of a menu. Choose the correct answer to the following questions:

1. What are the business hours (営業時間)?
  - a. between 5:00 p.m. and 11:30 a.m.
  - b. between 11:30 a.m. and 5:00 a.m.
2. What are the demae hours (出前時間)?
  - a. between 11:30 p.m. and 10:00 a.m.
  - b. between 10:00 a.m. and 11:30 p.m.
  - c. between 11:30 a.m. and 10:00 p.m.

Hint: 午前 = a.m.

出前 = delivery service

◇営業時間

午前 11時30分 - 翌朝 5時

◎定休日

毎週月曜日

◇出前時間

午前 11時30分 - 深夜 10時まで

◇昼食時の出前は混み合います  
 ので 11時 30分頃までに  
 ご注文下さい。

天 勝

☎ 200 - 5898

## Lesson 29 Going out for entertainment

b. Read the following Kanji (時 = **ji**, 分 = **fun, pun**):

- |                       |                            |                                 |                            |                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1.                    | 2.                         | 3.                              | 4.                         | 5.                         |
| 九<br>時<br>十<br>八<br>分 | 四<br>時<br>三<br>十<br>二<br>分 | 十<br>一<br>時<br>四<br>十<br>六<br>分 | 八<br>時<br>二<br>十<br>七<br>分 | 三<br>時<br>五<br>十<br>一<br>分 |

---

---

**READING****KANJI**

---

---

- |          |                   |                |
|----------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. ....時 | ...ji             | ...o'clock     |
| 2. 午前    | gozen             | a.m.           |
| 3. 午後    | gogo              | p.m.           |
| 4. 営業時間  | eegyoo jikan      | business hours |
| 5. 本日休業  | honjitsu kyuugyoo | closed today   |

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *Shall we go and see...?*

In this lesson we take up the following expressions, which may be used by Japanese when they ask you to go out for a drink or dinner:

**Nomi ni ikimasen ka?**                                  *Shall we go out for a drink?*

**Shokuji ni ikimasen ka?**                                *Shall we go out for dinner?*

When a person asks you if you can go out to see a play, exhibition, etc. with them, they may use a similar expression, such as the following:

**(Kabuki) o mi ni ikimasen ka?**                      *Shall we go and see a (Kabuki play)?*

### 2. *Deciding the place and time to meet*

It may sometimes be necessary to discuss the place and time to meet to go see a play, sumo, etc. When you want to propose a place and time and find out if the proposed place and time are convenient for the other person, you can use the following expressions:

**(Time) wa doo desu ka?**                                *How about (time)?*

**(Place) wa doo desu ka?**                                *How about (place)?*

For example, if you want to propose meeting in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00, you can say:

**Mitsukoshi no mae 3-ji wa doo desu ka?**

OR

**3-ji Mitsukoshi no mae wa doo desu ka?**

*How about in front of Mitsukoshi at three?*

Another way to propose a time and place to meet is to use one of the following expressions:

time: **(Time) ni aimashoo ka?**                      *Shall we meet at (time)?*

place: **(Place) de aimashoo ka?**                    *Shall we meet at (place)?*

place & time: **(Place) de (time) ni aimashoo ka?**

OR

**(Time) ni (place) de aimashoo ka?**

For example, when you want to propose meeting in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00 on the 4th, you can say:

**Yokka 3-ji ni Mitsukoshi no mae de aimashoo ka?**

OR

**Mitsukoshi no mae de yokka 3-ji ni aimashoo ka?**

*Shall we meet in front of Mitsukoshi at 3:00 on the 4th?*

It should be noted that the particle *ni* is used after the time expression while *de* is used after the place expression.

When you want to ask a person about a convenient time and place, you can ask the following questions:

**Nan-ji ni aimashoo ka?**

*What time shall we meet?*

**Doko de aimashoo ka?**

*Where shall we meet?*

The following are some time expressions that don't require *ni* after them:

**ashita OR asu**

*tomorrow*

**asatte**

*the day after tomorrow*

**Ashita aimashoo ka?**

*Shall we meet tomorrow?*

Listed below are some of the favorite places the Japanese go for drinks:

**bia gaaden**

*beer garden*

**sunakku**

*snack bar*

**baa**

*bar*

**yakitori-ya**

*chicken-barbecue place*

When a Japanese suggests a bar, for example, by saying **Baa wa doo desu ka** but you want to go some other place, you can reply by proposing the place you want to go, as in the following:

**Soo desu ne. . . (place you want to go) wa doo desu ka?**

*Well... How about (place)?*

When Japanese ask you to go out to dinner with them, they may say the following:

**(Konban) shokuji ni ikimasen ka?**

*Shall we go out for a meal this evening?*

You may want to discuss the kind of cuisine you are going to have. The following are some words for different types of cuisines:

**Nihon-ryoori OR washoku**

*Japanese cuisine*

**Chuugoku-ryoori**

*Chinese cuisine*

**Furansu-ryoori**

*French cuisine*

**Itaria-ryoori**

*Italian cuisine*



### 3. Deciding the time

After deciding where to go, you will probably talk about the time. You can use this formula

(Time) **wa doo desu ka?**                      *How about (time)?*

If you agree to the proposed time, you can say

**Ee, ii desu yo.**                                      *Yes, that is fine*

Another way to discuss the time to meet is to use the following expression

(Time) **ni shimashoo ka?**                      *Shall we make it (time)?*

For example, if you want to suggest that you meet at 7:00 p.m., you can say

**Shichi-ji ni shimashoo ka?**                      *Shall we make it 7:00 p.m.?*

Note again that the particle *ni* is used after the time expression. The word *shimashoo* means 'let's do' and *shimashoo ka* means 'shall we?'

The expression *ni shimashoo ka 'shall we make it?'* is also frequently used to propose things other than time. For example

**Baa ni shimashoo ka?**                              *Shall we make it a bar?*  
**Chuugoku-ryoori ni shimashoo ka?**              *Shall we decide on Chinese food?*

When you want to express agreement to the above questions, you can say

**(Ee), soo shimashoo.**                              *Yes, let's do so*

### 4. Buying tickets

Tickets for major plays, sports, movies, etc. are usually available at *puree gaido* (プレイカイト), which are located in department stores and other major shopping areas.

The expressions used in buying tickets for entertainment are similar to those used when buying train tickets except that you have to specify the date. Look at the following example

**15-nichi no kippu 3-mai onegai shimasu.**  
*Three tickets for (the performance) on the 15th*

In some cases, especially in the case of plays, there are two performances per day, the afternoon performance (*hiru no bu* 昼の部) and the evening performance (*yoru no bu* 夜の部). Therefore, when you buy such a ticket, you will have to specify which performance you want a ticket for. Look at the following example:

**Tooka no hiru no bu no kippu wa arimasu ka?**

*Do you have tickets available for the afternoon performance on the 10th?*

## 5. How to ask someone to go out to dinner or for drinks

Japanese, especially men, often go out for a few drinks after work. It may happen that a Japanese colleague of yours will ask you to go out together after work. In that case, the person may say the following:

**Konban nomi ni ikimasen ka?** *Shall we go out for a drink/dinner tonight?*

If you feel like doing so, you can say:

**Sore wa ii desu ne.** *That would be great.*

If you don't feel like going, you can say:

**Kyoo wa chotto...** *Today is (not so good for me.)*

The Japanese may then propose a different day by saying:

**Jaa, ashita wa doo desu ka?** *How about tomorrow, then?*

The expression ...*wa doo desu ka?* is comparable to 'How about ...?' in English. Thus, when a Japanese proposes a place to go to, s/he may say:

**(Place) wa doo desu ka?** *How about (place)?*

If you can go out the next day, you can say:

**(Ee), ii desu yo.** *Fine.*

If you can't, then use the following expression:

**Ashita mo chotto...** *Tomorrow is also (not so good for me.)*

The Japanese may propose another day or s/he may give up inviting you, by saying:

**Jaa, mata sono uchi ni.** *Well, then, sometime in the near future.*

---

---

会話

---

---

Situation 1

- 中島: マーシャルさん、今晚、一緒に食事に行きませんか。  
マーシャル: それはいいですね。どこへ行きますでしょうか?  
中島: 中国料理はどうですか。  
マーシャル: いいですね。  
中島: じゃあ、いいレストランを知っていますから、そこへ行きます  
しょう。何時にしましょうか。  
マーシャル: 七時はどうですか。  
中島: ええ、いいですよ。  
じゃあ、私がアメリカンセンターへ行きます。  
マーシャル: そうですか。じゃあ、お願いします。

Situation 2

- 田中: バーンズさん、相撲を見に行きませんか。  
バーンズ: いいですね。いつですか。  
田中: 土曜日です。  
バーンズ: そうですか。残念ですが、土曜日はちょっと.....  
田中: そうですか。日曜日も駄目ですか。  
バーンズ: ああ、日曜日はいいですよ。  
田中: じゃあ、日曜日にしましょう。赤坂見附の駅の前で、  
四時に会いましょう。  
バーンズ: わかりました。日曜日、四時ですね。

Situation 3

- スミス: 十五日の切符、三枚、お願いします。  
日本人: 昼の部ですか、夜の部ですか。  
スミス: 夜の部です。  
日本人: では、こことここが残っています。  
スミス: ここ、お願いします。  
日本人: はい、二万円でございます。

Lesson 30

EXPRESSING APPRECIATION,  
REGRET AND  
OTHER SENTIMENTS

遅くなって申し訳ありません。

In this lesson, you will learn how to

- express your appreciation for something someone has done for you
- apologize for something you have done or wish to do
- convey other sentiments

---

---

**DIALOGS**

**KAIWA**

---

---

**Situation 1**

*Mr. Kelly, who dined at the Hashimotos' the previous evening, sees Mr. Hashimoto the next morning at the office.*

- |                   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|
| <i>Kerii:</i>     | <b>Kinoo wa taihen gochisoosama deshita. Totemo tanoshikatta desu. Doomo arigatoo gozaimashita.</b>         | <i>That was a wonderful dinner yesterday. I had a great time. Thanks so much.</i>   |
| <i>Hashimoto:</i> | <b>Ie, ie, tondemo nai. Ohazukashii desu. Watakushi no hoo koso kiree na ohana o arigatoo gozaimashita.</b> | <i>Oh, no. It was nothing. It's embarrassing (not having been able to do more). It is I who must thank you for the beautiful flowers.</i> |
| <i>Kerii:</i>     | <b>Iie, doo itashimashite. Okusama ni yoroshiku.</b>  | <i>Don't mention it. Please give my regards to your wife.</i>   |

**Situation 2**

*Mr. Nelson arrives late for his appointment with Mr. Ogawa.*

- |                 |  |   |
|-----------------|--|---|
| <i>Neruson:</i> | <b>Osoku natte, mooshiwake arimasen.</b>                                   | <i>I'm very sorry I'm late.</i>                           |
| <i>Ogawa:</i>   | <b>Ie, ie.</b>   | <i>That's all right.</i>                                  |
| <i>Neruson:</i> | <b>Tochuu de basu ga koshoo shimashita. Dakara, takushii de kimashita.</b> | <i>The bus broke down on the way, so I came by taxi.</i>  |
| <i>Ogawa:</i>   | <b>Soo desu ka. Sore wa taihen deshita ne.</b>                             | <i>Is that right? You must have had a difficult time.</i> |

**Situation 3**

*Mr. Jackson has an appointment with Mr. Yamada today. Because some urgent business has come up, he calls Mr. Yamada on the telephone to postpone the appointment.*

- |                 |  |   |
|-----------------|--|---|
| <i>Jakuson:</i> | <b>Moshi moshi. Yamada-san desu ka? Watakushi, Jakuson desu.</b>   | <i>Hello. Mr. Yamada?<br/>Jackson speaking.</i>   |
| <i>Yamada:</i>  | <b>Aa, Jakuson-san. Nan desu ka?</b>   | <i>Oh, Mr. Jackson. What is it?</i>   |
| <i>Jakuson:</i> | <b>Jitsu wa, kyuuuyoo ga dekimashita. Dakara, mooshiwake arimasen ga, kyoo no yakusoku, ashita ni shite kudasaimasen ka.</b> | <i>Well, I'm very sorry<br/>but something urgent has come<br/>up. So, could we postpone<br/>today's appointment until<br/>tomorrow?</i> |
| <i>Yamada:</i>  | <b>Ii desu yo. Jaa, ashita no gogo san-ji wa doo desu ka?</b>  | <i>Sure. How about three o'clock<br/>tomorrow afternoon?</i>  |
| <i>Jakuson:</i> | <b>Hai, kekkoo desu.</b>   | <i>That would be fine.</i>  |
| <i>Yamada:</i>  | <b>Jaa, ashita.</b>  | <i>Then see you tomorrow.</i>   |
| <i>Jakuson:</i> | <b>Hontoo ni sumimasen.<br/>Jaa, ashita.</b>   | <i>I'm really sorry.<br/>See you tomorrow.</i>  |

## VOCABULARY

## KOTOBA

Dialogs

|                              |   |            |
|------------------------------|---|------------|
| <b>totemo</b>                | very  | とても        |
| <b>tanoshikatta</b>          | it was enjoyable (past tense of adjective tanoshii. See Notes.) | たのしかった     |
| <b>tondemonai</b>            | not at all  | とんでもない     |
| <b>ohazukashii</b>           | I am embarrassed  | おはずかしい     |
| <b>watakushi no hoo koso</b> | it is I who...  | わたくしのほうこそ  |
| <b>kiree na</b>              | beautiful   | きれいな       |
| <b>osoku natte</b>           | being late  | おそくなって     |
| <b>mooshiwake arimasen</b>   | I am very sorry (formal)  | もうしわけありません |
| <b>tochuu</b>                | on the way  | とちゅう       |
| <b>dakara</b>                | therefore   | だから        |
| <b>taihen deshita ne</b>     | you must have had a difficult time                              | たいへんでしたね   |
| <b>jitsu wa</b>              | actually  | じつは        |
| <b>kyuuyoo</b>               | urgent business   | きゅうよう      |
| <b>dekimashita</b>           | came up, arose (past tense of dekimasu)                         | できました      |
| <b>yakusoku</b>              | engagement, appointment   | やくそく       |

Practice

|                           |  |            |
|---------------------------|--|------------|
| <b>ototoi</b>             | the day before yesterday                       | おととい       |
| <b>senjitsu</b>           | the other day                                  | せんじつ       |
| <b>kono aida</b>          | the other day                                  | このあいだ      |
| <b>eega</b>               | movie  | えいが        |
| <b>omoshirokatta</b>      | it was fun (past tense of adjective omoshiroi) | おもしろかった    |
| <b>omedetoo gozaimasu</b> | congratulations (see Notes)                    | おめでとうございます |
| <b>osaki ni</b>           | before you, after you (see Notes)              | おさきに       |
| <b>itadakimasu</b>        | 'I will receive' (see Notes)                   | いただきます     |
| <b>odaiji ni</b>          | Take care of yourself. (see Notes)             | おだいじに      |
| <b>ki o tsukete</b>       | Be careful. (see Notes)                        | きをつけて      |

---

---

**PRACTICE**

**RENSHUU**

---

---

**A. Substitution Drill**

Kiree na ohana o arigatoo gozaimashita.

Purezento  
Kippu  
Kiree na hon  
Oishii chokoreeto  
Chizu  
Odenwa

**B. Substitution Drill**

Kinoo wa taihen gochisoosama deshita.

Ototoi  
Senjitsu  
Kono aida  
Do-yoobi  
Nichi-yoobi

**C. Substitution Drill**

Osoku natte mooshiwake arimasen.

sumimasen  
sumimasen deshita  
mooshiwake arimasen  
mooshiwake arimasen deshita

**D. E-J Substitution Drill**

Ashita no gogo san-ji wa doo desu ka?

Monday afternoon  
eight o'clock on Wednesday  
next Friday  
the day after tomorrow  
about four o'clock  
next week  
after two o'clock  
nine o'clock tomorrow  
next Tuesday



## E. Response Drill

### Round 1

Example:

**Instructor:** Kinoo wa tanoshikatta desu ka?

**Student:** Hai, tanoshikatta desu.

教師用

おとといは寒かったですか。  
あそこの夏は蒸し暑かったですか。  
映画は面白かったですか。  
お刺身はおいしかったですか。  
駅は遠かったですか。  
本は安かったですか。  
スノーケースは重かったですか。  
あそこの夏は涼しかったですか。  
あの料理は辛かったですか。  
あそこの冬は暖かかったですか。

### Round 2

Example:

**Instructor:** Kinoo wa tanoshikatta desu ka?

**Student:** Iie, tanoshiku arimasen deshita.

## F. What Should You Say?

Directions:

Choose the appropriate Japanese response to the situation described in English.

1. When someone is getting married, you say:
  - a. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
  - b. Omedetoo gozaimasu.
2. When you want someone to go ahead of you, you say:
  - a. Osaki ni doozo.
  - b. Osaki ni shitsuree shimasu.
3. Before you start eating, you say:
  - a. Gochisoosama deshita.
  - b. Itadakimasu.

## Lesson 30 Expressing appreciation, regret and other sentiments

4. When someone offers you tea and you don't want any, you say:
  - a. Hai, kekkoo desu.
  - b. Iie, kekkoo desu.
5. When someone is going out driving on an icy road, you say:
  - a. Odaiji ni.
  - b. Ki o tsukete.
6. When you want to excuse yourself from a meeting, you say:
  - a. Shitsuree shimasu.
  - b. Shitsuree desu ga...
7. When someone calls your home asking for your wife/husband and s/he is not at home, you say:
  - a. Zannen desu ga, kanai/shujin wa ima orimasen ga...
  - b. Ainiku desu ga, kanai/shujin wa ima orimasen ga...

---

---

**READING REVIEW**

---

---

**KANJI**

1. 予約

6. 注意

2. 空車

7. 駐車禁止

3. 非常口

8. 発売中止

4. 改札口

9. 一方通行

5. 横断歩道

10. 六本木方面出口

---



---

## USAGE NOTES & HINTS FOR CONVERSATION

---



---

### 1. *When you visit a Japanese home*

When a Japanese visits someone's home, the person usually brings a little gift with them such as candy, cookies, etc. Although Japanese may not expect a foreigner to do the same, it is often a good idea to follow suit. Such gifts are usually given right after exchanging greetings.

When a Japanese greets you at the genkan '*entrance hall*,' the person will probably say *Irasshai* '*welcome*' first. Other greeting expressions used in this situation are exactly the same as those you would use elsewhere, e.g., *konnichiwa*, *atsui desu ne*, etc. When you meet your friend's family members for the first time, you have to, of course, introduce yourself. When you want to give the gift you have brought with you, you can say *Kore o doozo* '*This is for you*' (lit. '*[take] this please.*'). When a Japanese leads you to the living room, the person will probably say something like the following:

(Doozo) *kochira e.*

*This way, please.*

OR

*Kochira e doozo.*

### 2. *When you want to take leave*

When you want to take leave, you can say *Sorosoro shitsuree shimasu* '*Please excuse me, (I have to go now).*' In most cases, the Japanese will probably ask you to stay longer by saying something like *Mada yoroshii deshoo?* '*Can't you stay a little longer?*' Although it is possible to respond by saying *ie* '*No*', that expression sounds too direct and can be offending, for you are expected to decline an offer in an indirect manner. Perhaps a safer expression to use in this situation would be something like *Ee, demo...* '*Yes, but...*', which indicates that you really want to stay longer but you have to leave (because you have something to do) or that you are afraid that you have stayed too long or that you have taken too much of your friend's time.

When you leave the house, the Japanese may ask you to come again by saying something like *Mata kite kudasai* '*Please come again.*' Before saying *sayoonara*, it will be a good idea to thank the Japanese for the invitation by saying (*Kyoo wa*) *doomo arigatoo gozaimashita*.

### 3. *When you have a Japanese guest*

Most of the things that have been discussed above hold when you have a Japanese guest.

When you greet the Japanese, say *Irasshai*. Your Japanese guest may bring a little gift. Receive it graciously and say *Doomo arigatoo gozaimasu*. It should be noted, however, that you are not supposed to open the gift on receipt as you would do in the U.S. (Ask your instructor about this Japanese custom.) When you lead the person to your living room, you can say *Kochira e doozo*. When the person says that s/he would like to leave, ask him/her to stay longer by saying *Mada ii deshoo?* When the person leaves the house, ask him/her to visit you again by saying *Mata kite kudasai*.

#### 4. *Tanoshikatta desu* 'I had a wonderful time.' (lit., It was enjoyable.)

Tanoshikatta desu is the past tense for Tanoshii desu (lit., 'It is enjoyable.'). The negative form for Tanoshikatta desu is Tanoshiku arimasen deshita (lit., 'It was not enjoyable.'). True adjectives change form in this way. For example, tooi 'far' changes as follows:

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Tooi desu.              | <i>It is far.</i>      |
| Tooku arimasen.         | <i>It is not far.</i>  |
| Tookatta desu.          | <i>It was far.</i>     |
| Tooku arimasen deshita. | <i>It was not far.</i> |

#### 5. *Other sentiments*

You may hear or have occasion to use the following expressions while in Japan. Discuss with your instructor how to use these expressions appropriately.

- a. *Omedetoo gozaimasu.* *Congratulations.*

This expression is used for weddings, graduations, promotions, births, birthdays, passing entrance exams and other happy occasions.

- b. *Shitsuree shimasu.* *Excuse me. (lit., I'll do something rude.)*

Generally, this is used when you are joining or leaving other people (e.g., entering a room, excusing yourself, etc.).

- c. *Shitsuree desu ga...* *Excuse me. (lit., It is rude, but...)*

This expression is used prior to asking personal questions (e.g., *Shitsuree desu ga, donata desu ka?*).

- d. *Zannen desu.* *I'm sorry. (lit., It is regrettable.)*

This is used to express regret, not anger. For example, it may be used after an exam is failed, after a party is missed, or when someone is absent when you visit their home.

- e. *Doozo osaki ni.* *Please go before me.*

*Saki* literally means 'first.' This expression is used when you ask someone to walk ahead of you or to do something else before you.

- f. *Osaki ni shitsuree shimasu.* *Please excuse my going before you.*

This expression is used whenever you do something before someone who is with you (e.g., walking through a doorway, getting up from a table, etc.).

## Lesson 30 Expressing appreciation, regret and other sentiments

- g. **Odaiji ni.** *Take good care of yourself.*

This expression is used whenever leaving the company of someone who is in poor health.

- h. **Ogenki de.** *Good luck (to you). Take care.*

This expression is used to say 'good-bye' to a social acquaintance you do not expect to see again soon.

- i. **Ki o tsukete.** *Be careful.*

This is used to urge someone to drive, walk, climb stairs, travel or do other things carefully and safely.

- j. **Itadakimasu.**

'I am going to eat /drink.' This expression is used before one starts to eat or drink. Literally, it means 'I will receive.'

- k. **Gochisoosama deshita.**

This means 'It was a feast.' This is used when someone has finished his/her meal or drink to express gratitude.

---

---

会話

---

---

**Situation 1**

- ケリー: きのは大変ご馳走さまでした。とても楽しかったです。  
どうもありがとうございました。
- 橋本: いえいえ、とんでもない。お恥ずかしいです。  
私のほうこそ、きれいなお花をありがとうございました。
- ケリー: いいえ、どういたしまして。奥様によろしく。

**Situation 2**

- ネルソン: おそくなって、申し訳ありません。
- 小川: いえいえ。
- ネルソン: 途中でバスが故障しました。だから、タクシーで来ました。
- 小川: そうですか。それは大変でしたね。

**Situation 3**

- ジャクソン: もしもし。山田さんですか。私、ジャクソンです。
- 山田: ああ、ジャクソンさん。何ですか。
- ジャクソン: 実は、急用ができました。だから、申し訳ありませんが、  
今日の約束、あしたにしてくださいませんか。
- 山田: いいですよ。じゃあ、あしたの午後三時はどうですか。
- ジャクソン: はい、結構です。
- 山田: じゃあ、あした。
- ジャクソン: 本当に済みません。じゃあ、あした。

---

---

**REVIEW LESSON:****MAKING IT WORK(3)**

---

---

This is a review lesson. You will be asked to act out or make up a conversation with the instructor based on the situations listed below. Try to use the expressions you have learned so far as appropriately as possible.

***What do you say or do in the following situations?***

1. You are on a train and want to know the name of the next stop.
2. You want to find out where the nearest subway station is.
3. You want to buy a train ticket to Shinjuku 3-chome and you need to find out which vending machine to use.
4. You want to find out how much the train fare to Shinjuku 3-chome is.
5. You are on the platform of a station and want to find out which side the Shinjuku 3-chome train comes in on.
6. You want to find out if the train coming in stops at Shinbashi.
7. You are on the subway during rush hour and want to ask people to get out of your way so that you can get off at your stop.
8. You want to go to Shinjuku by subway and need to find out whether or not you have to change trains if you go from Shinbashi.
9. You are on a bus and want to find out at which exit of the train station the taxi stand is located.
10. You are on a bus and want to find out how many more stops there are before you get to Akasaka Mitsuke.
11. You want to find out where the north exit of the station is.
12. You are in a taxi which is approaching your destination and you want to tell the driver to stop at the next traffic light.
13. You want a hotel clerk to call a taxi for you.
14. You don't understand the response of a Japanese person to your request for directions.
15. You are asking a Japanese for the way to a place and you want to ask the person to draw you a map.
16. You want to buy a sweater for your child and want to find out where in the department store they sell sweaters.
17. A store clerk showed you a sweater but you want to see the same sweater in different colors.
18. You are in a camera shop and a clerk showed you a camera but you want to see smaller and less expensive ones.
19. You have seen several cameras in a store and you would like to buy one of them.
20. You are in a camera shop and want to ask the clerk to show you the camera that is the third one from the left in the showcase.



## Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)

21. You are doing some shopping in a store but you don't understand what the clerk is saying, so you want to ask if there is an English-speaking clerk in the store.
22. You have bought several items in a store and want to find out the total price.
23. You are in a restaurant and want to find out if they serve curried rice.
24. You have been sitting at a table in a restaurant for some time but no waiter/waitress seems to have noticed that you want to be helped.
25. You are in a tea parlor with one of your American friends and you want to order American coffee for two.
26. You have finished your meal in a restaurant and want to leave but the waiter/waitress hasn't brought you the bill yet.
27. You are at the front desk of a ryokan and want to find out if they have a room available.
28. You are staying at a ryokan and want to ask a front-desk clerk where you can buy film.
29. You are calling a Japanese company and want to ask for Mr. Kita who works in the sales department.
30. You receive a call from a Japanese person at your office but don't understand what s/he is saying, so you want to transfer the call to a Japanese-speaking person.
31. You are calling one of your Japanese friends at his house but the person who answered is someone other than your friend and s/he doesn't speak English.
32. You receive a call at home and the person on the phone asks for you.
33. You are introduced to Japanese people.
34. You want to introduce Mr. and Mrs. Jones to a Japanese person.
35. You and one of your Japanese friends have started home together and you want to say goodbye to him/her when you part.
36. You meet your neighbor when you go to work in the morning and you want to greet him/her.
37. The electricity in your apartment is not working and you want your resident manager to come up and check.
38. Your tape recorder is broken and you take it to an electrical appliance store for repair.
39. You want to buy two theater tickets for the 10th.
40. You want to buy a Shinkansen ticket to Shin Osaka.
41. Apologize to your Japanese friend for arriving late for your appointment.
42. Say that you want to speak to Mr. Yamada.
43. You want to know whom you are talking to. Ask politely.
44. Give a gift to someone.
45. Say "Good luck to you".
46. Take leave from someone's home.
47. Decline an offer in an indirect manner.
48. Ask someone to visit you again.

49. Welcome a guest at the entrance to your house.
50. Lead a guest to your living room.
51. Invite a guest to stay longer.
52. Congratulate someone.
53. Take leave of someone.
54. Express regret.
55. Say 'take good care of yourself.'
56. Tell someone to be careful.
57. What do you say when you are about to eat or drink?
58. After having finished eating or drinking, express your gratitude.
59. Thank a Japanese friend for a favor received.
60. What do you say when you do something before someone else who is with you?

Sayonara!

## Review Lesson: Making It Work (3)

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

| <u>A</u>               |  | Lesson |
|------------------------|--|--------|
| aa                     | Oh!  | 3      |
| achira                 | over there, yonder                                     | 7      |
| agatte                 | go up (TE form of agarimasu)                           | 11     |
| ageta                  | fried  | 23     |
| aimashoo               | let's meet   | 29     |
| ainiku desu ga         | It's unfortunate, but. . .                             | 17     |
| airon                  | iron   | 28     |
| aisukuriimu            | ice cream  | 3      |
| aka                    | red  | 22     |
| akai                   | red  | 18     |
| aki                    | fall   | 20     |
| akusesarii             | accessory  | 17     |
| amai                   | sweet  | 23     |
| ame                    | rain   | 28     |
| <b>Amerikan Sentaa</b> | American Center  | 5      |
| annaijo                | information desk                                       | 16     |
| ano                    | that (over there)                                      | 8      |
| anoo                   | uh, well (indicates hesitation)                        | 16     |
| aoi                    | blue   | 18     |
| are                    | that (thing over there)                                | 3      |
| arerugii               | allergy  | 27     |
| arigatoo               | thank you  | 2      |
| arigatoo gozaimasu     | thank you (polite)                                     | 8      |
| arimasu                | there is /are, have (used with objects but not people) | 4      |
| aruite                 | on foot, walking (TE form of arukimasu)                | 10     |
| asatte                 | the day after tomorrow                                 | 28     |
| ashi                   | foot, leg  | 27     |
| ashita                 | tomorrow   | 26     |
| asoko                  | over there   | 7      |
| asupirin               | aspirin  | 16     |
| atama                  | head   | 27     |
| atatakai               | warm   | 20     |
| atchi                  | that way (over there)                                  | 7      |
| atsui                  | hot  | 20, 23 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

### B

|                   |                               |    |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|----|
| <b>...ban</b>     | number...                     | 11 |
| <b>...bansen</b>  | (track) number                | 3  |
| <b>...bansen</b>  | line/platform/track number... | 12 |
| <b>basu</b>       | bus                           | 2  |
| <b>basu-tee</b>   | bus stop                      | 13 |
| <b>benpi</b>      | constipation                  | 27 |
| <b>bifuteki</b>   | beefsteak                     | 4  |
| <b>biifu</b>      | beef                          | 23 |
| <b>biiru</b>      | beer                          | 18 |
| <b>bijutsukan</b> | art museum                    | 9  |
| <b>biru</b>       | building                      | 3  |
| <b>biza</b>       | visa                          | 25 |
| <b>bu</b>         | department                    | 25 |
| <b>buchoo</b>     | department head               | 25 |
| <b>bunboogu</b>   | stationery                    | 16 |
| <b>burausu</b>    | blouse                        | 17 |
| <b>...byaku</b>   | ...hundred (san-byaku)        | 11 |

### C

|                           |  |    |
|---------------------------|--|----|
| <b>chigaimasu</b>         | wrong, different   | 1  |
| <b>chigau</b>             | different  | 17 |
| <b>chiisai</b>            | small  | 17 |
| <b>chika</b>              | basement   | 16 |
| <b>chikadoo</b>           | underground passage  | 14 |
| <b>chikai</b>             | is near  | 10 |
| <b>chikatetsu</b>         | subway   | 7  |
| <b>chippu</b>             | tip  | 23 |
| <b>chizu</b>              | map  | 4  |
| <b>choo</b>               | intestine  | 27 |
| <b>choome</b>             | chome (counter of blocks/streets)                                      | 8  |
| <b>chotto</b>             | a little   | 4  |
| <b>chotto</b>             | Excuse me (may I have your attention?)                                 | 27 |
| <b>chotto mae ni</b>      | a little while ago   | 20 |
| <b>chotto (soko made)</b> | just over there (answers 'where are you going?'<br>used as a greeting) | 20 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                        |   |    |
|------------------------|---|----|
| <b>Chuo-sen</b>        | Chuo-line                                 | 12 |
| <b>Chuugoku-ryoori</b> | Chinese cuisine                           | 29 |
| <b><u>D</u></b>        |   |    |
| <b>daijobu</b>         | all right, no problem                     | 27 |
| <b>dakara</b>          | therefore                                 | 30 |
| <b>dake</b>            | only                                      | 17 |
| <b>dame</b>            | no good, won't do, bad                    | 29 |
| <b>de</b>              | by means of                               | 10 |
| <b>de</b>              | at  | 15 |
| <b>de</b>              | by means of                               | 3  |
| <b>de gozaimasu</b>    | is/are/am (very deferential)              | 16 |
| <b>deguchi</b>         | exit                                      | 14 |
| <b>de irasshaimasu</b> | is/are (very polite)                      | 17 |
| <b>dekimashita</b>     | came up, arose (past tense of dekimasu)   | 30 |
| <b>dekimasu</b>        | be ready                                  | 28 |
| <b>demae</b>           | delivery of prepared food                 | 23 |
| <b>demasen</b>         | not come out (negative form of demasu)    | 28 |
| <b>denchi</b>          | battery                                   | 28 |
| <b>denki</b>           | electricity                               | 28 |
| <b>denki kamisori</b>  | electric shaver                           | 28 |
| <b>denki-ya</b>        | electrician, electric appliance repairman | 28 |
| <b>denki yoohin</b>    | electric appliance                        | 16 |
| <b>densha</b>          | electric train                            | 10 |
| <b>dentaku</b>         | electric calculator                       | 28 |
| <b>denwa</b>           | telephone                                 | 7  |
| <b>denwa shimasu</b>   | make a phone call                         | 26 |
| <b>depaato</b>         | department store                          | 4  |
| <b>deshita</b>         | was/were (past tense of desu)             | 28 |
| <b>deshoo</b>          | be probably                               | 27 |
| <b>desu</b>            | is /am /are                               | 1  |
| <b>dete</b>            | leave, go out (TE form of demasu)         | 14 |
| <b>dezaato</b>         | dessert                                   | 22 |
| <b>. . .do</b>         | degree (of temperature)                   | 20 |
| <b>doko</b>            | where                                     | 2  |
| <b>dokoka</b>          | somewhere                                 | 20 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                                 |   |    |
|---------------------------------|---|----|
| <b>donata</b>                   | who? (polite)   | 24 |
| <b>dono</b>                     | which?  | 14 |
| <b>doo itashimashite</b>        | you're welcome  | 2  |
| <b>doo shimashita ka?</b>       | what's the matter?  | 27 |
| <b>doomo</b>                    | thanks  | 2  |
| <b>doomo arigatoo</b>           | thank you very much   | 2  |
| <b>doomo arigatoo gozaimasu</b> | thank you very much   | 13 |
| <b>doomo sumimasen</b>          | I'm sorry, pardon me  | 24 |
| <b>...doori</b>                 | ... street, ...avenue   | 8  |
| <b>doozo</b>                    | please, go ahead, feel free                                     | 12 |
| <b>doozo yoroshiku</b>          | Please to meet you. (lit., I ask your favor/<br>good treatment) | 5  |
| <b>dore</b>                     | which one?  | 23 |
| <b>dotchi</b>                   | which way?  | 14 |
| <b>do-yoobi</b>                 | Saturday  | 5  |
| <b><u>E</u></b>                 |   |    |
| <b>e</b>                        | to, towards   | 10 |
| <b>ebi</b>                      | shrimp, prawn   | 18 |
| <b>ee</b>                       | yes (less formal than hai)                                      | 2  |
| <b>eega</b>                     | movie   | 30 |
| <b>Eego</b>                     | English (language)  | 4  |
| <b>eegyoo</b>                   | sales   | 25 |
| <b>eegyoo-ka</b>                | sales department  | 25 |
| <b>eeto...</b>                  | Let me see... (hesitation word)                                 | 7  |
| <b>en</b>                       | yen   | 11 |
| <b>erebeetaa</b>                | elevator  | 7  |
| <b>esukareetaa</b>              | escalator   | 16 |
| <b><u>F</u></b>                 |   |    |
| <b>fooku</b>                    | fork  | 22 |
| <b>fujin</b>                    | woman (formal)  | 16 |
| <b>fuirumu</b>                  | film  | 3  |
| <b>fuku</b>                     | clothing  | 16 |
| <b>...fun</b>                   | minute(s)   | 10 |
| <b>furoshiki</b>                | square cloth for wrapping things                                | 3  |
| <b>futa-ri</b>                  | two persons   | 21 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                           |  |          |
|---------------------------|--|----------|
| <b>futatsu-me no. . .</b> | the second. . .                                      | <b>8</b> |
| <b>futsuka</b>            | second day of the month, two days                    | 20       |
| <b>futsuu-sha</b>         | coach car  | 12       |
| <b>futsuu</b>             | local train (lit., usual)                            | 12       |
| <b>fuyu</b>               | winter   | 20       |
| <b><u>G</u></b>           |  |          |
| <b>ga</b>                 | (subject marker)                                     | 3        |
| <b>ga</b>                 | but (functions like English semicolon)               | 11       |
| <b>gaijin</b>             | foreigner  | 10       |
| <b>Gaimushoo</b>          | Foreign Ministry                                     | 9        |
| <b>gakkoo</b>             | school   | 7        |
| <b>. . .gatsu</b>         | month (in month names)                               | 20       |
| <b>geri</b>               | diarrhea   | 27       |
| <b>geta</b>               | wooden clogs   | 3        |
| <b>getsu-yoobi</b>        | Monday   | 5        |
| <b>go</b>                 | five   | 1        |
| <b>gochisoosama</b>       | thank you for the good food (polite)                 | 23       |
| <b>gochuumon</b>          | (your) order (polite)                                | 22       |
| <b>gogo</b>               | p.m.   | 28       |
| <b>gohan</b>              | cooked rice  | 23       |
| <b>go-ji</b>              | five o'clock   | 10       |
| <b>gomen kudasai</b>      | excuse me; hello (anyone there?); good-bye           | 20       |
| <b>goro</b>               | approximately  | 26       |
| <b>goshujin</b>           | (someone else's) husband                             | 5        |
| <b>gozaimasu</b>          | there is /are, have (deferential form of arimasu)    | 4        |
| <b>. . .guchi</b>         | gate, door, exit (phonetic variant of kuchi 'mouth') | 14       |
| <b>gurai</b>              | approximately, about                                 | 10       |
| <b>guramu</b>             | gram   | 18       |
| <b>guriin sarada</b>      | green salad  | 22       |
| <b>guriin-sha</b>         | first-class (lit., green car)                        | 12       |
| <b>gyoosee</b>            | administration                                       | 25       |
| <b>gyoosee-bu</b>         | administrative section                               | 25       |
| <b>gyuuniku</b>           | beef   | 18       |
| <b><u>H</u></b>           |  |          |
| <b>ha?</b>                | pardon? (I don't understand)                         | 2        |



## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                                 |  |    |
|---------------------------------|--|----|
| <b>ha</b>                       | tooth  | 27 |
| <b>hachi</b>                    | eight  | 1  |
| <b>hachi-ji</b>                 | eight o'clock  | 10 |
| <b>hai</b>                      | yes  | 1  |
| <b>hai</b>                      | lung   | 27 |
| <b>haien</b>                    | pneumonia  | 27 |
| <b>hajimemashite</b>            | How do you do? Glad to meet you.<br>(lit., It's the first time.) | 5  |
| <b>hajime no. . .</b>           | the first. . .   | 8  |
| <b>hakike ga shimasu</b>        | feel nauseous  | 27 |
| <b>han</b>                      | half   | 10 |
| <b>hana</b>                     | nose   | 27 |
| <b>hankachi</b>                 | handkerchief   | 18 |
| <b>hare</b>                     | sunny  | 28 |
| <b>haru</b>                     | spring   | 20 |
| <b>hatsuka</b>                  | twentieth day of the month, twenty days                          | 20 |
| <b>heya</b>                     | room   | 4  |
| <b>hi (. . .bi)</b>             | day  | 28 |
| <b>hidari</b>                   | left   | 4  |
| <b>hidari ni magaru</b>         | turn left  | 4  |
| <b>higashi</b>                  | east   | 14 |
| <b>hiji</b>                     | elbow  | 27 |
| <b>hijooguchi</b>               | emergency exit   | 7  |
| <b>hikooki</b>                  | air plane  | 10 |
| <b>hiru no bu</b>               | afternoon performance  | 29 |
| <b>hisho</b>                    | secretary  | 5  |
| <b>hito</b>                     | person   | 4  |
| <b>hito-ri</b>                  | one person, single   | 4  |
| <b>hitotsu</b>                  | one  | 10 |
| <b>hito-yama</b>                | a pile   | 19 |
| <b>hiza</b>                     | knee   | 27 |
| <b>hon</b>                      | book   | 16 |
| <b>hon (. . .bon, . . .pon)</b> | counter for long, thin objects                                   | 22 |
| <b>hontoo ni</b>                | truly  | 20 |
| <b>hontoo</b>                   | true   | 20 |
| <b>hon-ya</b>                   | bookstore  | 7  |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                        |  |    |
|------------------------|--|----|
| <b>hoo</b>             | direction, way, toward                   | 9  |
| <b>hoomu</b>           | platform                                 | 12 |
| <b>hoorensoo</b>       | spinach                                  | 19 |
| <b>hooseki</b>         | jewel/jewelry                            | 16 |
| <b>hyaku</b>           | hundred                                  | 11 |
| <b>I</b>               |  |    |
| <b>i</b>               | stomach                                  | 16 |
| <b>ichi</b>            | one                                      | 1  |
| <b>ichi-do</b>         | one time, once                           | 1  |
| <b>ichi-gatsu</b>      | January                                  | 20 |
| <b>ichi-ji</b>         | one o'clock                              | 10 |
| <b>ichi-nichi</b>      | one day                                  | 28 |
| <b>ichi-wa</b>         | a bunch                                  | 19 |
| <b>ii</b>              | good, O.K.                               | 4  |
| <b>iie</b>             | no                                       | 1  |
| <b>ikaga</b>           | how?                                     | 17 |
| <b>ikaiyoo</b>         | stomach ulcer                            | 27 |
| <b>ikeba</b>           | if (you) go                              | 10 |
| <b>...iki</b>          | (train) bound for...                     | 12 |
| <b>ikimasen</b>        | doesn't/don't go                         | 12 |
| <b>ikimashoo</b>       | let's go                                 | 27 |
| <b>ikimasu</b>         | go                                       | 9  |
| <b>ikitain desu ga</b> | (I) want to go (TAI form of ikimasu)     | 11 |
| <b>ik-kagetsu</b>      | one month                                | 28 |
| <b>ik-ko</b>           | one                                      | 19 |
| <b>iku</b>             | go (dictionary form of ikimasu)          | 10 |
| <b>ikura</b>           | how much?                                | 11 |
| <b>ikutsu-me</b>       | which one (in a numbered series)         | 13 |
| <b>ima</b>             | now                                      | 19 |
| <b>imasen</b>          | there is not/are not (people or animals) | 4  |
| <b>imasu</b>           | there is/are (people or animals)         | 4  |
| <b>irasshai</b>        | welcome                                  | 28 |
| <b>irasshaimase</b>    | welcome (polite)                         | 4  |
| <b>irasshaimasu</b>    | is/are (polite)                          | 24 |
| <b>iriguchi</b>        | entrance                                 | 14 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                        |   |    |
|------------------------|---|----|
| <b>iro</b>             | color   | 17 |
| <b>isha</b>            | doctor  | 27 |
| <b>issho ni</b>        | together  | 21 |
| <b>is-shuukan</b>      | one week  | 28 |
| <b>itadakimasu</b>     | 'I will receive.' (see Notes)                                     | 30 |
| <b>itai</b>            | painful, hurts  | 27 |
| <b>itashimashoo ka</b> | (what) shall I do/make? (deferential)                             | 21 |
| <b>itsu</b>            | when  | 28 |
| <b>itsuka</b>          | fifth day of the month, five days                                 | 20 |
| <b>itte (i)rasshai</b> | good-bye (used by the one staying behind;<br>lit., 'go and come') | 20 |
| <b>itte kudasai</b>    | please say  | 1  |
| <b>itte</b>            | go (TE form of ikimasu)   | 4  |
| <b>itte</b>            | say (TE form of iimasu)   | 17 |
| <b>itte mairimasu</b>  | I'm going out. (lit., I'll go and come back.)                     | 20 |
| <b>itsutsu</b>         | five  | 10 |
| <b>itsutsu-me</b>      | fifth   | 13 |
| <b>iya</b>             | nasty, unpleasant   | 20 |
| <b><u>J</u></b>        |   |    |
| <b>jaa</b>             | well (then)   | 3  |
| <b>jaa, mata</b>       | so long, see you again later                                      | 20 |
| <b>ja arimasen</b>     | am /is /are not   | 3  |
| <b>jidoo hanbaiki</b>  | vending machine   | 11 |
| <b>jiko</b>            | accident  | 27 |
| <b>jinja</b>           | shrine  | 3  |
| <b>jinji</b>           | personnel (affairs)   | 25 |
| <b>jinji-ka</b>        | personnel section/department                                      | 25 |
| <b>jitsu wa</b>        | actually  | 30 |
| <b>jiyuu-seki</b>      | unreserved seat   | 12 |
| <b>JR</b>              | Japan Railway   | 12 |
| <b>JR-sen</b>          | Metropolitan Railway (of Japan Railway)                           | 8  |
| <b>juu</b>             | ten   | 1  |
| <b>juu ichi-ji</b>     | eleven o'clock  | 10 |
| <b>juu-ji</b>          | ten o'clock   | 10 |
| <b>juu ni-ji</b>       | twelve o'clock  | 10 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

### K

|                              |   |    |
|------------------------------|---|----|
| <b>ka</b>                    | <i>(indicates a question)</i>                             | 1  |
| <b>ka</b>                    | section   | 25 |
| <b>ka</b>                    | or  | 13 |
| <b>kaban</b>                 | luggage   | 16 |
| <b>Kabukiza</b>              | Kabuki Theater  | 8  |
| <b>kachoo</b>                | division chief  | 25 |
| <b>kado</b>                  | corner  | 4  |
| <b>kagu</b>                  | furniture   | 16 |
| <b>kai</b>                   | (counter for) floor, story                                | 16 |
| <b>kaidan</b>                | stairway  | 11 |
| <b>kaisatsuguchi</b>         | gate (at station)   | 11 |
| <b>kaisoku</b>               | express train   | 12 |
| <b>kaisuu-ken</b>            | coupon tickets  | 11 |
| <b>kaite</b>                 | write, draw (TE form of <i>kakimasu</i> )                 | 4  |
| <b>kaite kudasai</b>         | please write  | 4  |
| <b>kakarichoo</b>            | section chief   | 25 |
| <b>kakarimasu</b>            | take (time)   | 28 |
| <b>kakato</b>                | heel(s)   | 28 |
| <b>kakueki</b>               | local train   | 12 |
| <b>kamera</b>                | camera  | 3  |
| <b>kanai</b>                 | (one's own) wife  | 5  |
| <b>kara</b>                  | because   | 12 |
| <b>kara</b>                  | from  | 8  |
| <b>karai</b>                 | hot and spicy   | 23 |
| <b>karee-raisu</b>           | curried rice  | 4  |
| <b>kashikomarimashita</b>    | certainly, of course (response to a request)              | 3  |
| <b>kata</b>                  | shoulder  | 27 |
| <b>katachi</b>               | form, style, model  | 17 |
| <b>kateeyoohin</b>           | household goods   | 16 |
| <b>katsudon</b>              | katsudon (a bowl of rice topped with a fried pork cutlet) | 3  |
| <b>katte</b>                 | buy (TE form of <i>kaimasu</i> )                          | 21 |
| <b>katte kudasaimasen ka</b> | won't you buy (it) for me?                                | 11 |
| <b>kauntaa</b>               | counter   | 18 |
| <b>kawarimasu</b>            | change  | 26 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                              |  |    |
|------------------------------|--|----|
| <b>ka-yoobi</b>              | Tuesday                                      | 5  |
| <b>kaze</b>                  | a cold                                       | 16 |
| <b>kaze-gusuri</b>           | cold medicine                                | 16 |
| <b>keeri-ka</b>              | accounting section                           | 25 |
| <b>keesatsu</b>              | police                                       | 27 |
| <b>keezai</b>                | economics                                    | 25 |
| <b>keezai-bu</b>             | economic section                             | 25 |
| <b>keganin</b>               | injured person                               | 27 |
| <b>kekoo(desu)</b>           | that's O K , that's fine                     | 18 |
| <b>keshoohin</b>             | cosmetics                                    | 16 |
| <b>ketsuatsu</b>             | blood pressure                               | 27 |
| <b>kimasu</b>                | come   | 18 |
| <b>kimochi ga warui desu</b> | feel sick, sick in stomach                   | 27 |
| <b>kimono</b>                | Japanese native clothing                     | 3  |
| <b>kin-yoobi</b>             | Friday                                       | 5  |
| <b>ki o tsukete</b>          | Be careful                                   | 30 |
| <b>kippu</b>                 | ticket                                       | 11 |
| <b>kiree na</b>              | beautiful, pretty                            | 30 |
| <b>kirikizu</b>              | cut, wound                                   | 16 |
| <b>kiro</b>                  | kilogram/kilometer                           | 18 |
| <b>kissaten</b>              | tea parlor, coffee shop                      | 4  |
| <b>kita</b>                  | north  | 14 |
| <b>kite</b>                  | come (TE form of kimasu)                     | 21 |
| <b>kochira</b>               | this way                                     | 7  |
| <b>kochira</b>               | this (thing, person) (polite)                | 5  |
| <b>kochira</b>               | here (polite)                                | 23 |
| <b>kodomo</b>                | child  | 16 |
| <b>kodomo-tachi</b>          | children                                     | 20 |
| <b>koko</b>                  | here   | 2  |
| <b>kokonoka</b>              | ninth day of the month, nine days            | 20 |
| <b>kokonotsu</b>             | nine   | 10 |
| <b>Kokumushoo</b>            | State Department                             | 5  |
| <b>komatta na</b>            | it's a problem, I don't know what to do /say | 3  |
| <b>konbanwa</b>              | good evening                                 | 1  |
| <b>konde imasu</b>           | be crowded                                   | 28 |
| <b>konnichiwa</b>            | good day, good afternoon                     | 1  |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                          |   |    |
|--------------------------|---|----|
| <b>kono</b>              | this  | 9  |
| <b>kono aida</b>         | the other day                                 | 30 |
| <b>kono chikaku</b>      | near here, close by                           | 4  |
| <b>kono hen</b>          | this vicinity, this area                      | 7  |
| <b>kooban</b>            | police box                                    | 7  |
| <b>koo-ketsuatsu</b>     | high blood pressure                           | 27 |
| <b>koora</b>             | cola  | 22 |
| <b>koosaten</b>          | intersection                                  | 8  |
| <b>kooshuu denwa</b>     | public telephone                              | 7  |
| <b>kore</b>              | this (thing)                                  | 1  |
| <b>koshi</b>             | lower back                                    | 27 |
| <b>koshoo shimashita</b> | be broken, be out of order                    | 28 |
| <b>kotchi</b>            | this way                                      | 7  |
| <b>koware mashita</b>    | be broken                                     | 28 |
| <b>ku</b>                | nine  | 1  |
| <b>kubi</b>              | neck  | 27 |
| <b>kuchi</b>             | mouth   | 27 |
| <b>kudari</b>            | down-train                                    | 12 |
| <b>kudasai</b>           | please (usually used after TE form of a verb) | 4  |
| <b>kudasaimase</b>       | please (very polite)                          | 19 |
| <b>kudasaimasen ka</b>   | won't you please                              | 21 |
| <b>ku-ji</b>             | nine o'clock                                  | 10 |
| <b>kumori</b>            | cloudy  | 28 |
| <b>kuru</b>              | come (dictionary form of <i>kimasu</i> )      | 26 |
| <b>kuruma</b>            | car, automobile                               | 10 |
| <b>kusuri</b>            | medicine, drug                                | 16 |
| <b>kusuri-ya</b>         | drugstore                                     | 7  |
| <b>kutsu</b>             | shoe(s)                                       | 16 |
| <b>kyabetsu</b>          | cabbage                                       | 19 |
| <b>kyoo</b>              | today   | 20 |
| <b>kyuu</b>              | nine  | 1  |
| <b>kyuukoo</b>           | express train                                 | 12 |
| <b>kyuukyusha</b>        | ambulance                                     | 27 |
| <b>kyuuri</b>            | cucumber                                      | 19 |
| <b>kyuuyoo</b>           | urgent business                               | 30 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

### M

|                                 |   |    |
|---------------------------------|---|----|
| <b>madamada</b>                 | not yet, still                            | 5  |
| <b>made</b>                     | until, as far as                          | 10 |
| <b>madoguchi</b>                | (sales) window                            | 11 |
| <b>mae</b>                      | front, in front of                        | 7  |
| <b>mae</b>                      | before                                    | 10 |
| <b>magarimasu</b>               | turn                                      | 9  |
| <b>magaruto</b>                 | after having turned                       | 4  |
| <b>magatta tokoro desu</b>      | it's at the place (you) turn              | 9  |
| <b>magatte</b>                  | turn (TE form of <b>magarimasu</b> )      | 9  |
| <b>maguro</b>                   | tuna fish                                 | 23 |
| <b>mai</b>                      | counter for flat objects                  | 11 |
| <b>maido arigatoo gozaimasu</b> | thank you very much (used by shop clerks) | 19 |
| <b>man</b>                      | ten thousand                              | 18 |
| <b>Marunouchi-sen</b>           | Marunouchi line                           | 14 |
| <b>massugu</b>                  | straight                                  | 4  |
| <b>massugu itta tokoro desu</b> | go straight (then, you'll see it)         | 9  |
| <b>mata</b>                     | again                                     | 18 |
| <b>matte</b>                    | wait (TE form of <b>machimasu</b> )       | 22 |
| <b>matte ite kudasai</b>        | please (remain) waiting                   | 27 |
| <b>me</b>                       | eye                                       | 27 |
| <b>meeshi</b>                   | name card, calling card, business card    | 5  |
| <b>meetoru</b>                  | meter(s)                                  | 10 |
| <b>megane</b>                   | eyeglasses                                | 16 |
| <b>memai ga shimasu</b>         | I feel dizzy                              | 27 |
| <b>menyuu</b>                   | menu                                      | 21 |
| <b>michi</b>                    | street, road, way                         | 4  |
| <b>midiamu</b>                  | medium (steak)                            | 22 |
| <b>miemasu</b>                  | is visible, can be seen                   | 10 |
| <b>migi</b>                     | right (side)                              | 4  |
| <b>mikan</b>                    | tangerine, mandarin orange                | 18 |
| <b>mikisaa</b>                  | mixer                                     | 28 |
| <b>mikka</b>                    | third day of the month, three days        | 20 |
| <b>mikkusu sarada</b>           | mixed salad                               | 22 |
| <b>mimi</b>                     | ear                                       | 27 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                            |   |    |
|----------------------------|---|----|
| <b>minami</b>              | south   | 14 |
| <b>minamiguchi</b>         | south gate  | 14 |
| <b>miruku</b>              | milk  | 3  |
| <b>misete</b>              | show (TE form of <i>misemasu</i> )                  | 17 |
| <b>mite</b>                | look, see (TE form of <i>mimasu</i> )               | 17 |
| <b>mite iru</b>            | is/am looking                                       | 17 |
| <b>mittsu-me</b>           | the third   | 8  |
| <b>mizu</b>                | water   | 28 |
| <b>mo</b>                  | also, too   | 4  |
| <b>moku-yoobi</b>          | Thursday  | 5  |
| <b>mono</b>                | person (humble)                                     | 26 |
| <b>moo</b>                 | more, again, further                                | 1  |
| <b>mooshiwake arimasen</b> | I am very sorry (formal)                            | 30 |
| <b>moshi moshi</b>         | hello (on the phone)                                | 24 |
| <b>muika</b>               | sixth day of the month, six days                    | 20 |
| <b>mukoo</b>               | yonder, over there                                  | 2  |
| <b>mune</b>                | chest   | 27 |
| <b>muttsu</b>              | six   | 10 |
| <b>muttsu-me</b>           | sixth   | 13 |
| <b>muzukashii</b>          | difficult   | 20 |
| <b>myaku (haku)</b>        | pulse   | 27 |
| <b><u>N</u></b>            |   |    |
| <b>nagaremasen</b>         | does not flow (negative form of <i>nagaremasu</i> ) | 28 |
| <b>nagashi</b>             | kitchen sink  | 28 |
| <b>naifu</b>               | knife   | 22 |
| <b>naisen</b>              | extension (telephone)                               | 25 |
| <b>namae</b>               | name  | 15 |
| <b>nama no</b>             | raw   | 23 |
| <b>nan</b>                 | what?   | 1  |
| <b>nana</b>                | seven   | 1  |
| <b>nanatsu</b>             | seven   | 10 |
| <b>nanatsu-me</b>          | seventh   | 13 |
| <b>nan-ban</b>             | what number   | 28 |
| <b>nan-bansen</b>          | which line/platform/track                           | 12 |
| <b>nan-gai</b>             | which floor   | 16 |



## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                     |   |    |
|---------------------|---|----|
| <b>nanika</b>       | some kind of, something   | 26 |
| <b>nan-ji</b>       | what time?  | 10 |
| <b>nan-nin</b>      | how many people?  | 21 |
| <b>nan-nin-sama</b> | how many people? (polite)   | 21 |
| <b>nanoka</b>       | seventh day of the month, seven days                                      | 20 |
| <b>nan-yoobi</b>    | what day (of the week)  | 5  |
| <b>naoshite</b>     | fix, repair (TE form of <b>naoshimasu</b> )                               | 28 |
| <b>narimasu</b>     | become  | 19 |
| <b>narimasen</b>    | doesn't become (negative of <b>narimasu</b> )                             | 18 |
| <b>nasaimasu</b>    | do, make (polite)   | 21 |
| <b>nashi</b>        | pear  | 19 |
| <b>natsu</b>        | summer  | 20 |
| <b>ne</b>           | isn't it? (asks for confirmation)   | 5  |
| <b>nekutai</b>      | necktie   | 16 |
| <b>nemashita</b>    | went to sleep, went to bed (past tense of <b>nemasu</b> )                 | 20 |
| <b>netsu</b>        | fever   | 27 |
| <b>NHK</b>          | Japan Broadcasting Corporation  | 24 |
| <b>ni</b>           | two   | 1  |
| <b>ni</b>           | at, in, to  | 4  |
| <b>nichi-yoobi</b>  | Sunday  | 5  |
| <b>nigai</b>        | bitter  | 23 |
| <b>Nihon</b>        | Japan   | 1  |
| <b>Nihongo</b>      | Japanese language   | 3  |
| <b>Nihon Ryokoo</b> | Japan Travel  | 25 |
| <b>ni-ji</b>        | two o'clock   | 10 |
| <b>niku</b>         | meat  | 18 |
| <b>ningyoo</b>      | doll  | 3  |
| <b>ninjin</b>       | carrot  | 19 |
| <b>...ninmae</b>    | counter for servings or portions of a dish                                | 22 |
| <b>nishi</b>        | west  | 14 |
| <b>nita</b>         | cooked in broth (Japanese-style)  | 23 |
| <b>no</b>           | of (indicates that word before <b>no</b> describes word after <b>no</b> ) | 4  |
| <b>...no</b>        | ...one  | 17 |
| <b>nobori</b>       | up-train  | 12 |
| <b>noborimasu</b>   | climb, go up  | 14 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                                  |  |    |
|----------------------------------|--|----|
| <b>. . .no chikaku</b>           | the vicinity of. . .   | 9  |
| <b>node</b>                      | since, because   | 30 |
| <b>nodo</b>                      | throat   | 27 |
| <b>nokotte imasu</b>             | remain, be left (TE form of <i>nokorimasu</i> )                            | 29 |
| <b>nonde</b>                     | drink (TE form of <i>nomimasu</i> )  | 27 |
| <b>noriba</b>                    | (bus) stop, (taxi) stand   | 2  |
| <b>norikae</b>                   | a change (of trains, etc.)   | 14 |
| <b>norikaete</b>                 | change, transfer (trains, buses, etc.)<br>(TE form of <i>norikaemasu</i> ) | 14 |
| <br>                             |  |    |
| <b><u>O</u></b>                  |  |    |
| <b>o</b>                         | (marks the object of a verb)   | 9  |
| <b>oazukari itashimasu</b>       | I'm taking (deferential)   | 19 |
| <b>obi</b>                       | Japanese sash used for kimono  | 3  |
| <b>ocha</b>                      | (green) tea  | 22 |
| <b>odaiji ni</b>                 | take care of yourself (see Notes)  | 30 |
| <b>odekake desu</b>              | go out (polite)  | 20 |
| <b>odenwa itashimasu</b>         | make a telephone call (very deferential)                                   | 26 |
| <b>Ogenki desu ka?</b>           | How are you? (lit., Are you well?)(polite)                                 | 1  |
| <b>(o)hashi</b>                  | chopsticks   | 3  |
| <b>Ohayoo gozaimasu</b>          | good morning   | 1  |
| <b>ohazukashii</b>               | I am embarrassed   | 30 |
| <b>(o)hitori-sama</b>            | one person, single (polite)  | 4  |
| <b>oisha-san</b>                 | doctor   | 27 |
| <b>oishii</b>                    | good (tasting), delicious  | 23 |
| <b>(o)joozu</b>                  | skillful, good   | 5  |
| <b>okaeri desu ka?</b>           | are you going home? (polite)   | 20 |
| <b>okaerinasai</b>               | Welcome home (used by the one who stayed behind)                           | 20 |
| <b>okaeshi de gozaimasu</b>      | your change is. . .(deferential)   | 19 |
| <b>(o)kane</b>                   | money  | 3  |
| <b>okanjoo</b>                   | bill, check  | 23 |
| <b>okimari desu ka</b>           | Have you decided (polite)  | 22 |
| <b>okimari ni narimashita ka</b> | Have you decided? (very polite)  | 22 |
| <b>okome</b>                     | (uncooked) rice  | 18 |
| <b>okotozuke</b>                 | message  | 26 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                                |  |    |
|--------------------------------|--|----|
| <b>okujoo</b>                  | roof   | 16 |
| <b>okusan</b>                  | (someone else's) wife  | 5  |
| <b>okyaku-sama</b>             | customer (polite)  | 17 |
| <b>okyaku-san</b>              | guest, passenger, customer   | 13 |
| <b>omachi kudasai</b>          | please wait (polite)   | 4  |
| <b>omatase itashimashita</b>   | I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)   | 19 |
| <b>omatase shimashita</b>      | I'm sorry to have kept you waiting (deferential)   | 26 |
| <b>omedetoo gozaimasu</b>      | congratulations (see Notes)  | 30 |
| <b>omocha</b>                  | toy  | 16 |
| <b>omodori ni narimasu</b>     | return (deferential)   | 26 |
| <b>omoi</b>                    | heavy  | 20 |
| <b>omoshirokatta</b>           | it was fun (past tense of adjective <b>omoshiroi</b> )   | 30 |
| <b>onaka</b>                   | abdomen  | 27 |
| <b>onamae</b>                  | name (polite)  | 28 |
| <b>onegai shimasu</b>          | (may I have it) please   | 3  |
| <b>(o)nomimono</b>             | something to drink (polite)  | 22 |
| <b>ookii</b>                   | big, large   | 15 |
| <b>origami</b>                 | folding paper  | 3  |
| <b>orimasen</b>                | is not (here) (negative form of <b>orimasu</b> )<br>(deferential form of <b>imasu</b> )                            | 26 |
| <b>orimasu</b>                 | get off, get down  | 13 |
| <b>orite</b>                   | go down (TE form of <b>orimasu</b> )   | 14 |
| <b>osagashi desu</b>           | look for (very polite)   | 17 |
| <b>(o)sake</b>                 | sake   | 4  |
| <b>osaki ni</b>                | before you, after you (see Notes)  | 30 |
| <b>(o)sashimi</b>              | sashimi (sliced raw fish)  | 3  |
| <b>oshiete</b>                 | tell, teach (TE form of <b>oshiemasu</b> )   | 13 |
| <b>oshiete kudasaimasen ka</b> | please tell me   | 13 |
| <b>oshiya</b>                  | (subway, train) pusher   | 12 |
| <b>osoku</b>                   | late (ku form of adjective <b>osoi</b> )   | 30 |
| <b>osumi desu ka?</b>          | are you finished? (polite)   | 23 |
| <b>(o)sushi</b>                | (a small, oblong piece of vinegared rice topped with<br>raw fish, shellfish, etc. Commonly called <b>nigiri</b> .) | 3  |
| <b>otaku</b>                   | house (another's)  | 24 |
| <b>(o)tearai</b>               | bathroom, toilet, rest room  | 7  |
| <b>(o)tenki</b>                | weather  | 20 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                         |                                      |    |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|----|
| <b>ototoi</b>           | the day before yesterday             | 30 |
| <b>otsunagi shimasu</b> | I'll connect you (deferential)       | 25 |
| <b>otsuri</b>           | change (money)                       | 19 |
| <b>oyasumi desu</b>     | rest, take a vacation (polite)       | 26 |
| <b>oyasuminasai</b>     | good night                           | 20 |
| <b><u>P</u></b>         |                                      |    |
| <b>pai</b>              | pie                                  | 22 |
| <b>petto</b>            | pet                                  | 16 |
| <b>pooku</b>            | pork                                 | 23 |
| <b>...pun</b>           | minute                               | 10 |
| <b>...pyaku</b>         | ...hundred (rop-pyaku and hap-pyaku) | 11 |
| <b><u>R</u></b>         |                                      |    |
| <b>raamen</b>           | ramen (Chinese noodles)              | 3  |
| <b>raishuu</b>          | next week                            | 28 |
| <b>rajio</b>            | radio                                | 3  |
| <b>rea</b>              | rare (steak)                         | 22 |
| <b>reezooko</b>         | refrigerator                         | 28 |
| <b>reji</b>             | cash register                        | 23 |
| <b>rekoodo</b>          | record                               | 3  |
| <b>renji</b>            | range, stove                         | 28 |
| <b>rentogen</b>         | X-ray                                | 27 |
| <b>resutoran</b>        | restaurant                           | 4  |
| <b>retasu</b>           | lettuce                              | 19 |
| <b>ringo</b>            | apple                                | 18 |
| <b>roku</b>             | six                                  | 1  |
| <b>roku-ji</b>          | six o'clock                          | 10 |
| <b>ryokoo</b>           | travel, trip                         | 25 |
| <b>ryooji</b>           | consul                               | 25 |
| <b>ryooji-bu</b>        | consular section                     | 25 |
| <b>ryoojikan</b>        | consulate                            | 5  |
| <b><u>S</u></b>         |                                      |    |
| <b>saisho no. . .</b>   | the first. . .                       | 8  |
| <b>saizu</b>            | size                                 | 17 |
| <b>sakana</b>           | fish                                 | 18 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                               |                                |    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|----|
| <b>sakaya</b>                 | wine merchant                  | 18 |
| <b>saki</b>                   | ahead, beyond                  | 9  |
| <b>...sama</b>                | polite form of ...san          | 4  |
| <b>samui</b>                  | cold                           | 20 |
| <b>san</b>                    | three                          | 1  |
| <b>...san</b>                 | Mr., Mrs., Ms.                 | 1  |
| <b>sandoitchi</b>             | sandwich                       | 21 |
| <b>san-ji</b>                 | three o'clock                  | 10 |
| <b>sarada</b>                 | salad                          | 21 |
| <b>sashoo</b>                 | visa                           | 25 |
| <b>sashoo-ka</b>              | visa section                   | 25 |
| <b>sayoo de gozaimasu</b>     | that is correct (very polite)  | 24 |
| <b>Sayoonara</b>              | good-bye                       | 1  |
| <b>seebyoo</b>                | VD                             | 27 |
| <b>seeji</b>                  | politics                       | 25 |
| <b>seeji-bu</b>               | political section              | 25 |
| <b>seetaa</b>                 | sweater                        | 3  |
| <b>seki o hazushite imasu</b> | is away from one's desk        | 26 |
| <b>sen</b>                    | line                           | 14 |
| <b>...sen</b>                 | ...line, track                 | 12 |
| <b>sen</b>                    | thousand                       | 12 |
| <b>senaka</b>                 | back                           | 27 |
| <b>senjitsu</b>               | the other day                  | 30 |
| <b>sensee</b>                 | teacher, instructor            | 1  |
| <b>shachoo</b>                | president (lit., company head) | 25 |
| <b>shatsu</b>                 | shirt                          | 17 |
| <b>shi</b>                    | four                           | 1  |
| <b>shichi</b>                 | seven                          | 1  |
| <b>shichi-ji</b>              | seven o'clock                  | 10 |
| <b>shinbun</b>                | newspaper                      | 21 |
| <b>shingoo</b>                | traffic light                  | 7  |
| <b>Shinkansen</b>             | bullet train                   | 12 |
| <b>shinshi</b>                | man, gentleman (formal)        | 16 |
| <b>shinzoobyoo</b>            | heart disease                  | 27 |
| <b>shinzoomahi</b>            | heart attack                   | 27 |
| <b>shiokarai</b>              | salty                          | 23 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                                |                                   |    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----|
| <b>shirabemasu</b>             | check up                          | 28 |
| <b>shirabete</b>               | check up (TE form of shirabemasu) | 28 |
| <b>shirimasen</b>              | doesn't/don't know                | 11 |
| <b>shiro</b>                   | white                             | 22 |
| <b>shiroi</b>                  | white                             | 18 |
| <b>shirubaa shiito</b>         | priority (lit., silver) seat      | 12 |
| <b>shita</b>                   | under, below                      | 17 |
| <b>shita</b>                   | tongue                            | 27 |
| <b>shitee-seki</b>             | reserved seat                     | 12 |
| <b>shitsuree</b>               | rudeness                          | 24 |
| <b>shitsuree desu ga. . .</b>  | excuse me, but. . .               | 5  |
| <b>shitsuree itashimashita</b> | I'm sorry, I beg your pardon      | 19 |
| <b>shokken</b>                 | meal ticket                       | 21 |
| <b>shokuji</b>                 | meal                              | 29 |
| <b>shokuryoohin</b>            | groceries, foodstuffs             | 16 |
| <b>shooshoo</b>                | a little (polite)                 | 19 |
| <b>shujin</b>                  | (one's own) husband               | 5  |
| <b>shujutsu</b>                | operation                         | 27 |
| <b>soba</b>                    | soba (buckwheat noodles)          | 3  |
| <b>sochira</b>                 | that way                          | 7  |
| <b>soko</b>                    | there                             | 7  |
| <b>sono</b>                    | its; that                         | 8  |
| <b>soo</b>                     | thus, so, correct                 | 1  |
| <b>soo desu ka</b>             | I see                             | 4  |
| <b>soo desu nee. . .</b>       | let me think for a minute         | 23 |
| <b>soomu-bu</b>                | department of general affairs     | 25 |
| <b>soosu</b>                   | sauce                             | 23 |
| <b>sore</b>                    | that (thing)                      | 3  |
| <b>soroban</b>                 | abacus                            | 3  |
| <b>sotchi</b>                  | that way                          | 7  |
| <b>sugi</b>                    | after, past                       | 10 |
| <b>sugimashita</b>             | passed                            | 13 |
| <b>sugu</b>                    | soon, right there                 | 4  |
| <b>sugu soba</b>               | very near                         | 8  |
| <b>suidoo</b>                  | waterworks, plumbing              | 28 |
| <b>suidoo-ya</b>               | plumber                           | 28 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                          |   |    |
|--------------------------|---|----|
| <b>sui-yoobi</b>         | Wednesday   | 5  |
| <b>sukaafu</b>           | scarf   | 17 |
| <b>sukiyaki</b>          | sukiyaki (a beef and vegetable dish)                        | 3  |
| <b>sukoshi</b>           | a little  | 17 |
| <b>sumimasen</b>         | excuse me, I'm sorry  | 1  |
| <b>sumimasen</b>         | excuse me   | 28 |
| <b>sumoo</b>             | sumoo wrestling   | 29 |
| <b>supagetti</b>         | spaghetti   | 4  |
| <b>suppai</b>            | sour  | 23 |
| <b>suteeki</b>           | steak   | 22 |
| <b>sutereo</b>           | stereo  | 28 |
| <b>suupaa</b>            | supermarket   | 15 |
| <b>suupaamaaketto</b>    | supermarket   | 15 |
| <b>suzushii</b>          | cool  | 20 |
| <b><u>T</u></b>          |   |    |
| <b>tabako</b>            | tobacco, cigarettes   | 3  |
| <b>tabako-ya</b>         | tobacco shop  | 7  |
| <b>tadaima</b>           | I'm back (used by the one who has returned)                 | 20 |
| <b>taihen</b>            | very  | 23 |
| <b>taihen deshita ne</b> | you must have had a difficult time                          | 30 |
| <b>taion</b>             | body temperature  | 27 |
| <b>taishikan</b>         | embassy   | 5  |
| <b>takushii</b>          | taxi  | 2  |
| <b>tanoshikatta</b>      | it was enjoyable (past tense of adjective <b>tanoshii</b> ) | 30 |
| <b>tasukete!</b>         | help!   | 27 |
| <b>tatte kudasai</b>     | please stand  | 7  |
| <b>te</b>                | hand  | 27 |
| <b>tee-ketsuatsu</b>     | low blood pressure  | 27 |
| <b>teeki-ken</b>         | season pass, commuter ticket                                | 11 |
| <b>ten</b>               | point (in decimals)   | 18 |
| <b>tendon</b>            | tendon (a bowl of rice topped with fried prawns)            | 3  |
| <b>tempura</b>           | tempura (deep fried food)                                   | 3  |
| <b>terebi</b>            | television  | 3  |
| <b>teriyaki</b>          | teriyaki (meat broiled with teriyaki sauce)                 | 3  |
| <b>to</b>                | and   | 12 |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                               |   |    |
|-------------------------------|---|----|
| <b>to</b>                     | to, toward  | 26 |
| <b>tochuu</b>                 | on the way  | 30 |
| <b>tokee</b>                  | watch, clock  | 16 |
| <b>tokkyuu</b>                | super express train   | 12 |
| <b>tokubaijoo</b>             | bargain/budget floor  | 16 |
| <b>tomarimasu</b>             | stop/stops  | 12 |
| <b>tomarimasen</b>            | doesn't/don't stop  | 12 |
| <b>tomato</b>                 | tomato  | 19 |
| <b>tomemasu</b>               | stop  | 15 |
| <b>tomemashoo ka?</b>         | (where) shall I stop?   | 15 |
| <b>tomete</b>                 | stop (TE form of <b>tomemasu</b> )  | 15 |
| <b>tonari</b>                 | next to   | 7  |
| <b>tondemonai</b>             | not at all  | 30 |
| <b>too</b>                    | ten   | 10 |
| <b>tooi</b>                   | is far  | 10 |
| <b>tooka</b>                  | tenth day of the month, ten days  | 20 |
| <b>tooku arimasen</b>         | is not far  | 10 |
| <b>...to omoimasu</b>         | think that . . .  | 26 |
| <b>toosutaa</b>               | toaster   | 28 |
| <b>tori</b>                   | chicken   | 23 |
| <b>toro</b>                   | fatty part of tuna  | 23 |
| <b>totemo</b>                 | very  | 30 |
| <b>tsuyu</b>                  | rainy season  | 20 |
| <b>tsugi</b>                  | next  | 2  |
| <b>tsugi no kado</b>          | next corner   | 4  |
| <b>tsugi no tsugi</b>         | the one after next  | 13 |
| <b>tsuitachi</b>              | first day of the month  | 20 |
| <b>tsuitara</b>               | when (we) arrive (TARA form of <b>tsukimasu</b> )                           | 13 |
| <b>tsurete itte agemashoo</b> | I'll take you there   | 8  |
| <b>tsukiatari</b>             | end of a street, dead end, 'T' intersection                                 | 9  |
| <b>tsukimasen</b>             | does not light up, does not turn on<br>(negative form of <b>tsukimasu</b> ) | 28 |
| <b>tsumetai</b>               | cold  | 23 |
| <b>Tsuusanshoo</b>            | M.I.T.I. (Ministry of International Trade and Industry)                     | 5  |



## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

### U

|                                  |                                     |    |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----|
| <b>uchiwa</b>                    | Japanese fan                        | 3  |
| <b>ude</b>                       | arm                                 | 27 |
| <b>ue</b>                        | above, top                          | 17 |
| <b>uisukii</b>                   | whisky                              | 3  |
| <b>unchin (ryookin) seesanjo</b> | fare adjustment window              | 11 |
| <b>uriba</b>                     | ticket window (lit., selling place) | 11 |
| <b>ushiro</b>                    | back                                | 7  |

### W

|                              |  |    |
|------------------------------|--|----|
| <b>wa</b>                    | <i>(follows topic of clause or sentence)</i>         | 1  |
| <b>. . .wa?</b>              | what about . . . ?                                   | 15 |
| <b>wain</b>                  | wine   | 22 |
| <b>waishatsu</b>             | man's dress shirt                                    | 19 |
| <b>wakarimasen</b>           | not understand (negative form of <b>wakarimasu</b> ) | 1  |
| <b>wakarimashita</b>         | I understand (lit., I understood)                    | 10 |
| <b>wakarimasu</b>            | understand   | 1  |
| <b>wakaru</b>                | understand (dictionary form of <b>wakarimasu</b> )   | 4  |
| <b>wan pakku</b>             | one pack   | 18 |
| <b>watakushi</b>             | I, me  | 1  |
| <b>watakushi no hoo koso</b> | it is I who . . .                                    | 30 |
| <b>watashimashita</b>        | handed over  | 19 |

### Y

|                      |  |    |
|----------------------|--|----|
| <b>yaita</b>         | grilled  | 23 |
| <b>yakedo</b>        | burn   | 16 |
| <b>yakitori</b>      | broiled chicken on skewers                                       | 22 |
| <b>yakusoku</b>      | engagement, appointment  | 30 |
| <b>yasai</b>         | vegetables   | 23 |
| <b>yasui</b>         | cheap, inexpensive   | 17 |
| <b>yasuku</b>        | cheap ( <i>ku</i> form of <b>yasui</b> )                         | 18 |
| <b>yasunde imasu</b> | be resting, taking leave ( <i>TE</i> form of <b>yasumimasu</b> ) | 26 |
| <b>yasunde ite</b>   | (remain) resting ( <i>TE</i> form of <b>yasumimasu</b> )         | 27 |
| <b>yattsu</b>        | eight  | 10 |
| <b>yattsu-me</b>     | eighth   | 13 |
| <b>yo</b>            | (shows emphasis)   | 2  |

## JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

|                            |                                     |    |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----|
| <b>yo-ji</b>               | four o'clock                        | 10 |
| <b>yokka</b>               | fourth day of the month, four days  | 20 |
| <b>yoku</b>                | well                                | 3  |
| <b>yon</b>                 | four                                | 1  |
| <b>yonde</b>               | call (TE form of <i>yobimasu</i> )  | 15 |
| <b>yo-nin</b>              | four people                         | 21 |
| <b>yooka</b>               | eighth day of the month, eight days | 20 |
| <b>yoru no bu</b>          | evening performance                 | 29 |
| <b>yottsu</b>              | four                                | 10 |
| <b>yottsu-me</b>           | fourth                              | 13 |
| <b>yubi</b>                | finger, toe                         | 27 |
| <b>yuki</b>                | snow                                | 28 |
| <b>yukkuri</b>             | slowly                              | 2  |
| <b>yuuenchi</b>            | amusement park                      | 16 |
| <b><u>Z</u></b>            |                                     |    |
| <b>zannen desu ga. . .</b> | it's too bad, it's unfortunate      | 29 |
| <b>zasshi</b>              | magazine                            | 21 |
| <b>. . .zen</b>            | thousand ( <i>san-zen</i> )         | 12 |
| <b>zenbu</b>               | all                                 | 19 |
| <b>zenbu de</b>            | altogether                          | 19 |
| <b>zero</b>                | zero                                | 1  |

# ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

| <b><u>A</u></b>        |  | Lesson |
|------------------------|--|--------|
| abacus                 | soroban  | 3      |
| abdomen                | onaka  | 27     |
| about                  | gurai  | 10     |
| above                  | ue   | 17     |
| above...               | ...no ue   | 17     |
| accessory              | akusesarii   | 17     |
| accident               | jiko   | 27     |
| accounting section     | keeri-ka   | 25     |
| administration         | gyoosee  | 25     |
| administrative section | gyoosee-bu   | 25     |
| after                  | sugi   | 10     |
| after you              | osaki ni   | 30     |
| afternoon performance  | hiru no bu   | 29     |
| again                  | mata   | 18     |
| ago                    | mae  |        |
| a little while ago     | chotto mae ni  |        |
| ahead                  | saki   | 9      |
| air plane              | hikooki  | 10     |
| all                    | zenbu  | 19     |
| all right              | daijoobu   | 27     |
| allergy                | arerugii   | 27     |
| also                   | mo   | 4      |
| altogether             | zenbu de   | 19     |
| am                     | desu   | 1      |
| I am ...               | (watakushi wa) ...desu,<br>...de gozaimasu (deferential) | 16     |
| ambulance              | kyuukyusha   | 27     |
| American Center        | Amerikan Sentaa  | 5      |
| American Embassy       | Amerika Taishikan  | 5      |
| amusement park         | yuuenchi   | 16     |
| and                    | to   | 12     |
| April                  | shi-gatsu  | 20     |
| apple                  | ringo  | 18     |
| appointment            | yakusoku   | 30     |
| approximately          | goro   | 26     |
| approximately          | gurai  | 10     |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                      |   |         |
|----------------------|---|---------|
| are                  |   |         |
| there are            | <b>imasu</b> (animate), <b>arimasu</b> (inanimate),<br><b>irasshaimasu</b> (animate polite) | 4<br>24 |
| area                 |   |         |
| this area            | <b>kono hen</b>   | 7       |
| arm                  | <b>ude</b>  | 27      |
| arrive               | <b>tsukimasu</b>  | 13      |
| when (we) arrive     | <b>tsuitara</b>   | 13      |
| art museum           | <b>bijutsukan</b>   | 9       |
| aspirin              | <b>asupirin</b>   | 16      |
| at                   | <b>de</b>   | 4, 14   |
| August               | <b>hachi-gatsu</b>  | 20      |
| automobile           | <b>kuruma</b>   | 10      |
| avenue               | <b>toori</b>  | 8       |
| ...avenue            | ... <b>doori</b>  | 8       |
| away from one's desk | <b>seki o hazushite imasu</b>   | 26      |
| <br><b><u>B</u></b>  |   |         |
| back                 | <b>ushiro</b>   | 7       |
| back                 | <b>senaka</b>   | 27      |
| lower back           | <b>koshi</b>  | 27      |
| back                 |   |         |
| I'm back             | <b>tadaima</b> (used by the one who has<br>returned)  | 20      |
| bargain/budget floor | <b>tokubaijoo</b>   | 16      |
| basement             | <b>chika</b>  | 16      |
| bathroom             | <b>(o)tearai</b>  | 7       |
| battery              | <b>denchi</b>   | 28      |
| be ready             | <b>dekimasu</b>   | 28      |
| beautiful            | <b>kireena</b>  | 30      |
| because              | <b>kara</b>   | 12      |
| become               | <b>narimasu</b>   | 19      |
| beef                 | <b>biifu, gyuuniku</b>  | 18, 23  |
| beefsteak            | <b>bifuteki</b>   | 4       |
| beer                 | <b>biiru</b>  | 18      |
| before               | <b>mae</b>  | 7       |
| before you           | <b>osaki ni</b>   | 30      |
| below                | <b>shita</b>  | 17      |
| below...             | ... <b>no shita</b>   | 17      |
| beyond               | <b>saki</b>   | 9       |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                            |                         |       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| big                        | ookii                   | 15    |
| bill                       | okanjoo                 | 23    |
| bitter                     | nigai                   | 23    |
| blood pressure             | ketsuatsu               | 27    |
| high blood pressure        | koo ketsuatsu           | 27    |
| low blood pressure         | tee ketsuatsu           | 27    |
| blouse                     | burausu                 | 17    |
| blowfish                   | fugu                    | 22    |
| blue                       | aoi                     | 18    |
| body temperature           | taion                   | 27    |
| book                       | hon                     | 16    |
| bookstore                  | hon-ya                  | 7     |
| bound for...               | ...iki (train)          | 12    |
| broiled                    | yaita                   |       |
| broken, is out of order    | koshoo shimashita       | 28    |
| broken                     | kowaremashita           | 28    |
| building                   | biru                    | 3     |
| bullet train               | Shinkansen              | 12    |
| burn                       | yakedo                  | 16    |
| bus                        | basu                    | 2     |
| bus stop                   | basu noriba, basu-tee   | 2, 13 |
| business card              | meeshi                  | 5     |
| but                        | ga                      | 11    |
| buy                        | kaimasu                 | 21    |
| won't you buy (it) for me? | katte kudasaimasen ka   | 11    |
| by (means of)              | de                      | 3     |
| <b>C</b>                   |                         |       |
| cabbage                    | kyabetsu                | 19    |
| carrot                     | ninjin                  | 19    |
| call                       | yobimasu                | 15    |
| calling card               | meeshi                  | 5     |
| camera                     | kamera                  | 3     |
| car                        | kuruma                  | 10    |
| cash register              | reji                    | 23    |
| certainly                  | kashikomarimashita      | 3     |
|                            | (response to a request) |       |
| change (of trains, etc.)   | norikae                 | 14    |
| change (trains, etc.)      | norikaemasu             | 14    |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                                   |                              |           |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------|
| change (money)                    | <b>otsuri</b>                | <b>19</b> |
| change                            | <b>kawarimasu</b>            | <b>26</b> |
| cheap                             | <b>yasui</b>                 | <b>17</b> |
| check                             | <b>okanjoo</b>               | <b>23</b> |
| check up                          | <b>shirabemasu</b>           | <b>28</b> |
| chest                             | <b>mune</b>                  | <b>27</b> |
| chicken                           | <b>tori</b>                  | <b>23</b> |
| child                             | <b>kodomo</b>                | <b>16</b> |
| children                          | <b>kodomo-tachi</b>          | <b>20</b> |
| Chinese cuisine                   | <b>Chuugoku-ryoori</b>       | <b>29</b> |
| chome (counter of blocks/streets) | <b>choome</b>                | <b>8</b>  |
| chopsticks                        | <b>(o)hashi</b>              | <b>3</b>  |
| cigarettes                        | <b>tabako</b>                | <b>3</b>  |
| climb                             | <b>noborimasu</b>            | <b>14</b> |
| clock                             | <b>tokee</b>                 | <b>16</b> |
| clothing                          | <b>fuku</b>                  | <b>16</b> |
| cloudy                            | <b>kumori</b>                | <b>28</b> |
| coach car                         | <b>futsuu-sha</b>            | <b>12</b> |
| coffee shop                       | <b>kissaten</b>              | <b>4</b>  |
| cola                              | <b>koora</b>                 | <b>22</b> |
| cold                              | <b>kaze</b>                  | <b>16</b> |
| cold                              | <b>tsumetai</b>              | <b>23</b> |
| cold                              | <b>samui</b>                 | <b>20</b> |
| cold medicine                     | <b>kaze-gusuri</b>           | <b>16</b> |
| color                             | <b>iro</b>                   | <b>17</b> |
| come                              | <b>kimasu</b>                | <b>18</b> |
| come out                          | <b>demasu</b>                | <b>28</b> |
| commuter ticket                   | <b>teeki-ken</b>             | <b>13</b> |
| connect                           | <b>tsunagimasu</b>           | <b>25</b> |
| I'll connect you (telephone)      | <b>otsunagi shimasu</b>      | <b>25</b> |
| constipation                      | <b>benpi</b>                 | <b>27</b> |
| consul                            | <b>ryooji</b>                | <b>25</b> |
| consular section                  | <b>ryooji-bu</b>             | <b>25</b> |
| consulate                         | <b>ryoojikan</b>             | <b>5</b>  |
| cooked rice                       | <b>gohan</b>                 | <b>23</b> |
| cooked (in broth)                 | <b>nita (Japanese-style)</b> | <b>23</b> |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                                    |                                  |        |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------|
| cool                               | suzushii                         | 20     |
| corner                             | kado                             | 4, 8   |
| correct                            | soo                              | 1      |
| that is correct                    | sayoo de gozaimasu (very polite) | 24     |
| cosmetics                          | keshoohin                        | 16     |
| counter                            | kauntaa                          | 18     |
| coupon tickets                     | kaisuu-ken                       | 11     |
| crowded                            | konde imasu                      | 28     |
| curried rice                       | karee-raisu                      | 4      |
| customer                           | okyaku-san, okyaku-sama          | 13, 17 |
| cut, wound                         | kirikizu                         | 13     |
| <b><u>D</u></b>                    |                                  |        |
| day                                | hi (...bi)                       | 28     |
| one day                            | ichi-nichi                       | 20     |
| the first day of a month           | tsuitachi                        | 20     |
| day after tomorrow                 | asatte                           | 28     |
| day before tomorrow                | ototoi                           | 30     |
| December                           | juuni-gatsu                      | 20     |
| decide                             | kimarimasu                       |        |
| Have you decided?                  | okimari desu ka (polite)?        | 22     |
| degree (of temperature)            | ...do                            | 20     |
| delicious                          | oishii                           | 23     |
| delivery (of prepared food)        | demae                            | 23     |
| department                         | bu                               | 25     |
| department of general affairs      | soomu-bu                         | 25     |
| department head                    | buchoo                           | 25     |
| department store                   | depaato                          | 4      |
| dessert                            | dezaato                          | 22     |
| diarrhea                           | geri                             | 27     |
| different (color)                  | chigau (iro)                     | 17     |
| difficult                          | muzukashii                       | 20     |
| you must have had a difficult time | taihen deshita ne                | 30     |
| direction, toward                  | hoo                              | 9      |
| division chief                     | kachoo                           | 25     |
| do                                 | nasaimasu (polite)               | 21     |
| doctor                             | isha                             | 27     |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|  |                              |           |
|--|------------------------------|-----------|
| doll                                   | <b>ningyoo</b>               | <b>3</b>  |
| down-train                             | <b>kudari</b>                | <b>12</b> |
| draw                                   | <b>kakimasu</b> (a map)      | <b>4</b>  |
| please draw                            | kaite kudasai                | <b>4</b>  |
| drink                                  | <b>nomimasu</b>              | <b>27</b> |
| something to drink                     | nomimono, onomimono (polite) | <b>22</b> |
| drug                                   | <b>kusuri</b>                | <b>16</b> |
| drugstore                              | kusuri-ya                    | <b>7</b>  |
| <br><b><u>E</u></b>                    |                              |           |
| ear                                    | <b>mimi</b>                  | <b>27</b> |
| eat                                    | <b>tabemasu</b>              |           |
| I am about to eat                      | itadakimasu                  | <b>30</b> |
| economic section                       | <b>keezai-bu</b>             | <b>25</b> |
| economics                              | <b>keezai</b>                | <b>25</b> |
| elbow                                  | <b>hiji</b>                  | <b>27</b> |
| electricity                            | <b>denki</b>                 | <b>28</b> |
| electric appliance                     | denki yoohin                 | <b>16</b> |
| electric calculator                    | dentaku                      | <b>28</b> |
| electric shaver                        | denki kamisori               | <b>28</b> |
| electric train                         | densha                       | <b>10</b> |
| electrician                            | <b>denki-ya</b>              | <b>28</b> |
| elevator                               | <b>erebeetaa</b>             | <b>7</b>  |
| embarrassed                            | <b>hazukashii</b>            |           |
| I am embarrassed                       | ohazukashii desu             | <b>30</b> |
| embassy                                | <b>taishikan</b>             | <b>5</b>  |
| emergency exit                         | <b>hijooguchi</b>            | <b>7</b>  |
| end of street                          | <b>tsukiatari</b>            | <b>9</b>  |
| engagement, appointment                | <b>yakusoku</b>              | <b>30</b> |
| English (language)                     | <b>eego</b>                  | <b>4</b>  |
| enjoyable                              | <b>tanoshii</b>              | <b>30</b> |
| entrance                               | <b>iriguchi</b>              | <b>14</b> |
| escalator                              | <b>esukareetaa</b>           | <b>16</b> |
| evening performance                    | <b>yoru no bu</b>            | <b>29</b> |
| excuse me (may I have your attention)! | <b>chotto!</b>               | <b>27</b> |
| exit                                   | <b>deguchi</b>               | <b>14</b> |
| express train                          | <b>kaisoku, kyuukoo</b>      | <b>12</b> |
| extension (telephone)                  | <b>naisen</b>                | <b>25</b> |
| eye                                    | <b>me</b>                    | <b>27</b> |



## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                        |                                     |    |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|----|
| eyeglasses             | <b>megane</b>                       | 16 |
| <b><u>F</u></b>        |                                     |    |
| fall                   | <b>aki</b>                          | 20 |
| fan (Japanese)         | <b>uchiwa</b>                       | 3  |
| far                    | <b>tooi</b>                         | 10 |
| fare                   | <b>unchin, ryookin</b>              | 11 |
| fare adjustment window | unchin (ryookin) seesanjo           | 11 |
| fatty part of tuna     | <b>toro</b>                         | 23 |
| February               | <b>ni-gatsu</b>                     | 20 |
| feel                   |                                     |    |
| feel dizzy             | memai ga shimasu                    | 27 |
| feel nauseous          | hakike ga shimasu                   | 27 |
| feel sick              | kimochi ga warui desu               | 27 |
| fever                  | <b>netsu</b>                        | 27 |
| film                   | <b>fuirumu</b>                      | 3  |
| fine (that's fine)     | <b>kekko desu</b>                   | 18 |
| finger                 | <b>yubi</b>                         | 27 |
| finish                 | <b>sumimasu</b>                     | 23 |
| first...               | <b>saisho no..., hajime no...</b>   | 8  |
| first-class            | <b>guriin-sha</b> (lit., green car) | 12 |
| fish                   | <b>sakana</b>                       | 18 |
| fix                    | <b>naoshimasu</b>                   | 28 |
| flow                   | <b>nagaremasu</b>                   | 28 |
| folding paper          | <b>origami</b>                      | 3  |
| foot                   | <b>ashi</b>                         | 27 |
| Foreign Ministry       | <b>gaimushoo</b>                    | 9  |
| foreigner              | <b>gaijin</b>                       | 10 |
| fork                   | <b>fooku</b>                        | 22 |
| form                   | <b>katachi</b>                      | 17 |
| Friday                 | <b>kinyoobi</b>                     | 5  |
| fried                  | <b>ageta</b>                        | 23 |
| from                   | <b>kara</b>                         | 8  |
| front                  | <b>mae</b>                          | 7  |
| in front of...         | ...no mae                           | 7  |
| fun                    | <b>omoshiroi</b>                    |    |
| furniture              | <b>kagu</b>                         | 16 |
| further                | <b>moo</b>                          | 1  |

# ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

## G

|                          |                                |        |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|--------|
| gate (at station)        | <b>kaisatsuguchi</b>           | 11     |
| gentleman (formal)       | <b>shinshi</b>                 | 16     |
| get off                  | <b>orimasu</b>                 | 13     |
| globefish, blowfish      | <b>fugu</b>                    | 22     |
| go                       | <b>iku, ikimasu</b>            | 9      |
| if you go                | ikeba                          | 10     |
| I want to go             | ikitain desu                   |        |
| Are you going home?      | Okaeri desu ka?                | 20     |
| let's go                 | ikimashoo                      | 27     |
| go down stairs           | kaidan o orimasu               | 14     |
| go out                   | <b>demasu, dekakemasu</b>      | 14, 20 |
| I'm going out            | itte mairimasu                 | 20     |
| go to bed                | <b>nemasu</b>                  | 20     |
| go up                    | <b>agarimasu, noborimasu</b>   | 11     |
| good                     | <b>ii</b>                      | 4      |
| good-bye                 | sayoonara,                     | 1      |
|                          | itte irasshai, itte mairimasu, | 20     |
|                          | gomen kudasai                  |        |
| good morning             | ohayoo gozaimasu               | 1      |
| good evening             | konbanwa                       | 1      |
| good day, good afternoon | konnichiwa                     | 1      |
| good night               | oyasuminasai                   | 20     |
| gram                     | <b>guramu</b>                  | 18     |
| grilled                  | <b>yaita</b>                   | 23     |
| groceries                | <b>shokuryoohin</b>            | 16     |
| guest                    | <b>okyaku-san, okyaku-sama</b> | 13, 17 |
| <br><b><u>H</u></b>      |                                |        |
| half                     | <b>han</b>                     | 10     |
| hand                     | <b>te</b>                      | 27     |
| handed over              | <b>watashimashita</b>          | 19     |
| handkerchief             | <b>hankachi</b>                | 18     |
| have                     | <b>arimasu</b>                 | 4      |
| I have...                | (watakushi wa) ... ga arimasu  | 4      |
| head                     | <b>atama</b>                   | 27     |
| heart                    | <b>shinzoo</b>                 | 27     |
| heart attack             | shinzoomahi                    | 27     |
| heart disease            | shinzoobyoo                    | 27     |
| heavy                    | <b>omoi</b>                    | 20     |
| heel(s)                  | <b>kakato</b>                  | 28     |
| hello (anyone there?)    | <b>gomen kudasai</b>           | 20     |
| hello (on the phone)     | <b>moshimoshi</b>              |        |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                                |   |         |
|--------------------------------|---|---------|
| help!                          | <b>tasukete!</b>  | 27      |
| here                           | <b>koko, kochira</b> (polite)   | 2, 23   |
| high blood pressure            | <b>koo-ketsuatsu</b>  | 27      |
| hot                            | <b>atsui</b>  | 20, 23  |
| hot (spicy)                    | <b>karai</b>  | 23      |
| house (another's)              | <b>otaku</b>  | 24      |
| household goods                | <b>kateeyoohin</b>  | 16      |
| how?                           | <b>ikaga</b>  | 17      |
| How are you?                   | Ogenki desu ka?   | 1       |
| How do you do?                 | Hajimemashite.  | 5       |
| How much is it?                | Ikura desu ka?  | 11      |
| how many people?               | Nan-nin?  | 21      |
| hundred                        | <b>hyaku</b>  | 11      |
| hurts                          | <b>itai</b>   | 27      |
| my head hurts                  | atama ga itai desu  | 27      |
| husband                        | <b>shujin, goshujin</b> (someone else's)  | 5       |
| <b>I</b>                       |   |         |
| I                              | <b>watakushi</b>  | 1       |
| I am...                        | watakushi wa...desu   | 1       |
| it is I who...                 | watakushi no hoo koso   | 30      |
| ice cream                      | <b>aisukuriimu</b>  | 3       |
| in                             | <b>ni</b>   | 4       |
| inexpensive                    | <b>yasui</b>  | 17      |
| information desk               | <b>annaijo</b>  | 16      |
| injured person                 | <b>keganin</b>  | 27      |
| instructor                     | <b>sensee</b>   | 1       |
| interesting                    | <b>omoshiroi</b>  |         |
| intersection                   | <b>koosaten</b>   | 8       |
| intestine                      | <b>choo</b>   | 27      |
| iron                           | <b>airon</b>  | 28      |
| is                             |   |         |
| there is                       | <b>arimasu</b> (inanimate), <b>imasu</b> (animate),<br><b>irasshaimasu</b> (animate polite) | 4<br>24 |
| <b>J</b>                       |   |         |
| January                        | <b>ichi-gatsu</b>   | 20      |
| Japan                          | <b>Nihon</b>  | 1       |
| Japan Broadcasting Corporation | <b>NHK</b>  | 24      |
| Japan Railway                  | <b>JR</b>   | 12      |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                           |   |           |
|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| Japanese language         | <b>nihongo</b>                                      | 3         |
| Japan Travel              | <b>Nihon Ryokoo</b>                                 | 25        |
| jewel/jewelry             | <b>hooseki</b>                                      | 16        |
| June                      | <b>roku-gatsu</b>                                   | 20        |
| July                      | <b>shichi-gatsu</b>                                 | 20        |
| <b><u>K</u></b>           |   |           |
| kilogram                  | <b>kiro</b>   | 18        |
| kilometer                 | <b>kiro</b>   | 18        |
| kitchen sink              | <b>nagashi</b>                                      | 28        |
| knee                      | <b>hiza</b>   | 27        |
| knife                     | <b>naifu</b>  | 22        |
| know                      |   |           |
| I don't know              | <b>shirimasen</b>                                   | 11        |
| <b><u>L</u></b>           |   |           |
| large                     | <b>ookii</b>  | 15        |
| late(adv)                 | <b>osoku</b>  | 30        |
| leave                     | <b>demasu</b>                                       | 14        |
| leave                     | <b>yasumi</b>                                       | 26        |
| be on leave               | <b>yasunde imasu, oyasumi desu</b>                  | 26        |
| left                      | <b>hidari</b>                                       | 4         |
| leg                       | <b>ashi</b>   | 27        |
| Let me see...(hesitation) | <b>Eeto...</b>                                      | 7         |
| light up                  | <b>tsukimasu</b>                                    | 28        |
| ...line                   | <b>...sen</b>                                       | 12, 14    |
| Chuo-line                 | <b>Chuo-sen</b>                                     |           |
| little                    | <b>chotto, sukoshi,</b><br><b>shooshoo (polite)</b> | 4, 17, 19 |
| local(train)              | <b>futsuu, kakueki</b>                              | 12        |
| look                      | <b>mimasu</b>                                       | 17        |
| look for                  | <b>sagashimasu</b>                                  | 17        |
| lower back                | <b>koshi</b>  | 27        |
| low blood pressure        | <b>tee-ketsuatsu</b>                                | 27        |
| luggage                   | <b>kaban</b>  | 16        |
| lung                      | <b>hai</b>  | 27        |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

### **M**

|  |                           |    |
|--|---------------------------|----|
| magazine   | <b>zasshi</b>             | 21 |
| man  | <b>shinshi</b> (formal)   | 16 |
| mandarin orange  | <b>mikan</b>              | 18 |
| make (a telephone call)                                  | <b>denwa shimasu</b>      | 26 |
| man's dress shirt  | <b>waishatsu</b>          | 19 |
| map  | <b>chizu</b>              | 4  |
| March  | <b>san-gatsu</b>          | 20 |
| matter   |                           |    |
| what's the matter?                                       | <b>Doo shimashita ka?</b> | 27 |
| May  | <b>go-gatsu</b>           | 20 |
| meal   | <b>shokuji</b>            | 29 |
| meal ticket  | <b>shokken</b>            | 21 |
| meat   | <b>niku</b>               | 18 |
| medicine   | <b>kusuri</b>             | 16 |
| medium (steak)   | <b>midiamu</b>            | 22 |
| meet   | <b>aimasu</b>             |    |
| pleased to meet you                                      | <b>doozo yoroshiku</b>    | 5  |
| let's meet   | <b>aimashoo</b>           | 29 |
| menu   | <b>menyuu</b>             | 21 |
| message  | <b>okotozuke</b>          | 26 |
| meter(s)   | <b>meetoru</b>            | 10 |
| milk   | <b>miruku</b>             | 3  |
| minute(s)  | <b>...fun</b>             | 10 |
| M.I.T.I. ((Ministry of International Trade and Industry) | <b>Tsuusanshoo</b>        |    |
| mixer  | <b>mikisaa</b>            | 28 |
| Monday   | <b>getsu-yoobi</b>        | 5  |
| money  | <b>(o)kane</b>            | 3  |
| month (in month names)                                   | <b>...gatsu</b>           | 20 |
| more   | <b>moo</b>                | 1  |
| one more time  | <b>moo ichi-do</b>        | 1  |
| mouth  | <b>kuchi</b>              | 27 |
| movie  | <b>eega</b>               | 30 |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

### **N**

|   |                                      |        |
|---|--------------------------------------|--------|
| name  | <b>namae, onamae</b> (polite)        | 15, 28 |
| name card   | <b>meeshi</b>                        | 5      |
| nasty   | <b>iya</b>                           | 20     |
| near  | <b>soba, chikai</b>                  | 8, 10  |
| near here   | <b>kono chikaku</b>                  | 4      |
| neck  | <b>kubi</b>                          | 27     |
| necktie   | <b>nekutai</b>                       | 16     |
| newspaper   | <b>shinbun</b>                       | 21     |
| next  | <b>tsugi</b>                         | 2      |
| next to...  | ...no tonari                         | 7      |
| the one after next  | <b>tsugi no tsugi</b>                | 13     |
| ...is next  | ...wa tsugi desu                     | 13     |
| next corner   | <b>tsugi no kado</b>                 | 4      |
| next week   | <b>raishuu</b>                       | 28     |
| no  | <b>ie</b>                            | 1      |
| no good   | <b>dame</b>                          | 29     |
| north   | <b>kita</b>                          | 14     |
| nose  | <b>hana</b>                          | 27     |
| not   |                                      |        |
| not (at all)  | <b>tondemo nai</b>                   | 30     |
| not yet   | <b>madamada desu</b>                 | 5      |
| November  | <b>juuichi-gatsu</b>                 | 20     |
| now   | <b>ima</b>                           | 19     |
| number...   | <b>...ban</b>                        | 11     |
| <br>  |                                      |        |
| <b><u>O</u></b>   |                                      |        |
| October   | <b>juu-gatsu</b>                     | 20     |
| Oh!   | <b>Aa!</b>                           | 3      |
| one day   | <b>ichi-nichi</b>                    | 28     |
| only  | <b>dake</b>                          | 17     |
| operation   | <b>shujutsu</b>                      | 27     |
| or  | <b>ka</b>                            | 13     |
| order   | <b>chuumon, gochuumon</b> (polite)   | 22     |
| other   |                                      |        |
| the other day   | <b>kono aida, senjitsu</b>           | 30     |
| over there  | <b>mukoo, asoko, achira</b> (polite) | 2, 7   |
| just over there (answer to 'Where are you going?' used as a greeting) | <b>chotto soko made</b>              | 20     |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

### **P**

|                                |                                   |        |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|
| pack                           | <b>pakku</b>                      | 18     |
| painful                        | <b>itai</b>                       | 27     |
| pardon? (I don't understand)   | <b>Ha?</b>                        | 2      |
| I beg your pardon              | shitsuree itashimashita           | 19     |
| pardon me                      | doomo sumimasen                   | 24     |
| pass                           | <b>sugimasu</b>                   | 13     |
| passenger                      | <b>okyaku-san, okyaku-sama</b>    | 13, 17 |
| past                           | <b>sugi</b>                       | 10     |
| pear                           | <b>nashi</b>                      | 23     |
| person                         | <b>mono</b> (humble)              | 26     |
| personnel (affairs)            | <b>jinji</b>                      | 25     |
| personnel section/department   | <b>jinji-ka</b>                   | 25     |
| pet                            | <b>petto</b>                      | 16     |
| pie                            | <b>pai</b>                        | 22     |
| platform                       | <b>hoomu</b>                      | 12     |
| please                         | <b>doozo</b> (offering something) | 12     |
| please                         | V-te form + kudasai (request)     | 4      |
| please (may I have it?)        | <b>onegai shimasu</b>             | 3      |
| plumber                        | <b>suidoo-ya</b>                  | 28     |
| plumbing                       | <b>suidoo</b>                     | 28     |
| p.m.                           | <b>gogo</b>                       | 28     |
| pneumonia                      | <b>haien</b>                      | 27     |
| point (in decimals)            | <b>ten</b>                        | 18     |
| police                         | <b>keesatsu</b>                   | 27     |
| police box                     | <b>kooban</b>                     | 7      |
| political section              | <b>seeji-bu</b>                   | 25     |
| politics                       | <b>seeji</b>                      | 25     |
| pork                           | <b>pooku</b>                      | 23     |
| president (lit., company head) | <b>shachoo</b>                    | 25     |
| person                         | <b>hito</b>                       | 4      |
| pretty                         | <b>kiree</b>                      | 30     |
| public telephone               | <b>kooshuu denwa</b>              | 7      |
| pulse                          | <b>myaku</b>                      | 27     |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

### R

|                 |  |    |
|-----------------|--|----|
| radio           | <b>rajio</b>                             | 3  |
| rain            | <b>ame</b>                               | 28 |
| rainy season    | <b>tsuyu</b>                             | 20 |
| rare (steak)    | <b>rea</b>                               | 22 |
| range, stove    | <b>renji</b>                             | 28 |
| raw             | <b>nama no</b>                           | 23 |
| record          | <b>rekoodo</b>                           | 3  |
| red             | <b>aka</b>                               | 22 |
| red (one)       | <b>akai (no)</b>                         | 18 |
| refrigerator    | <b>reezooko</b>                          | 28 |
| regret          |  |    |
| to my regret    | <b>zannen desu ga</b>                    | 29 |
| remain          | <b>nokotte imasu</b>                     | 29 |
| reserved seat   | <b>shitee-seki</b>                       | 12 |
| rest            | <b>yasumimasu</b>                        | 26 |
| be resting      | <b>yasunde imasu</b>                     | 26 |
| rest room       | <b>(o)tearai</b>                         | 7  |
| restaurant      | <b>resutoran</b>                         | 4  |
| return          | <b>modorimasu</b>                        |    |
|                 | <b>omodori ni narimasu (deferential)</b> | 26 |
| rice (uncooked) | <b>okome</b>                             | 18 |
| right (side)    | <b>migi</b>                              | 4  |
| right there     | <b>sugu soko</b>                         | 4  |
| road            | <b>michi</b>                             | 4  |
| roof            | <b>okujoo</b>                            | 16 |
| room            | <b>heya</b>                              | 4  |
| rudeness        | <b>shitsuree</b>                         | 24 |

### S

|                  |                       |    |
|------------------|-----------------------|----|
| salad            | <b>sarada</b>         | 21 |
| green salad      | <b>guriin sarada</b>  | 22 |
| mixed salad      | <b>mikkusu sarada</b> | 22 |
| sales            | <b>eegyoo</b>         | 25 |
| sales department | <b>eegyoo-ka</b>      | 25 |
| (sales) window   | <b>madoguchi</b>      | 11 |
| salty            | <b>shiokarai</b>      | 23 |



## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                                |                                       |    |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----|
| sandwich                       | <b>sandoitchi</b>                     | 21 |
| sash (for kimono)              | <b>obi</b>                            | 3  |
| Saturday                       | <b>do-yoobi</b>                       | 5  |
| sauce                          | <b>soosu</b>                          | 23 |
| say                            | <b>iimasu</b>                         | 1  |
| please say                     | <b>itte kudasai</b>                   | 1  |
| scarf                          | <b>sukaafu</b>                        | 17 |
| school                         | <b>gakkoo</b>                         | 7  |
| season pass                    | <b>teeki-ken</b>                      | 13 |
| second...                      | <b>futatsu-me no...</b>               | 8  |
| secretary                      | <b>hisho</b>                          | 5  |
| section                        | <b>ka</b>                             | 25 |
| section chief                  | <b>kakarichoo</b>                     | 25 |
| see                            | <b>mimasu</b>                         |    |
| see you (again)                | <b>jaa mata</b>                       | 20 |
| I see                          | <b>soo desu ka</b>                    | 4  |
| Let me see...(hesitation word) | <b>eeto...</b>                        | 7  |
| September                      | <b>ku-gatsu</b>                       | 20 |
| shirt                          | <b>shatsu</b>                         | 17 |
| shoe(s)                        | <b>kutsu</b>                          | 16 |
| show                           | <b>misemasu</b>                       | 17 |
| shrimp                         | <b>ebi</b>                            | 18 |
| shrine                         | <b>jinja</b>                          | 3  |
| shoulder                       | <b>kata</b>                           | 27 |
| sick                           |                                       |    |
| sick in stomach                | <b>kimochi ga warui desu</b>          | 27 |
| single (person)                | <b>hitori</b>                         | 4  |
| size                           | <b>saizu</b>                          | 17 |
| skillful                       | <b>joozu, (o)joozu</b> (polite)       | 5  |
| slowly                         | <b>yukkuri</b>                        | 2  |
| small                          | <b>chiisai</b>                        | 17 |
| snow                           | <b>yuki</b>                           | 28 |
| so                             | <b>soo</b>                            | 1  |
| Is that so?                    | <b>Soo desu ka?</b>                   |    |
| something                      | <b>nanika</b>                         | 26 |
| something to drink             | <b>nomimono, (o)nomimono</b> (polite) | 22 |
| somewhere                      | <b>dokoka</b>                         | 20 |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                     |                               |       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------|
| soon                | <b>sugu</b>                   | 8     |
| sorry               | <b>sumimasen</b>              |       |
| I am (very) sorry   | (doomo) sumimasen             | 24    |
| I am very sorry     | mooshiwake arimasen (formal)  | 30    |
| sour                | <b>suppai</b>                 | 23    |
| south               | <b>minami</b>                 | 14    |
| south gate          | minami-guchi                  | 14    |
| soy sauce           | <b>shooyu</b>                 | 21    |
| spaghetti           | <b>supagetti</b>              | 4     |
| spinach             | <b>hoorensoo</b>              | 19    |
| spring              | <b>haru</b>                   | 20    |
| stairway            | <b>kaidan</b>                 | 11    |
| State Department    | <b>Kokumushoo</b>             | 5     |
| stationery          | <b>bunboogu</b>               | 16    |
| steak               | <b>suteeki</b>                | 22    |
| beefsteak           | bifuteki                      | 4     |
| stereo              | <b>sutereo</b>                | 28    |
| stomach             | <b>i</b>                      | 16    |
| stomach ulcer       | <b>ikaiyoo</b>                | 27    |
| stop (bus, taxi)    | <b>noriba</b>                 | 2     |
| stop                | <b>tomarimasu</b>             | 12    |
| stop                | <b>tomemasu</b>               | 15    |
| straight            | <b>massugu</b>                | 4     |
| street              | <b>michi</b>                  | 4     |
| end of street       | tsukiataru                    | 9     |
| style               | <b>katachi</b>                | 17    |
| subway              | <b>chikatetsu</b>             | 7     |
| summer              | <b>natsu</b>                  | 20    |
| Sunday              | <b>nichi-yoobi</b>            | 5     |
| sunny               | <b>hare</b>                   | 28    |
| super express train | <b>tokkyuu</b>                | 12    |
| supermarket         | <b>suupaamaaketto, suupaa</b> | 1, 15 |
| sweater             | <b>seetaa</b>                 | 17    |
| sweet               | <b>amai</b>                   | 23    |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

### **T**

|                               |   |           |
|-------------------------------|---|-----------|
| take (people)                 | <b>tsurete iku</b>                              | <b>8</b>  |
| take (time)                   | <b>kakarimasu</b>                               | <b>28</b> |
| take care of yourself         | <b>odaiji ni</b>                                | <b>30</b> |
| tangerine                     | <b>mikan</b>                                    | <b>18</b> |
| taxi                          | <b>takushii</b>                                 | <b>2</b>  |
| taxi stand                    | <b>takushii noriba</b>                          | <b>2</b>  |
| tea                           | <b>ocha</b>                                     | <b>22</b> |
| tea parlor                    | <b>kissaten</b>                                 | <b>4</b>  |
| teach                         | <b>oshiemasu</b>                                | <b>13</b> |
| teacher                       | <b>sensee</b>                                   | <b>1</b>  |
| telephone                     | <b>denwa</b>                                    | <b>7</b>  |
| television                    | <b>terebi</b>                                   | <b>3</b>  |
| tell                          |   |           |
| won't you please tell me      | <b>oshiete kudasaimasen ka</b>                  | <b>13</b> |
| temperature (of the body)     | <b>taion</b>                                    | <b>27</b> |
| ten thousand                  | <b>man</b>                                      | <b>18</b> |
| thanks                        | <b>doomo</b>                                    | <b>2</b>  |
| thank you                     | <b>arigatoo</b>                                 | <b>2</b>  |
| thank you very much           | <b>doomo arigatoo (gozaimasu)</b>               | <b>2</b>  |
| thank you for the good food   | <b>gochisoosama</b>                             | <b>23</b> |
| that (thing)                  | <b>sore, are</b>                                | <b>3</b>  |
| that (in front of nouns)      | <b>sono, ano</b>                                | <b>8</b>  |
| that way                      | <b>sotchi, atchi, sotchira, achira (polite)</b> | <b>7</b>  |
| there                         | <b>soko</b>                                     | <b>7</b>  |
| think                         | <b>omoimasu</b>                                 | <b>26</b> |
| let me think for a minute     | <b>soo desu nee...</b>                          | <b>23</b> |
| I think that...               | <b>...to omoimasu</b>                           | <b>26</b> |
| third...                      | <b>mittsu-me no...</b>                          | <b>8</b>  |
| this                          | <b>kono</b>                                     | <b>9</b>  |
| this                          | <b>kochira (thing, person) (polite)</b>         | <b>5</b>  |
| this (thing)                  | <b>kore</b>                                     | <b>1</b>  |
| this way                      | <b>kotchi, kochira (polite)</b>                 | <b>7</b>  |
| thousand                      | <b>sen</b>                                      | <b>12</b> |
| throat                        | <b>nodo</b>                                     | <b>27</b> |
| Thursday                      | <b>moku-yoobi</b>                               | <b>5</b>  |
| ticket                        | <b>kippu</b>                                    | <b>11</b> |
| coupon tickets                | <b>kaisuken</b>                                 | <b>11</b> |
| commuter ticket (season pass) | <b>teekiken</b>                                 | <b>11</b> |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                              |                             |       |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------|
| ticket window                | <b>uriba</b>                | 11    |
| tip                          | <b>chippu</b>               | 23    |
| to                           | <b>ni, e</b>                | 4, 10 |
| toaster                      | <b>toosutaa</b>             | 28    |
| tobacco                      | <b>tabako</b>               | 3     |
| tobacco shop                 | <b>tabako-ya</b>            | 7     |
| today                        | <b>kyoo</b>                 | 20    |
| toe                          | <b>(ashi) yubi</b>          | 27    |
| together                     | <b>issho ni</b>             | 21    |
| toilet                       | <b>(o)tearai</b>            | 7     |
| tomorrow                     | <b>ashita</b>               | 26    |
| tongue                       | <b>shita</b>                | 27    |
| too                          | <b>mo</b>                   | 4     |
| tooth                        | <b>ha</b>                   | 27    |
| top                          | <b>ue</b>                   | 17    |
| top of ...                   | <b>...no ue</b>             | 17    |
| toward                       | <b>hoo</b>                  | 9     |
| towards                      | <b>e</b>                    | 10    |
| toy                          | <b>omocha</b>               | 16    |
| track number                 | <b>...bansen</b>            | 3     |
| traffic light                | <b>shingoo</b>              | 7     |
| travel                       | <b>ryokoo</b>               | 25    |
| true                         | <b>hontoo</b>               | 20    |
| truly                        | <b>hontoo ni</b>            | 20    |
| Tuesday                      | <b>ka-yoobi</b>             | 5     |
| tuna fish                    | <b>maguro</b>               | 23    |
| turn                         | <b>magarimasu</b>           | 4     |
| it's at the place (you) turn | <b>magatta tokoro desu</b>  | 9     |
| turn left                    | <b>hidari ni magarimasu</b> | 4     |
| after having turned          | <b>magaruto</b>             | 4     |
| turn on                      | <b>tsukimasu</b>            | 28    |
| light turns on               | <b>denki ga tsukimasu</b>   | 28    |
| <b><u>U</u></b>              |                             |       |
| Uh... (hesitation)           | <b>anoo</b>                 |       |
| uncooked rice                | <b>okome</b>                | 18    |
| under                        | <b>shita</b>                | 17    |
| under...                     | <b>...no shita</b>          | 17    |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                            |   |       |
|----------------------------|---|-------|
| underground passage        | <b>chikadoo</b>                                 | 14    |
| understand                 | <b>wakarimasu</b>                               | 1     |
| unfortunately              | <b>ainiku desu ga</b>                           | 17    |
| unpleasant                 | <b>iya</b>                                      | 20    |
| unreserved seat            | <b>jiyuu-seki</b>                               | 12    |
| until                      | <b>made</b>                                     | 10    |
| up-train                   | <b>nobori</b>                                   | 12    |
| urgent business            | <b>kyuuyoo</b>                                  | 30    |
| <br><b><u>V</u></b>        |   |       |
| VD                         | <b>seebyoo</b>                                  | 27    |
| vegetables                 | <b>yasai</b>                                    | 23    |
| vending machine            | <b>jidoo hanbaiki</b>                           | 11    |
| very                       | <b>totemo, taihen</b>                           | 5, 23 |
| vicinity                   | <b>chikaku</b>                                  | 9     |
| this vicinity              | kono hen  | 7     |
| vicinity of...             | ...no chikaku                                   | 9     |
| visa                       | <b>sashoo, biza</b>                             | 25    |
| visa section               | sashoo-ka                                       | 25    |
| visible                    | <b>miemasu</b>                                  | 10    |
| <br><b><u>W</u></b>        |   |       |
| wait                       | <b>machimasu</b>                                | 22    |
| I'm sorry to have kept you | omatase shimashita,                             | 19    |
| waiting                    | omatase itashimashita                           | 26    |
| please wait (polite)       | omachi kudasai                                  | 4     |
| please (remain) waiting    | matte ite kudasai                               | 27    |
| walk                       | <b>arukimasu</b>                                | 10    |
| warm                       | <b>ataakai</b>                                  | 20    |
| water                      | <b>mizu</b>                                     | 28    |
| watch                      | <b>tokee</b>                                    | 16    |
| way                        | <b>michi</b>                                    | 4     |
| on the way                 | tochuu  | 30    |
| weather                    | <b>(o)tenki</b>                                 | 20    |
| Wednesday                  | <b>sui-yoobi</b>                                | 5     |
| welcome                    | <b>irasshai, irasshaimase</b> (polite)          | 4, 28 |
| you're welcome             | doo itashimashite                               | 2     |
| welcome home               | okaerinasai (used by the one who stayed behind) | 20    |
| well                       | <b>yoku</b>                                     | 3     |
| well... (hesitation)       | <b>anoo</b>                                     | 16    |

## ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

|                         |   |       |
|-------------------------|---|-------|
| well (then)             | <b>jaa</b>                                    | 3     |
| went to bed             | <b>nemashita</b>                              | 20    |
| west                    | <b>nishi</b>                                  | 14    |
| what                    | <b>nani, nan</b>                              | 1     |
| What is (it)?           | <b>(Sore wa) nan desu ka?</b>                 | 1     |
| what day (of the week)? | <b>nan-yoobi</b>                              | 5     |
| what number?            | <b>nan-ban</b>                                | 28    |
| what time?              | <b>nan-ji</b>                                 | 10    |
| when?                   | <b>itsu</b>                                   | 28    |
| where?                  | <b>doko</b>                                   | 2     |
| which...?               | <b>dono...</b>                                | 14    |
| which floor?            | <b>nan-gai</b>                                | 16    |
| which one?              | <b>ikutsu-me</b> (in a numbered series)       | 13    |
| which one?              | <b>dore</b>                                   | 23    |
| which track?            | <b>nan-bansen</b>                             | 12    |
| which way?              | <b>dotchi</b>                                 | 14    |
| whisky                  | <b>uisukii</b>                                | 3     |
| white                   | <b>shiro</b>                                  | 22    |
| white (one)             | <b>shiroi (no)</b>                            | 18    |
| who?                    | <b>donata</b> (polite)                        | 24    |
| wife                    | <b>kanai, okusan</b> (someone else's)         | 5     |
| wine                    | <b>wain</b>                                   | 22    |
| wine merchant           | <b>sakaya</b>                                 | 18    |
| winter                  | <b>fuyu</b>                                   | 20    |
| woman                   | <b>fujin</b> (formal)                         | 16    |
| wooden clogs            | <b>geta</b>                                   | 3     |
| wound                   | <b>kirikizu</b>                               | 13    |
| write                   | <b>kakimasu</b>                               | 4     |
| please write            | <b>kaite kudasai</b>                          | 4     |
| wrong, different        | <b>chigaimasu</b>                             | 1     |
| <br><b><u>X</u></b>     |   |       |
| X-ray                   | <b>rentogen</b>                               | 27    |
| <br><b><u>Y</u></b>     |   |       |
| yes                     | <b>hai, ee</b> (less formal than <b>hai</b> ) | 2, 13 |
| yen                     | <b>en</b>                                     | 11    |

## TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

|          | Names of the Months           | Number of Months                     | Number of Weeks                     | Number of Years                 | Number of Days and Dates*                            |
|----------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| 1        | ichi-gatsu                    | ik-kagetsu                           | is-shuukan                          | ichi-nen                        | ichinichi 'one day'<br>tsuitachi 'the first'         |
| 2        | ni-gatsu                      | ni-kagetsu                           | ni-shuukan                          | ni-nen                          | futsu-ka   |
| 3        | san-gatsu                     | san-kagetsu                          | san-shuukan                         | san-nen                         | mik-ka   |
| 4        | shi-gatsu                     | yon-kagetsu                          | yon-shuukan                         | yo-nen                          | yok-ka   |
| 5        | go-gatsu                      | go-kagetsu                           | go-shuukan                          | go-nen                          | itsu-ka  |
| 6        | roku-gatsu                    | rok-kagetsu                          | roku-shuukan                        | roku-nen                        | mui-ka   |
| 7        | shichi-gatsu                  | shichi/nana-kagetsu                  | shichi/nana-shuukan                 | shichi/nana-nen                 | nano-ka  |
| 8        | hachi-gatsu                   | hachi/hak-kagetsu                    | hachi/has-shuukan                   | hachi-nen                       | yoo-ka   |
| 9        | ku-gatsu                      | ku/kyuu-kagetsu                      | kyuu-shuukan                        | kyuu-nen                        | kokono-ka  |
| 10       | juu-gatsu                     | juk/jik-kagetsu                      | jus-shuukan                         | juu-nen                         | too-ka   |
| 11       | juuichi-gatsu                 | juuik-kagetsu                        | juuis-shuukan                       | juuichi-nen                     | juuichi-nichi  |
| 12       | juuni-gatsu                   | juuni-kagetsu                        | juuni-shuukan                       | juuni-nen                       | juuni-nichi  |
| question | What month?<br><br>Nan-gatsu? | How many months?<br><br>Nan-kagetsu? | How many weeks?<br><br>Nan-shuukan? | How many years?<br><br>Nan-nen? | How many days?<br>or<br>What date?<br><br>Nan-nichi? |

\*The words for numbers of days and dates higher than 10 are regular (i.e., are composed of the appropriate number plus nichi) except that 'the 14th', 'the 20th', 'the 24th' and '14 days', '20 days' and '24 days' are juuyok-ka, hatsu-ka and nijuuyok-ka respectively

## TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

|               | Time                      | Hours                                | Minutes                              | People                              | Ages*                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1             | ichi-ji                   | ichi-jikan                           | ip-pun                               | hitori                              | hitotsu or is-sai                         |
| 2             | ni-ji                     | ni-jikan                             | ni-fun                               | futari                              | futatsu or ni-sai                         |
| 3             | san-ji                    | san-jikan                            | san-pun                              | san-nin                             | mittsu or san-sai                         |
| 4             | yo-ji                     | yo-jikan                             | yon-pun                              | yo-nin                              | yottsu or yon-sai                         |
| 5             | go-ji                     | go-jikan                             | go-fun                               | go-nin                              | itsutsu or go-sai                         |
| 6             | roku-ji                   | roku-jikan                           | rop-pun                              | roku-nin                            | muttsu or roku-sai                        |
| 7             | shichi-ji                 | shichi/nana-jikan                    | shichi/nana-fun                      | shichi-nin                          | nanatsu or nana-sai                       |
| 8             | hachi-ji                  | hachi-jikan                          | hachi-fun or hap-pun                 | hachi-nin                           | yattsu or has-sai                         |
| 9             | ku-ji                     | ku-jikan                             | kyuu-fun                             | ku/kyuu-nin                         | kokonotsu or kyuu-sai                     |
| 10            | juu-ji                    | juu-jikan                            | juup/jup-pun                         | juu-nin                             | too or jus-sai                            |
| 11            | juuichi-ji                | juuichi-jikan                        | juuip-pun                            | juuichi-nin                         | juuis-sai                                 |
| 12            | juuni-ji                  | juuni-jikan                          | juuni-fun                            | juuni-nin                           | juuni-sai                                 |
| ques-<br>tion | What time?<br><br>Nan-ji? | How many<br>hours?<br><br>Nan-jikan? | How many<br>minutes?<br><br>Nan-pun? | How many<br>people?<br><br>Nan-nin? | How old?<br><br>Ikutsu?<br>or<br>Nan-sai? |

\*'Twenty years old' is hatachi or nijus-sai. The other words for ages are regular



## TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

|          | Flat Objects                         | Cylindrical Objects                         | Floors                  | Units                | Units (general counter) |
|----------|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1        | ichi-mai                             | ip-pon                                      | ik-kai                  | ik-ko                | hitotsu                 |
| 2        | ni-mai                               | ni-hon                                      | ni-kai                  | ni-ko                | futatsu                 |
| 3        | san-mai                              | san-bon                                     | san-gai                 | san-ko               | mittsu                  |
| 4        | yo/yon-mai                           | yon-hon                                     | yon-kai                 | yon-ko               | yottsu                  |
| 5        | go-mai                               | go-hon                                      | go-kai                  | go-ko                | itsutsu                 |
| 6        | roku-mai                             | rop-pon                                     | rok-kai                 | rok-ko               | muttsu                  |
| 7        | shichi/nana-mai                      | shichi/nana-hon                             | shichi/nana-kai         | nana-ko              | nanatsu                 |
| 8        | hachi-mai                            | hachi-hon,<br>hap-pon                       | hachi/hak-kai           | hak-ko               | yattsu                  |
| 9        | kyuu-mai                             | kyuu-hon                                    | kyuu-kai                | kyuu-ko              | kokonotsu               |
| 10       | juu-mai                              | jup-pon                                     | juk-kai                 | juk/jik-ko           | too                     |
| 11       | juuichi-mai                          | juuip-pon                                   | juuik-kai               | juuik-ko             | juuichi                 |
| 12       | juuni-mai                            | juuni-hon                                   | juuni-kai               | juuni-ko             | juuni                   |
| question | How many (flat objects)?<br>Nan-mai? | How many (cylindrical objects)?<br>Nan-bon? | What floor?<br>Nan-gai? | How many?<br>Nan-ko? | How many?<br>Ikutsu?    |

## TABLE OF MONTHS, DAYS, WEEKS, AND COUNTERS

|          | Numbers in a Series*                                    | Number of Times               | Bunches   | Piles                           | Servings                             |
|----------|---|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1        | saisho no...<br>or<br>hajime no...                      | ichi-do                       | ichi-wa   | hito-yama                       | ichi-ninmae                          |
| 2        | futatsu-me<br>or<br>futatsu-me no...                    | ni-do                         | ni-wa   | futa-yama                       | ni-ninmae                            |
| 3        | mittsu-me<br>or<br>mittsu-me no...                      | san-do                        | san-wa<br>or<br>san-ba                          | mi-yama                         | san-ninmae                           |
| 4        | yottsu-me<br>or<br>yottsu-me no...                      | yon-do                        | yon-wa  | yo(n)-yama                      | yo-ninmae                            |
| 5        | itsutsu-me<br>or<br>itsutsu-me no...                    | go-do                         | go-wa   | itsu-yama                       | go-ninmae                            |
| question | Which number?<br><br>ikutsu-me<br>or<br>ikutsu-me no... | How many times?<br><br>nan-do | How many bunches?<br><br>nan-wa<br>or<br>nan-ba | How many piles?<br><br>iku-yama | How many servings?<br><br>nan-ninmae |

\* ...me is used in describing objects in a series as in 'first..., second...', and can be used after any counter. For example, futari-me 'the second person' or san-do-me 'the third time', etc.